OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 18

Villehardouin

Geoffroi de Villehardouin

La Conquête de Constantinople

The Conquest of Constantinople

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

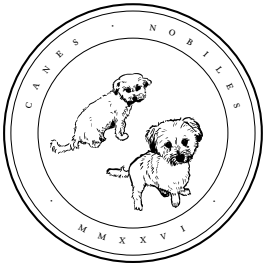


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 18 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Natalis de Wailly's text,
La Conquête de Constantinople, third edition (Paris, 1882), paragraphs 1–500

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps de Wailly's spelling and his accents. The margin gives
his paragraph numbers; his chapters are grouped into the reading sections,
whose English heads are this press's. The paragraphs after 500,
Henri de Valenciennes' continuation, are not printed.

CONTENTS

I · The Preaching of the Cross 9
II · The Envoys at Venice 14
III · The Treaty with Venice 21
IV · The Death of Count Thibaut 27
V · Boniface of Montferrat Takes the Cross 31
VI · The Host at Venice Cannot Pay 36
VII · The Doge Takes the Cross 42
VIII · The Siege of Zara 48
IX · Winter at Zara and the Offer of Alexius 54
X · Discord in the Host 59
XI · Absolution from Rome and the Voyage to Corfu 64
XII · The Barons Hold the Host Together 69
XIII · Saint Stephen and the Landing at Chalcedon 76
XIV · The Foragers and the Emperor's Message 82

XV · The Young Alexius Shown to the City 87
XVI · The Tower of Galata 93
XVII · The Assault on the Walls 99
XVIII · The Emperor Declines Battle 103
XIX · Isaac Restored 109
XX · The Coronation of the Young Alexius 115
XXI · The Emperor's Progress 120
XXII · The Great Fire, and Alexius Breaks Faith 124
XXIII · The Defiance and the Fireships 128
XXIV · Murzuphlus Usurps the Empire 134
XXV · The Pact Before the Assault 139
XXVI · The Second Assault 143
XXVII · The City Taken 149
XXVIII · The Booty and the Election of Baldwin 154
XXIX · Boniface Marries the Empress 161
XXX · Murzuphlus Blinded 166
XXXI · The Quarrel of Baldwin and Boniface 170
XXXII · The Barons' Messages 177
XXXIII · Reconciliation and the Division of the Lands 182
XXXIV · The Death of Murzuphlus 188
XXXV · Reinforcements from Syria 193
XXXVI · Villehardouin the Nephew in the Morea 198

XXXVII · The Greeks Allied with Johanitsa 203
XXXVIII · The Recall from Beyond the Straits 208
XXXIX · Before Adrianople 212
XL · The Defeat at Adrianople 216
XLI · The Retreat 221
XLII · The March to Rodosto 225
XLIII · Seven Thousand Pilgrims Desert 230
XLIV · The Death of the Doge 236
XLV · The Surrender of Serres 240
XLVI · The Ruin of Philippopolis 244
XLVII · The Defeat Near Rusion 249
XLVIII · The Ruin of Rodosto 255
XLIX · The Relief of Demotika 260
L · Renier of Trith Rescued 266
LI · Henry Crowned Emperor 271
LII · The War Beyond the Arm 277
LIII · The Emperor's Marriage 281
LIV · The Relief of Kibotos 287
LV · The Siege of Cyzicus 293
LVI · The Truce with Lascaris 300
LVII · The Death of Boniface 304

The Preaching of the Cross

I

In 1197, in the time of Pope Innocent, King Philip of France, and King Richard of England, Fulk of Neuilly, a parish priest, preaches through France, and God works miracles through him. The pope sends his cardinal Peter of Capua with an indulgence for a year's service. At a tournament at Écry, Counts Thibaut of Champagne and Louis of Blois take the cross; Baldwin of Flanders follows at Bruges, then Hugh of Saint-Pol and Geoffrey of the Perche, and the book names their barons.

Sachiez que mil et cent et quatre-vinz et dix sept 1
Know that thousand and hundred and fourscore and ten seven
anz après l'incarnation Nostre Sengnor Jesu Crist, al tens
years after the-incarnation (of-)Our Lord Jesus Christ in-the time
Innocent, apostoile de Rome, et Phelipe, roi de France, et
(of-)Innocent pope of Rome and (of-)Philip king of France and
Richart, roi d'Engleterre, ot un saint home en France qui
(of-)Richard king of-England there-was a holy man in France who
ot nom Folques de Nuilli (cil Nuillis siet entre Laigni sor
had name Fulk of Neuilly that Neuilly lies between Lagny on
Marne et Paris); et il ere prestres, et tenoit la parroisse
Marne and Paris and he was priest and held the parish
de la ville. Et cil Folques dont je vos di, comença à
of the town And that Fulk of-whom I to-you speak began to
parler de Deu par France et par les autres terres entor;
speak of God through France and through the other lands around
et sachiez que Nostre Sires fist maintes miracles por lui.
and know that Our Lord did many miracles through him
Sachiez que la renomée de cel saint home ala tant qu'ele 2
Know that the renown of that holy man went so-far that-it
vint à l'apostoile de Rome, Innocent; et l'apostoiles envoia
came to the-pope of Rome Innocent and the-pope sent

en France et manda al prodome que il preeschast
to France and commanded to-the worthy-man that he should-preach
des croiz par s'autorité. Et après i envoia un suen
of-the cross by his-authority And afterward there he-sent a his-own
cardonal, maistre Perron de Capes, croisié; et manda par
cardinal master Peter of Capua crossed and sent-word by
lui le pardon tel con je vos dirai: Tuit cil qui se
him the indulgence such as I to-you shall-tell All those who themselves
croisseroient et feroient le servise Deu un an en l'ost,
should-take-the-cross and should-do the service (of-)God one year in the-host
seroient quite de toz les pechiez que il avoient faiz, dont
would-be quit of all the sins that they had done whereof
il seroient confès. Por ce que cil pardons fut issi granz,
they should-be confessed For this that that indulgence was so great
si s'en esmurent mult li cuer des genz; et mult
so themselves-thereby moved much the hearts of-the people and many
s'en croisierent por ce que li pardons ere si granz.
themselves-thereby crossed for this that the indulgence was so great

3 En l'autre an après que cil preudon Folques parla ainsi
In the-other year after that that worthy-man Fulk spoke thus
de Deu, ot un tornoi en Champaigne, à un chastel
of God there-was a tournament in Champagne at a castle
qui ot nom Aicris; et par la grace de Deu si avint
which had name Écry and by the grace of God so it-happened
que Tibauz, quens de Champaigne et de Brie, prist la
that Thibaut count of Champagne and of Brie took the
croiz, et li quens Loeys de Blois et de Chartein; et
cross and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and
ce fu à l'entrée des Avenz. Or sachiez que cil quens
this was at the-beginning of-the Advent Now know that that count
Tibauz ere jones hom, et n'avoit pas plus de vint-deus
Thibaut was young man and not-had at-all more than twenty-two

ans; ne li quens Loeys n'avoit pas plus de vint-sept ans.
years nor the count Louis not-had at-all more than twenty-seven years
Cil dui conte erent nevou le roi de France et si cousin
Those two counts were nephews (of-)the king of France and his cousins
germain, et nevou le roi d'Engleterre de l'autre part.
german and nephews (of-)the king of-England on the-other side
Avec ces deus contes se croisserent dui mult halt baron 4
With these two counts themselves crossed two very high barons
de France, Symons de Monfort et Renauz de Monmirail.
of France Simon of Montfort and Renaud of Montmirail
Mult fu granz la renomée par les terres, quant cil dui
Very was great the renown through the lands when those two
halt home s'encroisserent.
high men themselves-crossed
En la terre le conte Tibaut de Champaigne se croisa 5
In the land (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne himself crossed
Garniers li evesques de Troies, li quens Gautiers de Briene,
Garnier the bishop of Troyes the count Walter of Brienne
Jofrois de Joenvile qui ere seneschaus de la terre, Roberz
Geoffrey of Joinville who was seneschal of the land Robert
ses freres, Gautiers de Gaignoru, Gautiers de Monbeliart,
his brother Walter of Gaignoru Walter of Montbéliard
Eustaices de Conflans, Guis dou Plaissié ses freres, Henris
Eustace of Conflans Guy of-the Plessis his brother Henry
d'Ardillieres, Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Vilains de Nuilli, Jofrois
of-Ardillieres Ogier of Saint-Chéron Vilain of Neuilly Geoffrey
de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne, Jofrois ses
of Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne Geoffrey his
niés, Guillaumes de Nuilli, Gautiers de Fuillinies, Evrarz de
nephew William of Neuilly Walter of Fuillinies Everard of
Monteigni, Manasiers de l'Isle, Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt,
Monteigni Manasses of the-Isle Macaire of Sainte-Menehould

Miles li Braibans, Guis de Chapes, Clarenbauz ses niés,
Miles the Brabançon Guy of Chappes Clarembaud his nephew
Reignars de Dampierre, Johans Foisnons, et maintes autres
Renard of Dampierre John Foisnon and many other
bones genz dont li livres ne fait mie mention.
good people of-whom the book not makes at-all mention

6 Avec le conte Loeys se croisa Gervaises del Chastel,
With the count Louis himself crossed Gervase of-the Châtel
Hervis ses fils, Johans de Virsin, Oliviers de Rochefort,
Hervé his son John of Virsin Oliver of Rochefort
Henris de Mousteroel, Paiens d'Orliens, Pierres de Braiecuel,
Henry of Montreuil Payen of-Orléans Peter of Bracieux
Hues ses freres, Guilaumes de Sains, Johans de Friaise,
Hugh his brother William of Sains John of Friaize
Gautiers de Gaudonvile, Hues de Cormeroy, Jofrois ses
Walter of Gaudonville Hugh of Cormeray Geoffrey his
freres, Hervis de Belveoir, Roberz de Froevile, Pierres ses
brother Hervé of Beauvoir Robert of Frouville Peter his
freres, Oris de l'Isle, Roberz del Quartier, et maint autre
brother Orry of the-Isle Robert of-the Quartier and many another
dont li livres ne fait mie mention.
of-whom the book not makes at-all mention

7 En France se croisa Neules li evesques de Soisons,
In France himself crossed Nivelon the bishop of Soissons
Mahius de Monmorenci, Guis li chastelains de Couci ses
Matthew of Montmorency Guy the castellan of Coucy his
niés, Roberz de Roinssoi, Ferris d'Ierre, Jehans ses freres,
nephew Robert of Ronsoy Ferri of-Yerres John his brother
Gautiers de Saint-Denise, Henris ses freres, Guillaumes
Walter of Saint-Denis Henry his brother William
d'Aunoi, Roberz Malvoisins, Drues de Cresonessart, Bernarz
of-Aunoy Robert Mauvoisin Dreux of Cressonsacq Bernard

de Moruel, Engerrans de Bove, Roberz ses freres, et maint
of Moreuil Enguerrand of Boves Robert his brother and many
autre prodome, dont li livres ore se taist.
another worthy-man of-whom the book now itself is-silent
A l'entrée de la quaresme après, le jor que om prent 8
At the-beginning of the Lent after the day that one takes
cendres, se croisa li quens Baudoins de Flandres et de
ashes himself crossed the count Baldwin of Flanders and of
Hennaut à Bruges, et la contesse Marie sa feme, qui ere
Hainault at Bruges and the countess Marie his wife who was
suer le conte Tiebaut de Champaigne. Après se croissa
sister (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne After himself crossed
Henris ses freres, Thieris ses niés, qui fu fils le conte
Henry his brother Thierry his nephew who was son (of-)the count
Phelippe de Flandres, Guilermes l'avoez de Bethune, Coenes
Philip of Flanders William the-advocate of Béthune Conon
ses freres, Johans de Neele chatelains de Bruges, Reniers
his brother John of Nesle castellan of Bruges Renier
de Trit, Reniers ses fils, Mahius de Waleincort, Jaques
of Trith Renier his son Matthew of Walincourt James
d'Avesnes, Baudoins de Belveoir, Hues de Belmés, Girarz
of-Avesnes Baldwin of Beauvoir Hugh of Beaumetz Gerard
de Mancicort, Oedes de Ham, Guillaumes de Gomeignies,
of Mancicourt Odo of Ham William of Gommegnies
Drius de Belraim, Rogiers de Marque, Eustaices de Saubruic,
Dreux of Beaurain Roger of Marck Eustace of Saubruic
François de Colemi, Gautiers de Bousies, Reniers de Monz,
François of Colemi Walter of Bousies Renier of Mons
Gautiers des Tombes, Bernarz de Soubrenghien, et maint
Walter of-the Tombes Bernard of Somergem and many-a
plusor prodome dont li livres ne parole mie.
several worthy-man of-whom the book not speaks at-all

9 Après, se croisa li quens Hues de Saint-Pol. Avec lui
After himself crossed the count Hugh of Saint-Pol With him
se croisa Pierres d'Amiens ses niés, Eustaices de Canteleu,
himself crossed Peter of-Amiens his nephew Eustace of Canteleux
Nicholes de Mailli, Ansiaus de Caheu, Guis de Hosdeng,
Nicholas of Mailly Anseau of Cayeux Guy of Houdain
Gautiers de Neelle, Pierres ses freres, et maint autre gent
Walter of Nesle Peter his brother and many other people
que nos ne quenoisons pas.
whom we not know at-all

10 Enqui après, s'encroisa li quens Jofrois del Perche, Estenes
There after himself-crossed the count Geoffrey of-the Perche Stephen
ses freres, Rotres de Monfort, Ive de la Jaille, Haimmeris
his brother Rotrou of Montfort Ivo of the Jaille Aimery
de Vileroi, Jofrois de Belmont, et maint altre dont je
of Villeroi Geoffrey of Beaumont and many another of-whom I
ne sai pas les nons.
not know at-all the names

The Envoys at Venice

II

At Soissons the barons cannot agree, and at Compiègne they give six envoys full power. In Venice Doge Henry Dandolo offers ships and nine months' victuals for 4,500 knights, 9,000 squires, and 20,000 foot, for 85,000 marks, and fifty galleys for half of all conquests; the envoys accept, and the doge wins over his councils.

11 Après, pristrent li baron un parlement à Soisons por savoir
After took the barons a parliament at Soissons for to-know
quant il voldroient movoir, et quel part il voldroient
when they would-wish to-set-out and what direction they would-wish

torner. A cele foiz ne se porent acorder, porce que il lor
to-turn At that time not themselves could agree because that it to-them
sembla que il n'avoient mie encore assez genz croisiés. En
seemed that they not-had at-all yet enough people crossed In
tot cel an, ne passa onques deus mois que il n'assemblassent
all that year not passed ever two months that they not-should-assemble
à parlement à Compaigne. Enqui furent tuit li conte et li
at parliament at Compiègne There were all the counts and the
baron qui croisié estoient. Maint consoil i ot pris et doné;
barons who crossed were Many-a counsel there was taken and given
mais la fins dou conseil si fu tels que il envoieroient messages
but the end of-the counsel so was such that they would-send envoys
les meillors que il poroient trover, et donroient plain pooir
the best that they could find and would-give full power
à aus de faire toutes choses, autretant con li seignor.
to them to do all things as-much as the lords
De ces messages envoia Thiebauz li cuens de Champaigne 12
Of these envoys sent Thibaut the count of Champagne
et de Brie deus; et Baudoins li cuens de Flandres et
and of Brie two and Baldwin the count of Flanders and
de Hennaut, deus; et Loys li cuens de Blois, deus. Li
of Hainault two and Louis the count of Blois two The
message le conte Thebaut furent Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin
envoys (of-)the count Thibaut were Geoffrey of Villehardouin
li mareschaus de Champaigne, et Miles li Braibanz; et li
the marshal of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon and the
message le conte Baudoin furent Coenes de Betune et
envoys (of-)the count Baldwin were Conon of Béthune and
Alars Maqueriaus; et li message le conte Loys furent
Alard Maquereau and the envoys (of-)the count Louis were
Johans de Friaise et Gautiers de Gaudonvile.
John of Friaize and Walter of Gaudonville

13 Sor ces six si mistrent lor afaire entierement, en tel maniere
On these six so they-put their business entirely in such manner
que il lor baillerent bones chartres pendanz, que il
that they to-them handed good charters sealed that they
tendroient ferm totes les convenances que cil six feroient
would-hold firm all the covenants that those six would-make
par toz les porz de mer, en quelque leu que il alassent.
through all the ports of sea in whatever place that they might-go

14 Ensi murent li six message con vos avez oï, et pristrent
Thus set-out the six envoys as you have heard and took
consoil entr'aus; et fu tels lor consaux entr'aus acordez
counsel among-themselves and was such their counsel among-themselves agreed
que en Venise cuidoient trover plus grant plenté de vaisiax
that in Venice they-thought to-find more great plenty of vessels
que à nul autre port. Et chevauchierent par lor jornées
than at any other port And they-rode by their day-stages
tant que il vindrent là la première semaine de quaresme.
so-far that they came there the first week of Lent

15 Li dux de Venise qui ot à nom Henris Dandole, et ere mult
The doge of Venice who had as name Henry Dandolo and was very
sages et mult prouz, si les honora mult, et il et les autres
wise and very valiant so them honored much both he and the other
gens; et les virent mult volentiers. Et quant il baillerent
people and them saw very willingly And when they handed
les lettres lor seignors, si se merveillerent mult por
the letters (of-)their lords so themselves marveled much for
quel afaire il erent venu en la terre. Les letres erent de
what business they were come into the land The letters were of
creance; et distrent li conte que autant les creist en
credence and said the counts that as-much them he-should-believe one
comme lor cors, et tenroient fait ce que cist six feroient.
as their bodies and would-hold done this that these six would-do

Et li dux lor respont: «Signor, je ai veues vos letres; 16
And the doge to-them answers Lords I have seen your letters
bien avons queneu que vostre signor sont li plus haut
well we-have known that your lords are the most high
home qui soient sanz corone; et il nos mandent que
men who may-be without crown and they to-us send-word that
nos creons ce que vos nos direz, et tenront ferm ce
we believe this that you to-us will-say and they-will-hold firm this
que vos ferez. Or dites ce que vos plaira.»
that you will-do Now say this that to-you will-please
Et li message respondirent: «Sire, nos volons que vos aiez 17
And the envoys answered Lord we wish that you have
vostre conseil; et devant vostre conseil nos vos dirons ce
your council and before your council we to-you will-tell this
que nostre seignor vos mandent, demain se il vos plaist.»
that our lords to-you send-word tomorrow if it to-you pleases
Et li dux lor respondit que il lor requeroit respit
And the doge to-them answered that he of-them asked delay
al quart jor; et adonc aroit son conseil ensemble, et
to-the fourth day and then would-have his council together and
porroient dire ce que il requeroient.
they-could say this that they asked
Il atendirent tresci que au quart jor que il lor ot mis; 18
They waited until that to-the fourth day that he to-them had set
il entrerent el palais qui mult ere riches et biax, et
they entered into-the palace which very was rich and fair and
troverent le duc et son conseil en une chambre; et distrent
found the doge and his council in a chamber and said
lor message en tel maniere: «Sire, nos somes à toi venu
their message in such manner Lord we are to thee come
de par les hals barons de France qui ont pris le sine de
on behalf-of the high barons of France who have taken the sign of

la croiz, por la honte Jesu-Crist vengier et por Jerusalem
the cross for the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ to-avenge and for Jerusalem
reconquerre, se Diex le vuelt soffrir. Et porce que il sevent
to-reconquer if God it wishes to-suffer And because that they know
que nule genz n'ont si grant pooir d'aus aidier con vos et la
that any people not-have so great power them to-help as you and the
vostre genz, vos prient por Dieu que vos aiez pitié de la
your people you they-beg for God that you may-have pity of the
terre d'oltremer, et de la honte Jesu-Crist, et que vos veuilliez
land of-overseas and of the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ and that you may-wish
mettre paine coment il puissent avoir navie et estoire.
to-put pains how they may have navy and fleet
19 «En quel maniere? fait li dux. — En totes les manières,
In what manner says the doge In all the manners
font li message, que vos lor saurez loer ne conseilier
say the envoys that you to-them will-know-how to-advise or to-counsel
que il faire ne soffrir puissent. — Certes, fait li dux;
that they to-do or to-bear may Certainly says the doge
grant chose nos ont requise, et bien semble que il
great thing of-us they-have asked and well it-seems that they
béent à halt afaire; et nos vos en respondrons d'ui
aim at high business and we to-you thereof will-answer from-today
à huit jorz. Et ne vos merveilliez mie se li termes
in eight days And not yourselves marvel at-all if the term
est lons, quar il covient mult penser à si grant chose.»
is long for it behooves much to-think on so great thing
20 Al terme que li dux lor mist, il revindrent el
At-the term that the doge to-them set they came-back into-the
palais. Totes les paroles qui là furent dites et retraites
palace All the words that there were said and recounted
ne vos puis mie reconter; mais la fins dou parlement fu
not to-you I-can at-all recount but the end of-the parliament was

tels: «Seignor, fait li dux, nos vos dirons ce que nous
such Lords says the doge we to-you will-tell this that we
avons pris à conseil, se nos i poons metre nostre grant
have taken at counsel if we thereto can bring our great
conseil et le commun de la terre que il l'otroit; et vos
council and the commons of the land that it it-grant and you
vos conseilleroiz se vos le porroiz faire ne soffrir.
yourselves will-consider if you it will-be-able do or bear
«Nos ferons vuissiers à passer quatre mille et cinc 21
We will-make horse-transports to carry four thousand and five
cenz chevaus, et nuef mille escuiers; et es nés quatre
hundred horses and nine thousand squires and in-the ships four
mille et cinc cenz chevaliers et vint mille sergenz
thousand and five hundred knights and twenty thousand sergeants
à pié. Et à toz ces chevaus et ces genz iert telx la
on foot And to all these horses and these people will-be such the
convenance que il porteront viande à nuef mois. Tant
covenant that they will-carry victuals for nine months So-much
vos feromes al mains, en tel forme que on donra por
for-you we-will-do at-the least in such form that one will-give for
le cheval quatre mars, et por l'ome deus.
the horse four marks and for the-man two
«Et totes ces convenances que nos vos devisons, vos 22
And all these covenants that we to-you set-out to-you
tendron par un an, dès le jor que nos departirons del
we-will-hold for one year from the day that we shall-depart from-the
port de Venise à faire le servise Dieu et la crestienté,
port of Venise to do the service (of-)God and (of-)the Christendom
en quelque leu que ce soit. La somme de cest avoir qui
in whatever place that it may-be The sum of this money which
ci est devant nomez, si monte quatre-vint-cinc mille mars.
here is before named so amounts-to fourscore-five thousand marks

23 «Et tant feromes nos plus que nos meteromes cinquante
And so-much will-do we more that we will-put fifty
galées armées por l'amor de Dieu, par tel convenance que,
galleys armed for the-love of God by such covenant that
tant con nostre compaignie durra, de totes conquestes que
as-long as our company will-last of all conquests that
nos ferons de terre ne d'avoir, par mer ou par terre, la
we will-make of land or of-wealth by sea or by land the
moitié en aurons, et vos l'autre. Or si vos conseilliez,
half thereof we-will-have and you the-other Now so yourselves consider
se vos le porroiz faire ne soffrir.»
if you it will-be-able do or bear

24 Li message s'en vont, et distrent que il parleroient
The envoys themselves-thence go and said that they would-speak
ensemble, et lor en respondront l'endemain. Conseillierent
together and to-them thereof will-answer the-next-day They-counseled
soi et parlerent ensemble cele nuit, et si s'acorderent
themselves and spoke together that night and so themselves-agreed
al faire; et demain vindrent devant le duc et distrent:
to-the doing and next-day came before the doge and said
«Sire, nos somes prest d'aseurer ceste convenance.» Et li
Lord we are ready to-confirm this covenant And the
dux dist qu'il en parleroit à la soe gent, et ce que
doge said that-he thereof would-speak to the his people and this that
il troveroit, il le lor feroit savoir.
he would-find he it to-them would-have known

25 L'endemain al tierz jor, manda li dux, qui mult ere sages
The-next-day at-the third day summoned the doge who very was wise
et proz, son grant conseil; et li conseils ere de quarante
and valiant his great council and the council was of forty
homes des plus sages de la terre. Et il, par son sens et
men of-the most wise of the land And he by his sense and

par son engin, que il avoir mult cler et mult bon, les mist
by his wit that he had very clear and very good them brought
en ce que il le loerent et voltrent. Ensi les mist, puis
to this that they it approved and wished Thus them he-brought then
cent, puis deux cenz, puis mil, tant que tuit le creanterent
hundred then two hundred then thousand until that all it granted
et loerent. Puis en assembla ensemble bien dix mil en
and approved Then thereof he-assembled together well ten thousand in
la chapele de Saint-Marc, la plus bele qui soit; et si lor
the chapel of Saint-Mark the most fair that may-be and so to-them
dist, que il oïssent messe del Saint-Esperit, et priassent
said that they should-hear mass of-the Holy-Spirit and should-pray
Dieu que il les conseillast de la requeste as messages
God that he them might-counsel of the request of-the envoys
que il lor avoient faite. Et il si firent mult volontiers.
that they to-them had made And they so did very willingly

The Treaty with Venice

III

In the minster Villehardouin makes the plea, and the envoys kneel weeping until the people cry that they grant it. The charters are drawn: the host is to go to Babylon, that is Egypt, though it is given out as overseas, and to be at Venice by Saint John's Day 1202. Doge and envoys swear, Pope Innocent confirms, and the envoys borrow five thousand marks to begin the fleet. On the Mont-Cenis Villehardouin meets Walter of Brienne bound for Apulia, whose men promise to join the host and never do.

Quant la messe fu dite, li dux manda aus messages, 26
When the mass was said the doge sent-word to-the envoys
que il requeissent à tot le pueple humblement que il
that they should-ask of all the people humbly that they

volsissent que cele convenance fust faite. Li message
might-wish that that covenant should-be made The envoys
vindrent el mostier. Mult furent esgardé de maintes
came into-the minster Much were looked-at by many
genz qui nes avoient ainc mais veuz.
people who not-them had ever before seen

27 Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne
Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne
moustra la parole par l'acort et par la volenté as autres
set-forth the speech by the-accord and by the will of-the other
messages, et lor dist: «Seignor, li baron de France li
envoys and to-them said Lords the barons of France the
plus halt et li plus poesteif nos ont à vos envoiez; si
most high and the most powerful us have to you sent so
vos crient merci, que il vos preigne pitié de Jerusalem
you they-cry mercy that it you may-take pity of Jerusalem
qui est en servage de Turs, que vos por Dieu voilliez lor
which is in bondage of Turks that you for God may-wish them
compaignier à la honte Jesu-Crist vengier. Et por ce vos
to-accompany to the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ to-avenge And for this you
i ont eslis que il sevent que nule genz n'ont si grant
there they-have chosen that they know that any people not-have so great
pooir, qui sor mer soient, come vos et la vostre genz. Et
power who on sea may-be as you and the your people And
nos comanderent que nos vos en chaïssiens as piez, et
us they-commanded that we to-you thereof should-fall at-the feet and
que nos n'en leveissiens jusques à tant que vos ariez
that we not-thence should-rise until to so-much that you would-have
otroié que vos ariez pitié de la Terre sainte d'outremer.»
granted that you would-have pity of the Land holy of-overseas

Maintenant li six message s'agenoillent à lor piez mult plorant; 28
At-once the six envoys themselves-kneel at their feet much weeping
et li dux et tuit li autre s'escreverent à plorer de la pitié,
and the doge and all the others themselves-burst to weep of the pity
et s'escrierent tuit à une voiz, et tendirent lor mains en
and themselves-cried-out all with one voice and stretched their hands on
halt, et distrent: «Nos l'otrions, nos l'otrions!» Enqui ot si
high and said We it-grant we it-grant There was so
grant bruit et si grant noise, que il sembla que terre fondist.
great din and so great noise that it seemed that earth might-sink
Et quand cele granz noise remest, et cele granz pitiez (que 29
And when that great noise ceased and that great pity that
onques plus grant ne vit nus hom), li bons dux de Venise,
ever more great not saw any man the good doge of Venice
qui mult ere sages et proz, monta el leteri, et parla
who very was wise and valiant mounted into-the lectern and spoke
au pueple et lor dist: «Seignor, véez l'onor que Diex
to-the people and to-them said Lords see the-honor that God
vos a faite; que la meillor genz del monde ont guerpi
to-you has done that the best people of-the world have forsaken
tote l'autre gent, et ont requis vostre compaignie de si alte
all the-other people and have sought your company of so high
chose ensemble faire con de la rescosse Nostre Seignor.»
thing together to-do as of the rescue (of-)Our Lord
Des paroles que li dux dist bones et belles ne vos puis tout 30
Of-the words that the doge said good and fair not to-you I-can all
raconter; mais ensi fina la chose que de faire les chartres
recount but thus ended the matter that of making the charters
pristrent à l'endemain jor; et furent faites et devisées. Quant
they-took to the-next day and were made and drawn-up When
eles furent faites, si fu la chose devisée à conseil que on
they were made so was the matter agreed in private that one

iroit en Babiloine, por ce que par Babiloine poroient mielz
would-go to Babylon for this that by Babylon they-could better
les Turs destruire que par altre terre. Et en oïance, fu devisé
the Turks destroy than by other land And in hearing was declared
que il en iroient outremer. Il estoit adonc quaresmes; et
that they thence would-go overseas It was then Lent and
de la saint Johan en un an, qui fu mil deus cenz ans
from the saint John in one year which was thousand two hundred years
et deus après l'incarnation Jesu-Crist, devoient li baron et
and two after the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ were-to the barons and
li pelerin estre en Venise, et li vaissel appareillié contre als.
the pilgrims to-be in Venice and the vessels prepared for them
31 Quant eles furent faites et saellées, si furent aportées devant
When they were made and sealed so were brought before
le duc el grant palais, où li granz conseils ere et
the doge into-the great palace where the great council was and
li petiz. Et quant li dux lor livra les soes chartres, si
the small And when the doge to-them delivered the his charters so
s'agenoilla moult plorant, et jura sor sainz à bone foi à bien
himself-knelt much weeping and swore on relics in good faith to well
tenir les convenz qui erent es chartres, et toz ses conseils
hold the covenants which were in-the charters and all his council
aisi, qui ere de quarante-six. Et li message rejurerent les lor
also which was of forty-six And the envoys swore-in-turn the their
chartres à tenir, et les sairemenz à lor seignors et les lor,
charters to hold and the oaths of their lords and the their
que il les tenroient à bone foi. Sachiez que là ot mainte
that they them would-hold in good faith Know that there was many-a
lerme plorée de pitié. Et maintenant envoierent lor messages
tear wept of pity And at-once sent their envoys

l'une partie et l'autre à Rome, à l'apostoile Innocent, pour
the-one party and the-other to Rome to the-pope Innocent for
confermer ceste convenance; et il le fist mult volentiers.
to-confirm this covenant and he it did very willingly
Et alors emprunterent li message cinc mil mars d'argent 32
And then borrowed the envoys five thousand marks of-silver
en la vile, et si les bailerent le duc por comencier
in the town and so them handed (to-)the doge for to-begin
le navile. Ensi pristrent congié por raler en lor païs, et
the fleet Thus they-took leave for to-go-back into their country and
chevauchierent par lor jornées tant que il vindrent à Plasence
rode by their day-stages so-far that they came to Piacenza
en Lombardie. Enqui se partirent: Joffrois li mareschaus
in Lombardy There themselves parted Geoffrey the marshal
de Champaigne et Alarz Makeriaus si s'en alerent
of Champagne and Alard Maquereau so themselves-thence went
droit en France; et li autre s'en alerent à Genne et
straight into France and the others themselves-thence went to Genoa and
à Pise por savoir quele aïe il feroient à la terre d'outremer.
to Pisa for to-know what help they would-do to the land of-overseas
Quant Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne passa Moncenis, 33
When Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne crossed Mont-Cenis
si encontra le conte Gautier de Brene, qui s'en aloit
so met the count Walter of Brienne who himself-thence went
en Puille conquerre la terre sa fame, que il avoit
into Apulia to-conquer the land (of-)his wife whom he had
espousée puis que il ot la croiz prise, et qui ere file
wedded since that he had the cross taken and who was daughter
le roi Tancré. Avec lui en aloit Gautiers de Monbeliard
(of-)the king Tancred With him thence went Walter of Montbéliard

et Eustaices de Conflans, Roberz de Joenvile, et granz
and Eustace of Conflans Robert of Joinville and great
partie de la bone gent de Champaigne, qui croisié estoient.
part of the good people of Champagne who crossed were
34 Et quant il lor conta les noveles comme il avoient esploitié,
And when he to-them told the news how they had succeeded
mult en firent grant joie, et mult presierent l'afaire, et
much thereof they-made great joy and much praised the-business and
li distrent: «Nos somes jà meu; et quant vos vendroiz,
to-him said We are already set-out and when you will-come
vos nos troveroiz toz prez.» Mais les aventures avienent ensi
you us will-find all ready But the chances happen thus
con Dieu plaist, ne n'orent nul pooir que plus assemblassent
as (to-)God pleases nor not-had any power that more they-might-assemble
en l'ost. Ce fu mult granz domaiges; que mult estoient preu
in the-host This was very great damage for very they-were worthy
et vaillant. Et ensi se partirent; si tint chascuns sa voie.
and valiant And thus themselves parted so held each his way

The Death of Count Thibaut

IV

Villehardouin finds Count Thibaut sick at Troyes; glad of the news, Thibaut rides once more and never again. He divides his wealth among men sworn to join the host at Venice, and many keep the oath badly. He dies young and much mourned, leaving Blanche of Navarre with a daughter and a son unborn. The Duke of Burgundy and the Count of Bar-le-Duc refuse to take his place, and at Soissons Villehardouin proposes Boniface, Marquis of Montferrat, who is summoned and comes.

Tant chevaucha Joffrois li mareschaus par ses jornées que il 35
So-far rode Geoffrey the marshal by his day-stages that he
vint à Troies en Champaigne, et trova son seignor le conte
came to Troyes in Champagne and found his lord the count
Tibaut malade et deshaitié; et si fu mult liez de sa venue.
Thibaut sick and ailing and so he-was very glad of his coming
Et quant cil li ot contée la novele coment il avoient
And when that-one to-him had told the news how they had
esploité, si fu si liez qu'il dist qu'il chevaucheroit, ce
succeeded so he-was so glad that-he said that-he would-ride this
qu'il n'avoit pieça fait; et leva sus et chevalcha. Alas! con
which-he not-had long-since done and rose up and rode Alas what
granz domages! car onques puis ne chevaucha que cele foiz.
great damage for ever after not he-rode but that time
Sa maladie crut et esforça tant que il fist sa devise et son 36
His sickness grew and strengthened so-much that he made his will and his
lais; et departi son avoir, que il devoit porter, à ses homes et à
legacy and divided his wealth which he was-to carry to his men and to
ses compaignons, dont il avoit mult de bons (nus hom à cel jor
his companions of-whom he had many of good any man at that day
n'en avoit plus). Et si commanda, si con chascuns recevroit
not-thereof had more And so he-commanded so as each would-receive

son avoir, que il jureroit sor sains l'ost de Venise à tenir, ensi
his wealth that he would-swear on relics the-host of Venice to hold so
con il l'avoit promis. Mult i ot de cels qui malvaisement
as he it-had promised Many there had of those who badly
le tindrent, et mult en furent blasmé. Une autre partie
it kept and much thereof were blamed An other part
commanda li cuens de son avoir à retenir por porter en l'ost,
commanded the count of his wealth to retain for to-carry into the-host
et por departir là où en verroit que il serroit miex emploié.
and for to-distribute there where one would-see that it would-be better employed
37 Ensi morut li cuens; et fu uns des homes del monde qui
Thus died the count and was one of-the men of-the world who
fist plus bele fin. Enqui ot mult grant pueple assemblé de
made more fair end There was very great people assembled of
son lignage et de ses homes. Del duel ne convient mie
his lineage and of his men Of-the mourning not behooves at-all
à parler qui illuec fu faiz; que onques plus granz ne fu
to speak which there was made for ever more great not was
faiz por home; et il le dut bien estre, car onques hom de
made for man and it so ought well to-be for ever man of
son aage ne fu plus amés de ses homes ne de l'autre gent.
his age not was more loved by his men nor by the-other people
Enterrez fu delez son pere au mostier de monsegnor Saint
Buried he-was beside his father at-the minster of my-lord Saint
Estiene à Troies. La contesse remest, sa feme, qui Blanche
Stephen at Troyes The countess remained his wife who Blanche
avoit nom, mult bele, mult bone, qui ere file le roi de
had name very fair very good who was daughter (of-)the king of
Navarre, qui avoit de lui une filliette, et ere grosse d'un fil.
Navarre who had of him a little-daughter and was great with-a son

Quant li cuens fu enterrez, Mahius de Monmorenci, Symons 38
When the count was buried Matthew of Montmorency Simon
de Montfort, Joffrois de Joenvile qui ere seneschaus, et Joffrois
of Montfort Geoffrey of Joinville who was seneschal and Geoffrey
li mareschaus alerent al duc Oedon de Borgoine, et si li
the marshal went to-the duke Odo of Burgundy and so to-him
distrent: «Sire, tes cousins est morz; tu voiz le domage qui
said Lord thy cousin is dead thou seest the damage which
à la terre d'outremer est avenuz. Por Dieu te volons proier
to the land of-overseas is happened For God thee we-wish to-pray
que tu preignes la croiz et sequeures la terre d'outremer
that thou take the cross and succor the land of-overseas
el leu cestui; et nos te ferons tot son avoir baillier, et
in-the place (of-)this-one and we to-thee will-have all his wealth handed and
te jurerons sor sainz, et le te ferons aus autres jurer,
to-thee will-swear on relics and it to-thee will-have by-the others sworn
que nos te servirons à bone foi, alsi con nos feissiens lui.»
that we thee will-serve in good faith just as we would-do him
Telx fu sa volentés que il refusa. Sachiez que il peust bien 39
Such was his will that he refused Know that he might well
mielz faire. Joffroi de Joinville chargierent li message que
better do Geoffrey of Joinville charged the envoys that
altretel offre feist au conte de Bar-le-Duc Thibaut,
such-another offer he-should-make to-the count of Bar-le-Duc Thibaut
qui ere cosins al conte qui morz estoit; et refusa le autresi.
who was cousin to-the count who dead was and refused it likewise
Mult fu granz desconforz as pelerins et à toz cels qui 40
Very was great discomfort to-the pilgrims and to all those who
devoient aler el servise Dieu, de la mort le conte
were-to go into-the service (of-)God of the death (of-)the count
Thibaut de Champaigne; et pristrent un parlement al chief
Thibaut of Champagne and they-took a parliament at-the end

del mois à Seissons, por savoir que il porroient faire. Enqui
of-the month at Soissons for to-know what they could do There
furent li cuens Balduins de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li
were the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and the
cuens Loeis de Blois et de Chartain, li cuens Joffrois del
count Louis of Blois and of Chartres the count Geoffrey of-the
Perche, li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et maint autre preudome.
Perche the count Hugh of Saint-Pol and many another worthy-man
41 Joffrois li mareschaus lor mostra la parole, et l'offre que
Geoffrey the marshal to-them set-forth the speech and the-offer that
il avoient faite le duc de Borgoigne et le conte de
they had made (to-)the duke of Burgundy and (to-)the count of
Bar-le-Duc, et coment il l'avoient refusé. «Seignor, fait-il,
Bar-le-Duc and how they it-had refused Lords says-he
escoltez; je vos loeroie une chose, se vos i acordez.
listen I to-you would-advise a thing if you thereto agree
Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat est mult prodom et
The marquis Boniface of Montferrat is very worthy-man and
uns des plus proisiez qui hui cest jor vive. Se vos li
one of-the most esteemed who today this day may-live If you to-him
mandiez que il venist ça et preist le signe de la croiz,
sent-word that he should-come here and should-take the sign of the cross
et se meist el leu le conte de Champaigne, et
and himself should-put in-the place (of-)the count of Champagne and
li donisiez la seigneurie de l'ost, assez tost la prendoit.»
to-him gave the lordship of the-host quite soon it he-would-take
42 Assez i ot paroles dites avant et ariere; mais la fins de
Plenty there had words said forward and back but the end of
la parole fu telx que tuit s'i acorderent, li grant
the speech was such that all themselves-thereto agreed the great
et li petit; et furent les letres escrites et li messaige
and the small and were the letters written and the envoys

eslit, et fu envoiez querre; et il vint, al jor que il
chosen and he-was sent for and he came at-the day that they
li orent mis, par Champaigne et parmi France, où il
to-him had set through Champagne and through France where he
fu mult honorez, et par le roi de France, cui cosins il ere.
was very honored and by the king of France whose cousin he was

Boniface of Montferrat Takes the Cross

V

At Soissons the barons beg Boniface on their knees to lead the host, and he takes the cross in the church of Our Lady. At Cîteaux the Burgundians cross. Geoffrey of the Perche dies and leaves his men to his brother Stephen. After Easter the pilgrims set out over the Alps and gather on the island of Saint Nicholas at Venice. A Flemish fleet sworn to join them by way of Morocco keeps faith badly, and many shun Venice for other ports, above all Marseilles, to their shame.

Ensi vint à un parlement à Soissons qui nomez fu; et illuec 43
Thus he-came to a parliament at Soissons which named was and there
fu la granz foisons des contes et des barons et des croisiez.
was the great abundance of-the counts and of-the barons and of-the crossed
Con il oïrent que li marchis venoit, si alerent encontre lui; si
When they heard that the marquis came so they-went to-meet him so
l'onorerent mult. Al matin si fu li parlemenz en un vergier
him-honored much At-the morning so was the parliament in an orchard
à l'abaïe madame Sainte Marie de Soissons. Enqui requistrent
at the-abbey (of-)my-lady Saint Mary of Soissons There they-besought
le marchis que il avoient mandé, et li prient por Dieu que
the marquis whom they had summoned and him they-pray for God that
il preigne la croiz, et reçoive la seignorie de l'ost, et soit el
he take the cross and receive the lordship of the-host and be in-the

leu le conte Thibaut de Champaigne, et preigne son avoir
place (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne and take his wealth
et ses homes. Et l'en chaïrent as piez mult plorant; et il
and his men And him-thereof they-fell at-the feet much weeping and he
lor rechiet as piez, et dit que il le fera mult volentiers.
to-them falls-in-turn at-the feet and says that he it will-do very willingly
44 Ensi fist li marchis lor proiere, et reçut la seigneurie
Thus did the marquis their prayer and received the lordship
de l'ost. Maintenant li evesques de Soissons et missire
of the-host At-once the bishop of Soissons and my-lord
Folques li bons hom, et dui blanc abé que il avoit
Fulk the good man and two white abbots whom he had
amené de son païs, l'enmainent à l'iglyse Nostre-Dame, et
brought from his country him-lead to the-church (of-)Our-Lady and
li atauchent la croiz à l'espaule. Ensi fina cis parlemenz;
to-him attach the cross at the-shoulder Thus ended this parliament
et l'endemain si prist congié por raler en son païs
and the-next-day so he-took leave for to-go-back into his country
et por atorner son affaire, et dist que chascuns atornast
and for to-prepare his business and said that each should-prepare
le suen; que il seroit encontre als en Venise.
the his-own for he would-be to-meet them in Venice
45 Ensi s'en ala li marchis al chapitre à Cystials, qui
Thus himself-thence went the marquis to-the chapter at Cîteaux which
est à la sainte Croiz en septembre. Enqui trova mult grant
is at the holy Cross in September There he-found very great
plenté des abez et des barons et des autres genz de
plenty of-the abbots and of-the barons and of-the other people of
Borgoigne; et missire Folques i ala por parler des croiz.
Burgundy and my-lord Fulk there went for to-speak of-the crosses
Enqui se croisa Oedes li Champenois de Chanlite et
There himself crossed Odo the Champenois of Champlitte and

Guillaumes ses freres, Richars de Danpierre, Oedes ses freres,
William his brother Richard of Dampierre Odo his brother
Guis de Pesmes, Haimmes ses freres, Guis de Covelans, et
Guy of Pesmes Aimo his brother Guy of Conflans and
maintes bones genz de Borgoigne dont li non ne sont mie
many good people of Burgundy of-whom the names not are at-all
en escrit. Après se croisa li evesques d'Ostun, Guigues li
in writing After himself crossed the bishop of-Autun Guigues the
cuens de Forois, Hues de Bregi li peres et li fils, Hues
count of Forez Hugh of Bergi the father and the son Hugh
de Colemi. Aval en Provence, se croisa Pierres Bromonz,
of Colemi Down in Provence himself crossed Peter Bromont
et autres gens assez dont nos ne savons pas les noms.
and other people plenty of-whom we not know at-all the names
Ensi s'atornerent parmi totes les terres li pelerin. Ha 46
Thus themselves-prepared through all the lands the pilgrims Ah
las! con granz domages lor avint, el quaresme après,
alas what great damage to-them happened in-the Lent after
devant ce que il durent movoir; que li cuens Joffrois del
before this that they were-to set-out for the count Geoffrey of-the
Perche s'acocha de maladie, et fist sa devise en tel
Perche himself-took-to-bed of sickness and made his will in such
maniere que il comanda que Estenes ses freres aust son
manner that he commanded that Stephen his brother should-have his
avoir et menast ses homes en l'ost. De cest eschange
wealth and should-lead his men into the-host Of this exchange
se soffrissent mult bien li perelin, se Diex volsist.
themselves would-have-forgone very well the pilgrims if God had-wished
Ensi fina li cuens et morut, don granz domages fu; et
Thus ended the count and died whereof great damage was and

bien fu droiz, car mul ere hals ber et honorez, et bons
well was right for very he-was high baron and honored and good
chevaliers. Mult fu grans dielx par tote sa terre.
knight Very was great mourning through all his land

47 Après la Pasque, entor la Pentecoste, encomencierent à movoir
After the Easter about the Pentecost began to set-out
li pelerin de lor païs. Et sachiez que mainte lerme i fu
the pilgrims from their country And know that many-a tear there was
plorée de pitié al departir de lor païs, de lor genz et de
wept of pity at-the departing from their country from their people and from
lor amis. Ensi chevauchierent parmi Borgoigne et parmi les
their friends Thus they-rode through Burgundy and through the
monz de Mongeu, et par Moncenis, et par Lombardie; et
mountains of Mont-Joux and by Mont-Cenis and by Lombardy and
ensi comencierent à asembler en Venise, et se logierent
thus began to assemble in Venice and themselves lodged
en une ysle que on appelle Saint Nicolas enz el port.
in an isle that one calls Saint Nicholas within in-the port

48 En cel termine mut uns estoires de Flandres par mer
In that time set-out a fleet of Flanders by sea
ù ot mult grant plenté de bone gent armée. De
where there-was very great plenty of good people armed Of
cele estoire si fu chevetaignes Johans de Neele chastelains
that fleet so was captain John of Nesle castellan
de Bruges, et Tyerris qui fu filz le conte Phelippe de
of Bruges and Thierry who was son (of-)the count Philip of
Flandres, et Nicholes de Mailli. Et cil promistrent le
Flanders and Nicholas of Mailly And those promised (to-)the
conte Baudoin, et jurerent sor sains, que il iroient par les
count Baldwin and swore on relics that they would-go by the
destroiz de Marroc, et assembleroient à l'ost de Venise et
straits of Morocco and would-join to the-host of Venice and

à lui, en quelque leu que il oroient dire que il torneroit.
to him in whatever place that they would-hear say that he would-turn
Et por ce en envoierent li cuens et Henris ses freres de
And for this thereof sent the count and Henry his brother of
lor nés chargies de dras et de viande et d'autres choses.
their ships laden with cloths and with victuals and with-other things
Mult fu bele cele estoire et riche, et mult i avoit grant 49
Very was fair that fleet and rich and very there had great
fiance li cuens de Flandres et li perelin, porce que la
trust the count of Flanders and the pilgrims because that the
plus granz plentez de lor bons serjans s'en alerent
most great plenty of their good sergeants themselves-thence went
en cele estoire; mais malvaisement tindrent convent à lor
in that fleet but badly they-kept covenant to their
seignor et tuit li autre, porce que cist, et maint autre,
lord and all the others because that these and many another
douterent le grant peril que cil de Venise avoient enpris.
feared the great peril that those of Venice had undertaken
Ensi lor failli li evesques d'Ostun, Guigues li cuens de 50
Thus to-them failed the bishop of-Autun Guigues the count of
Forois, et Pierres Bromonz, et autre gent assez qui mult
Forez and Peter Bromont and other people plenty who much
en furent blasmé, et petit esploit firent là où il
thereof were blamed and little achievement made there where they
alerent. Et des François lor refaili Bernarz de Moruel,
went And of-the French to-them failed-in-turn Bernard of Moreuil
Hues de Chaumont, Henris d'Arraines, Johans de Vilers,
Hugh of Chaumont Henry of-Araines John of Villers
Gautiers de Saint Denise, Hues ses freres, et maint autre
Walter of Saint Denis Hugh his brother and many another
qui eschiverent le passage de Venise por le grant peril qui
who shunned the passage of Venice for the great peril which

i ere, et s'en alerent passer à Marseille; dont
there was and themselves-thence went to-cross at Marseilles whereof
il reçurent grant honte, et mult en furent blasmé, et
they received great shame and much thereof were blamed and
dont granz mesaventure lor en avint puis.
whereof great mischance to-them thereof happened after

The Host at Venice Cannot Pay

VI

At Venice word comes that many pilgrims are making for other ports, so Hugh of Saint-Pol and Villehardouin ride to Pavia, find Count Louis, and turn many toward Venice, though Vilain of Neuilly and others leave Piacenza for Apulia. The host is fine, and the fleet three times what it needs, but the passage money falls far short. The greater part will pay no more, while Baldwin, Louis, Boniface, and Hugh give their plate and all they can borrow, and still thirty-four thousand marks are owed.

51 Or vos lairons de cels, et dirons des pelerins dont granz
Now to-you we-will-leave of those and we-will-tell of-the pilgrims of-whom great
partie ere jà venue en Venise. Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres
part was already come into Venice The count Baldwin of Flanders
i ert jà venuz et maint des autres. Là lor vint novele
there was already come and many-a of-the others There to-them came news
que mult des pelerins s'en aloient par autres chemins à
that many of-the pilgrims themselves-thence went by other roads to
autres porz; et furent mult esmaié, porce que il ne poroient la
other ports and they-were very dismayed because that they not could the
convenance tenir ne l'avoir paier que il devoient as Venisiens.
covenant keep nor the-money pay that they owed to-the Venetians

Et pristrent conseil entr'els que il envoieroient bons 52
And they-took counsel among-themselves that they would-send good
messages encontre les pelerins, et encontre le conte Loeys de
envoys to-meet the pilgrims and to-meet the count Louis of
Blois et de Chartein, qui n'ere mie encor venuz, por conforter
Blois and of Chartres who not-was at-all yet come for to-comfort
et por crier merci qu'il aussent pitié de la Terre d'oltremer,
and for to-cry mercy that-they should-have pity of the Land of-overseas
et que autres passages ne pooit nul preu tenir que cil de Venise.
and that other passage not could any profit bring than that of Venice
A cel message fu esliz li cuens Hues de Saint Pol et Joffrois 53
To that message was chosen the count Hugh of Saint Pol and Geoffrey
li mareschaus de Champaigne; et chevaucherent tresci que à
the marshal of Champagne and they-rode as-far that to
Pavie en Lombardie. Enqui troverent le conte de Loeys a
Pavia in Lombardy There they-found the count — Louis with
grant plenté de bons chevaliers, et de bones genz. Par lor
great plenty of good knights and of good people By their
confort et par lor proiere guenchirent genz assez en Venise,
comfort and by their prayer turned people plenty to Venice
qui s'en alassent as autres porz par autres chemins.
who themselves-thence would-have-gone to-the other ports by other roads
Neporquant de Plaisance se partirent unes mult bones 54
Nevertheless from Piacenza themselves parted some very good
genz qui s'en alerent par autres chemins en Puille.
people who themselves-thence went by other roads into Apulia
Là fu Villains de Nuilli qui ere uns des bons chevaliers
There was Vilain of Neuilly who was one of-the good knights
del monde, Henris d'Ardillieres, Reinarz de Danpierre,
of-the world Henry of-Ardillieres Renard of Dampierre
Henris de Lonc-Champ, Giles de Traseignies qui ere hom
Henry of Longchamp Giles of Trasignies who was man

liges au conte Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut; et
liege to-the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and
li avoit doné del suen cinc cenz livres por aler avec lui
to-him he-had given of-the his-own five hundred pounds for to-go with him
el voiaje. Avec cels s'en alla mult granz plentés de
on-the voyage With those themselves-thence went very great plenty of
chevaliers et de serjans dont li nom ne sunt mie en escrit.
knights and of sergeants of-whom the names not are at-all in writing
55 Mult fu granz descroisemenz à cels de l'ost qui en Venise
Very was great loss to those of the-host who into Venice
aloient, et els en avint granz mesavanture, si con vos
went and them thereof befell great mischance so as you
porroiz oïr avant.
will-be-able to-hear further-on
56 Ensi s'en ala li cuens Loeys et li autre baron en
Thus himself-thence went the count Louis and the other barons to
Venise; et furent receu à grant feste et à grant joie, et
Venice and were received with great feast and with great joy and
se logierent en l'isle Saint-Nicholas avec les autres. Mult
themselves lodged in the-isle Saint-Nicholas with the others Very
fu li oz bele et de bones genz. Onques de tant de gent
was the host fair and of good people Ever of so-much of people
nus hom plus belle ne vit; et li Venisien lor firent marchié
any man more fair not saw and the Venetians to-them made market
si plenteuros con il convint de totes les choses que il covient
so plentiful as it behooved of all the things that it behooves
à chevaus et à cors d'omes; et li navies que il orent
for horses and for bodies of-men and the fleet that they had
appareillié fu si riches et si bels que onques nus hom crestiens
prepared was so rich and so fair that ever any man Christian

plus bel ne plus riche ne vit, si cum de nés et de galies et
more fair nor more rich not saw so as of ships and of galleys and
de vissiers, bien à trois tanz que il n'aust en l'ost de genz.
of horse-transports well at three times as it had in the-host of people
Ha! cum granz domages fu, quant li autre qui alerent as 57
Ah what great damage it-was when the others who went to-the
autres porz ne vindrent illuec! Bien fust la crestientez halcie
other ports not came there Well would-be the Christendom raised
et la terre des Turs abaissie! Mult orent bien attendues
and the land of-the Turks lowered Very had well kept
totes lor convenances li Venisien, et plus assez; et il
all their covenants the Venetians and more much and they
semonstrent les contes et les barons les lor à tenir, et que
summoned the counts and the barons the their to keep and that
li avoirs lor fust renduz; que il estoient prest de movoir.
the money to-them should-be paid for they were ready to set-out
Porchaciez fu li passages par l'ost; et avoit assez de 58
Sought was the passage-money through the-host and there-was plenty of
cels qui disoient que il ne pooient mie paier lor passage,
those who said that they not could at-all pay their passage
et li baron em prenoient ce qu'il pooient avoir. Ensi
and the barons thereof took this that-they could have Thus
paierent ce que il en porent avoir. Quant il orent quis
they-paid this that they thereof could have When they had sought
et porchacié le passage, et quant il orent paié, si ne
and gathered the passage-money and when they had paid so not
furent ne en mi ne à sum.
they-were neither in half nor in sum
Et lors parlerent li baron ensemble et distrent: «Seignor, 59
And then spoke the barons together and said Lords
li Venisien nos ont mult bien attendues noz convenances,
the Venetians to-us have very well kept our covenants

et plus assez; mais nos ne somes mie tant de gent que
and more much but we not are at-all so-much of people that
par noz passages paier poons les lor attendre; et ce est par
by our passages to-pay we-can the their keep and this is by
la defaute de cels qui alerent as autres porz. Por Deu si
the default of those who went to-the other ports For God so
mette chascuns de son avoir, tant que nos poissons paier
let-put each of his wealth so-much that we may pay
noz convenances; que encore est-il mielz que nos metons
our covenants for still is-it better that we put
toz noz avoirs ci, que ce que nos perdissiens ce que nos
all our wealth here than this that we should-lose this that we
i avons mie, et que nos defaillisiens de noz convenances;
there have put and that we should-fail of our covenants
que se ceste os remaint, la rescosse d'oltremer est faillie.»
for if this host remains the rescue of-overseas is failed
60 Là ot grant descorde de la graindre partie des barons et
There was great discord of the greater part of-the barons and
de l'autre gent, et distrent: «Nos avons paié noz passages;
of the-other people and they-said We have paid our passages
s'il nos en volent mener, nos en iromes volentiers; et
if-they us thence wish to-take we thence will-go willingly and
se il ne vuelent, nos nos porchacerons et irons à altres
if they not wish we ourselves will-provide and will-go to other
passages.» Por ce le disoient que il volsissent que li os
passages For this it they-said that they would-wish that the host
se departist, por aler en son païs chascun. Et l'autre
itself should-break-up for to-go into his country each And the-other
partie dist: «Mielx voluns nos tot nostre avoir metre, et
party said Better wish we all our wealth to-put and

aler povre en l'ost, que ce que elle se departist ne
to-go poor into the-host than this that it itself should-break-up or
faillist; quar Diex le nos rendra bien quant lui plaira.»
should-fail for God it to-us will-render well when him will-please
Lors comence li cuens de Flandre à baillier quanque il 61
Then begins the count of Flanders to hand-over whatever he
ot et quanque il pot enprunter, et li cuens Loeys, et li
had and whatever he could borrow and the count Louis and the
marchis de Mont-Ferrat, et li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et
marquis of Montferrat and the count Hugh of Saint-Pol and
cil qui à la lor partie se tenoient. Lors peussiez veoir
those who to the their party themselves held Then you-could see
tante bele vaissellemente d'or et d'argent porter à l'ostel
so-much fair plate of-gold and of-silver carried to the-house
le duc por faire paiement. Et quant il orent paié,
(of-)the doge for to-make payment And when they had paid
si failli de la convenance trente-quatre mil mars d'argent;
so failed of the covenant thirty-four thousand marks of-silver
et de ce furent mult lié cil qui lor avoir avoient mis
and of this were very glad those who their wealth had put
arriere, ne n'i voldrent riens metre; que lors cuiderent-il
back nor not-there wished anything put for then thought-they
bien que li os fust faillie et depeçast. Mais Diex, qui
well that the host would-be failed and would-break-up But God who
les desconsiliez conseille, ne le volt mie ensi soffrir.
the counsel-less counsels not it wished at-all thus to-suffer

The Doge Takes the Cross

VII

The doge proposes that the host help Venice retake Zara from the King of Hungary, the debt deferred until they conquer. In Saint Mark's the old, blind doge takes the cross himself, sewn on his cotton hat, and many Venetians follow. Villehardouin then tells how Alexius blinded and deposed his brother, the Emperor Sursac, and how Sursac's son Alexius escaped to Philip of Germany and now asks the host for help. Envoys go to Germany. Fulk of Neuilly dies, and German crusaders arrive.

62 Lors parla li dux à sa gent, et lor dist: «Seignor, ceste
Then spoke the doge to his people and to-them said Lords this
genz re nos puent plus paier; et quanque il nos ont
people not to-us can more pay and whatever they to-us have
paié, nos l'avons tot gaaignié por la convenance que il
paid we it-have all won by the covenant that they
ne nos puent mie tenir. Mais nostre droiz ne seroit mie
not to-us can at-all keep But our right not would-be at-all
par toz contez; si en recevriens grant blasme et nos
by all counted so thereof we-would-receive great blame both we
et nostre terre. Or lor querons un plait.
and our land Now to-them let-us-seek a bargain

63 «Li rois de Ungrie si nos tolt Jadres en Esclavonie, qui est une
The king of Hungary so from-us took Zara in Slavonia which is one
des plus forz citez del monde, ne jà, par pooir que nous aions,
of-the most strong cities of-the world nor ever by power that we may-have
recovrée ne sera se par ceste gent non. Querons lor qu'il le
recovered not will-be except by this people not Let-us-ask them that-they it
nos aïent à conquerre, et nos lor respiterons les trente-quatre
to-us help to conquer and we to-them will-defer the thirty-four
mil mars d'argent que il nos doivent, trosque adont que
thousand marks of-silver that they to-us owe until then that

Diex les nos laira conquerre ensenble nos et els.» Ensi fu
God them to-us will-let conquer together we and they Thus was
cis plais requis. Mult fu contraliez de cels qui volsissent que
this bargain sought Very it-was opposed by those who would-wish that
l'os se departist; mais totes-voies fu faiz li plaiz et otroiez.
the-host itself should-break-up but nevertheless was made the bargain and granted
Lors furent assemblé à un dimanche à l'iglise Saint-Marc. 64
Then were assembled on a Sunday in the-church Saint-Mark
Si ere une mult grans feste; et i fu li pueples de
So there-was a very great feast and there was the people of
la terre, et li plus des barons et des pelerins.
the land and the most of-the barons and of-the pilgrims
Devant ce que la granz messe commençast, li dux de Venise, 65
Before this that the great mass should-begin the doge of Venice
qui avoit nom Henris Dandole, monta el leteril, et parla
who had name Henry Dandolo mounted into-the lectern and spoke
al pueple et lor dist: «Seignor, acompaignié estes à
to-the people and to-them said Lords joined you-are to
la meilor gent dou monde et por le plus halt afaire que
the best people of-the world and for the most high business that
onques genz entrepreissent; et je sui vialz hom et febles,
ever people undertook and I am old man and feeble
et auroie mestier de repos, et maaigniez sui de mon cors;
and would-have need of rest and maimed I-am of my body
mais je voi que nus ne vos sauroit si governer et si
but I see that anyone not you would-know-how so to-govern and so
maistrer com ge, qui vostre sire sui. Se vos voliez otroier
to-master as I who your lord am If you would-wish to-grant
que je preisse le signe de la croiz por vos garder et por vos
that I should-take the sign of the cross for you to-guard and for you

enseignier, et mes filz remansist en mon leu et gardast la
to-instruct and my son should-remain in my place and should-guard the
terre, je iroie vivre ou morir avec vos et avec les pelerins.»
land I would-go to-live or to-die with you and with the pilgrims
66 Et quand cil l'oïrent, si s'escrierent tuit à une voiz:
And when those it-heard so themselves-cried-out all with one voice
«Nos vos proions por Dieu que vos l'otroiez et que vos
We you pray for God that you it-grant and that you
le façois, et que vos en viegnez avec nos.»
it do and that you thence come with us
67 Mult ot illuec grant pitié del pueple de la terre et
Very there-was there great pity of-the people of the land and
des pelerins, et mainte lerme plorée, porce que cil prodom
of-the pilgrims and many-a tear wept because that that worthy-man
aust si grant ochoison de remanoir; car viels hom ere;
should-have so great occasion to remain for old man he-was
et si avoit les ialz en la teste biaus, et si n'en véoit gote;
and so had the eyes in the head fair and so not-thereof saw a-drop
que perdue avoit la veue par une plaie qu'il ot el chief.
for lost he-had the sight by a wound that-he had in-the head
Mult parere de grant cuer. Ha! cum mal le sembloient
Very much-was-he of great heart Ah how ill him resembled
cil qui à autres porz estoient alé por eschiver le peril!
those who to other ports were gone for to-shun the peril
68 Ensi avala le literil, et ala devant l'autel et se mist à
Thus came-down-from the lectern and went before the-altar and himself put on
genoilz mult plorant; et il li cousirent la croiz en un grant
knees much weeping and they to-him sewed the cross on a great
chapel de coton par devant, porce que il voloit que la genz la
hat of cotton in front because that he wished that the people it
veissent. Et Venisien se comencent à croisier à mult grant
should-see And Venetians themselves begin to take-the-cross in very great

foison et à grant plenté: en icel jor, encor i ot mult poi de
abundance and in great plenty on that day still there was very few of
croisiez. Nostre pelerin orent mult grant joie et mult grant pitié
crossed Our pilgrims had very great joy and very great pity
de cele croiz, por le sens et por la proesce que il avoit en lui.
of that cross for the sense and for the prowess that he had in him
Ensi fu croisiez li dux con vos avez oï. Lors començа-en 69
Thus was crossed the doge as you have heard Then began-one
à livrer les nés et les galies et les vissiers as barons
to deliver the ships and the galleys and the horse-transports to-the barons
por movoir; et del termine fu ja tant alé que li
for to-set-out and of-the term was already so-much gone that the
septembres aprocha.
September drew-near
Or oïez une des plus granz merveilles et des greignors 70
Now hear one of-the most great marvels and of-the greatest
aventures que vos onques oïssiez. A cel tens, ot un
adventures that you ever may-have-heard At that time there-was an
empereor en Costantinoble qui avoit à nom Sursac; et si
emperor in Constantinople who had as name Sursac and so
avoit un frere qui avoit à nom Alexis, que il avoit rachaté
had a brother who had as name Alexius whom he had ransomed
de prison de Turs. Icil Alexis si prist son frere l'empereor;
from prison of Turks That Alexius so took his brother the-emperor
si li traist les ialz de la teste, et se fit empereor
so from-him drew the eyes from the head and himself made emperor
en tel traïson cum vos avez oï. Ensi le tint longuement en
by such treason as you have heard Thus him held long in
prison, et un suen fil qui avoit nom Alexis. Icil fils si eschapa
prison and a his son who had name Alexius That son so escaped
de la prison, et si s'enfui en un vassel, trosque à une cité
from the prison and so himself-fled in a vessel as-far to a city

sor mer qui a nom Ancone. D'enqui s'en ala al roi
on sea which has name Ancona From-there himself-thence went to-the king
Phelippe d'Alemaigne qui avoit sa seror à fame; si vint à
Philip of-Germany who had his sister to wife so he-came to
Verone en Lombardie, et herberja en la vile, et trova des
Verona in Lombardy and lodged in the town and found of-the
pelerins assez et des genz qui s'en aloient en l'ost.
pilgrims plenty and of-the people who themselves-thence went into the-host
71 Et cil qui l'avoient aidié à eschaper, qui estoient avec lui,
And those who him-had helped to escape who were with him
li distrent: «Sire, véez-ci un ost en Venise près de nos,
to-him said Lord see-here a host in Venice near to us
de la meillor gent et des meillors chevaliers del munde
of the best people and of-the best knights of-the world
qui vont oltre mer; quar lor crie merci; que il aient
who go over sea now to-them cry mercy that they may-have
de toi pitié et de ton pere, qui à tel tort iestes deserité.
of thee pity and of thy father who with such wrong you-are disinherited
Et se il te volent aidier, tu feras quanque il deviserunt
And if they thee wish to-help thou wilt-do whatever they will-devise
de bouche. Espoir il lor en prendra pitié.» Et il dist
of mouth Perhaps it to-them thereof will-take pity And he said
que il le fera mult volentiers, et que cis conseils est bons.
that he it will-do very willingly and that this counsel is good
72 Ensi prist ses messages; si les envoia al marchis Boniface
Thus took his envoys so them sent to-the marquis Boniface
de Montferrat qui sires ere de l'ost, et as autres barons.
of Montferrat who lord was of the-host and to-the other barons
Et quant li baron les virent, si se merveillerent mult,
And when the barons them saw so themselves marveled much
et respondirent as messages: «Nos entendons bien que
and answered to-the envoys We understand well what

vos dites; nos envoierons al roi Philippe avec lui, où
you say we will-send to-the king Philip with him where
il s'en va. Se cis nos vielt aidier la terre d'oltremer
he himself-thence goes If this-one us wishes to-help the land of-overseas
à recovrer, nos li aiderons la soe terre à conquerre; que
to recover we him will-help the his land to conquer for
nos savons qu'ele est tolue lui et son pere à tort.»
we know that-it is taken-from him and his father with wrong
Ensi furent li message envoié en Alemaigne al valet de
Thus were the envoys sent into Germany to-the youth of
Costantinople et al roi Phelippe d'Alemaigne.
Constantinople and to-the king Philip of-Germany

Devant ce que nos vos avons ici conté, si vint une novele 73
Before this that we to-you have here told so came a news
en l'ost dont il furent mult dolent li baron et les
into the-host whereof they were very sorrowful the barons and the
autres genz, que messire Folques li bons hom, li sains
other people that my-lord Fulk the good man the holy
hom, qui parla premierement des croiz, fina et morut.
man who spoke first of-the crosses ended and died

Et après ceste aventure, lor vint une compagnie de mult bone 74
And after this adventure to-them came a company of very good
gent de l'empire d'Alemaigne, dont il furent mult lié. Là vint
people of the-empire of-Germany whereof they were very glad There came
li evesques de Havestat, et li cuens Bertous de Casseneleboghe,
the bishop of Halberstadt and the count Berthold of Katzenelnbogen
Garniers de Borlande Tierris de Los, Henris d'Orme, Tierris de
Garnier of Borland Thierry of Loos Henry of-Ulmen Thierry of
Diès, Rogiers de Suitre, Alixandres de Vilers, Olris de Tone,
Diest Roger of Suitre Alexander of Villers Ulric of Tone
et maintes autres bones genz qui ne sont mie retrait ou livre.
and many other good people who not are at-all related in-the book

The Siege of Zara

VIII

The fleet sails from Venice in October 1202 and on Saint Martin's Eve reaches Zara, whose walls astonish the pilgrims. They break the harbor chain and camp. Stephen of the Perche and others leave for Apulia. Zara offers to surrender to the doge, but the faction that wants the host broken up tells Zara's envoys the pilgrims will not attack, and the Abbot of Vaux forbids the assault in the pope's name. The barons keep faith with the doge, and after five days of bombardment and mining Zara asks again for the terms it refused.

75 Adonc furent departies les nés et li vissier par les barons.
Then were divided the ships and the horse-transports among the barons
Ha! Diex, tant bon destrier i ot mis! Et quant les nés
Ah God so-many good chargers there was put And when the ships
furent chargies d'armes et de viandes et de chevaliers et de
were laden with-arms and with victuals and with knights and with
serjanz, et li escu furent portendu environ des borz et des
sergeants and the shields were hung around of-the gunwales and of-the
chastials des nés, et les banieres dont il avoit tant de belles.
castles of-the ships and the banners whereof there were so-many of fair-ones
76 Et sachiez que il porterent es nés de perieres et de
And know that they carried in-the ships of petraries and of
mangoniax plus de trois cenz, et toz les engins qui ont
mangonels more than three hundred and all the engines which have
mestier à vile prendre, à grant plenté. Ne onques plus bels
use for town to-take in great plenty Nor ever more fair
estores ne parti de nul port; et ce fu as octaves de
fleet not departed from any port and this was at-the octaves of
la feste saint Remi en l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist
the feast (of-)saint Remi in the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ

mil deus cenz anz et deus. Ensi partirent del port
thousand two hundred years and two Thus they-departed from-the port
de Venise con vos avez oï.
of Venice as you have heard
La veille de la saint Martin vindrent devant Jadres en 77
The eve of the saint Martin they-came before Zara in
Esclavonie, et virent la cité fermée de halz murs et de haltes
Slavonia and saw the city enclosed with high walls and with high
torz; et por noiant demandesiez plus bele, ne plus fort, ne plus
towers and for nothing you-would-seek more fair nor more strong nor more
riche. Et quant li perelin la virent, il se merveillerent
rich And when the pilgrims it saw they themselves marveled
mult, et distrent li un as autres: «Coment porroit estre
much and said the ones to-the others How could be
prise tels ville par force, se Diex meismes nel fait?»
taken such town by force if God himself not-it does
Les premieres nés qui vindrent devant la ville aancrerent, 78
The first ships which came before the town anchored
et atendirent les autres. Et al maitin fist mult bel jor
and awaited the others And at-the morning made very fair day
et mult cler, et vinrent les galies totes et li vissier
and very clear and came the galleys all and the horse-transports
et les autres nés qui estoient arriers; et pristrent le port
and the other ships which were behind and took the port
par force, et rompirent la chaaine qui mult ere forz et
by force and broke the chain which very was strong and
bien atornée; et descendirent à terre, si que li porz fu
well arrayed and went-down to land so that the port was
entr'aus et la ville. Lor veissiez maint chevalier et maint
between-them and the town Then you-might-see many-a knight and many-a
serjant issir des nés, et maint bon destrier traire des
sergeant come-out of-the ships and many-a good charger drawn from-the

vissiers, et maint riche tré et maint paveilon. Ensi se
horse-transports and many-a rich tent and many-a pavilion Thus itself
loja l'oz, et fu Jadres assegie le jor de la saint Martin.
lodged the-host and was Zara besieged the day of the saint Martin
79 A cele foiz ne furent mie venu tuit li baron; car encore n'ere
At that time not were at-all come all the barons for still not-was
mie venuz li marchis de Monferat qui ere remés arriere por
at-all come the marquis of Montferrat who was remained behind for
afaire que il avoit. Estenes del Perche fu remés malades en
business that he had Stephen of-the Perche was remained sick in
Venise, et Mahius de Monmorenci; et quant il furent gari,
Venice and Matthew of Montmorency and when they were cured
si s'en vint Mahius de Monmorenci après l'ost à Jadres.
so himself-thence came Matthew of Montmorency after the-host to Zara
Mais Estenes del Perche ne le fist mie si bien; quar il guerpi
But Stephen of-the Perche not it did at-all so well for he forsook
l'ost, et s'en ala en Puille sejorner. Avec lui s'en ala
the-host and himself-thence went into Apulia to-sojourn With him himself-thence went
Rotres de Monfort, et Ive de la Jaille, et maint autre qui mult
Rotrou of Montfort and Ivo of the Jaille and many another who much
en furent blasmé, et passerent au passage de marz en Surie.
thereof were blamed and crossed at-the passage of March into Syria
80 L'endemain de la saint Martin issirent de cels de Jadres, et
The-next-day of the saint Martin came-out of those of Zara and
vindrent parler al duc de Venise qui ere en son paveillon,
came to-speak to-the doge of Venice who was in his pavilion
et li distrent que il li randroient la cité et totes les
and to-him said that they to-him would-render the city and all the
lor choses, sals lor cors, en sa merci. Et li dux dist qu'il
their things save their bodies at his mercy And the doge said that-he

n'enprendroit mie cestui plait ne autre, se par le conseil non
not-would-undertake at-all this bargain nor other except by the counsel not
as contes et as barons, et qu'il en iroit à els parler.
of-the counts and of-the barons and that-he thence would-go to them to-speak
Endementiers que il ala parler as contes et as barons, 81
While that he went to-speak to-the counts and to-the barons
icele partie dont vos avez oï arrieres, qui voloit l'ost
that party of-which you have heard before which wished the-host
depecier, parlerent as messages et lor distrent: «Porquoi
to-break-up spoke to-the envoys and to-them said Why
volez-vos rendre vostre cité? Li pelerin ne vos assailiront
will-you render your city The pilgrims not you will-assail
mie, ne d'aus n'avez-vos garde. Se vos vos poez defendre
at-all nor of-them not-have-you care If you yourselves can defend
des Venisiens, dont estes-vos quite.» Et ensi pristrent un
from-the Venetians then are-you quit And thus they-took one
d'aus meismes qui avoit nom Roberz de Bove, qui ala as
of-them themselves who had name Robert of Boves who went to-the
murs de la ville et lor dist ce meismes. Ensi rentrerent
walls of the town and to-them said this same Thus went-back-in
li message en la vile, et fu li plais remés.
the envoys into the town and was the bargain left-off
Li dux de Venise, con il vint as contes et as barons, si 82
The doge of Venice when he came to-the counts and to-the barons so
lor dist: «Seignor, ensi me voelent cil de là dedenz rendre
to-them said Lords thus me wish those of there within to-render
la cité, sals lor cors, à ma merci, ne je n'enprendroie cestui
the city save their bodies at my mercy nor I not-would-undertake this
plait ne autre, se par vostre conseil non.» Et li baron
bargain nor other except by your counsel not And the barons
li respondirent: «Sire, nos vos loons que vos le preigneiz,
to-him answered Lord we you advise that you it take

et si le vos prions.» Et il dist que il le feroit; et il
and so it you we-pray And he said that he it would-do and they
s'en tornerent tuit ensemble al paveillon le duc
themselves-thence turned all together to-the pavilion (of-)the doge
por le plait prendre; et troverent que li message s'en
for the bargain to-take and found that the envoys themselves-thence
furent alé par le conseil à cels qui voloient l'ost depecier.
were gone by the counsel of those who wished the-host to-break-up
83 Et dont se dreça uns abes de Vals de l'ordre de Cistials,
And then himself raised an abbot of Vaux of the-order of Citeaux
et lor dist: «Seignor, je vos deffent, de par l'Apostoile
and to-them said Lords I you forbid on behalf-of the-Pope
de Rome, que vos ne assailliez ceste cité; car ele est de
of Rome that you — assail this city for it is of
crestiens, et vos iestes perelin.» Et quant ce oï li dux,
Christians and you are pilgrims And when this heard the doge
si fu mult iriez et destroiz, et dist as contes et as
so was-he very angry and distressed and said to-the counts and to-the
barons: «Seignor, je avoie de ceste vile plait à ma volonté, et
barons Lords I had of this town bargain at my will and
vostre gent le m'ont tolu; et vos m'aviez convent que vos
your people it from-me-have taken and you me-had covenant that you
la m'aideriez à conquerre, et je vos semon que vos le façoiz.»
it me-would-help to conquer and I you summon that you it do
84 Maintenant li conte et li baron parlerent ensemble, et
At-once the counts and the barons spoke together and
cil qui à la lor partie se tenoient, et distrent: «Mult
those who to the their party themselves held and said Very
ont fait grant oltrage cil qui ont cest plait desfait, et il
have done great outrage those who have this bargain undone and there
ne fu onques jorz que il ne meissent paine à ceste ost
not was ever day that they not should-put pains to this host

depecier. Or somes nos honi, se nos ne l'aidons à prendre.»
to-break-up Now are we shamed if we not it-help to take
Et il vienent al duc, et li dient: «Sire, nos le vos
And they come to-the doge and to-him say Lord we it for-you
aiderons à prendre por mal de cels qui le vuelent destorner.»
will-help to take for ill of those who it wish to-turn-aside
Ensi fu li consels pris; et al matin s'alerent logier 85
Thus was the counsel taken and at-the morning themselves-went to-lodge
devant les portes de la ville; et si drecierent lor perrieres
before the gates of the town and so raised their petraries
et lor mangonials, et lor autres engins dont il avoient
and their mangonels and their other engines whereof they had
assez; et devers la mer drecierent les eschieles sor les
plenty and toward the sea raised the ladders on the
nés. Lor comencierent à jeter les perrieres as murs de
ships Then began to throw the petraries at-the walls of
la ville et as tors. Ensi dura cil asals bien par cinq
the town and at-the towers Thus lasted that assault well for five
jorz; et lor si mistrent lor trencheors à une tour, et
days and then so they-put their sappers to a tower and
cil comencierent à trenchier le mur. Et quant cil dedenz
those began to cut the wall And when those within
virent ce, si quistrent plait tot atretel con il l'avoient
saw this so sought bargain all such as they it-had
refusé par le conseil à cels qui l'ost voloient depecier.
refused by the counsel of those who the-host wished to-break-up

Winter at Zara and the Offer of Alexius

IX

Zara surrenders and is divided between the Venetians and the French for the winter. Three days later a street fight between them nearly destroys the host, and Giles of Landas is killed before a week's labor makes peace. Boniface arrives, and the envoys from Philip of Germany bring young Alexius' offer: Greek obedience to Rome, two hundred thousand marks, victuals for the host, ten thousand men for a year against Babylon, and five hundred knights kept overseas for his life.

86 Ensi fu la vile rendue en la merci le duc de Venise, sals
Thus was the town rendered at the mercy (of-)the doge of Venice save
lor cors. Et lors vint li dux as contes et as barons,
their bodies And then came the doge to-the counts and to-the barons
et lor dist: «Seignor, nos avons ceste vile conquise, par
and to-them said Lords we have this town conquered by
la Dieu grace et par la vostre. Il est yverz entrez, et nos
the God's grace and by the yours It is winter entered and we
ne poons mais movoir de ci tresque à la Pasque; quar nos
not can more set-out from here until to the Easter for we
ne troveriens mie marchié en autre leu, et ceste vile si est
not would-find at-all market in other place and this town so is
mult riche et mult bien garnie de toz biens. Si la partirons
very rich and very well furnished with all goods So it we-will-divide
par mi: si en prendromes la moitié, et vos l'autre.»
by half so thereof we-will-take the half and you the-other

87 Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait. Li Venicien si orent la partie
Thus as it was devised so it-was done The Venetians so had the part
devers le port, où les nés estoient; et li François orent l'autre.
toward the port where the ships were and the French had the-other

Lors furent li ostel departi à chascun endroit soi, tel con
Then were the lodgings allotted to each for himself such as
il afferi; si se desloja l'os et vindrent herbergier en la vile.
it befitted so itself dislodged the-host and came to-lodge in the town
Et cum il furent tuit herbergié, al tierz jor après, si 88
And when they were all lodged at-the third day after so
avint une mult granz mesaventure en l'ost, endroit hore
happened a very great mischance in the-host about hour
de vespres; que une meslée comença des Venisiens et des
of vespers for a brawl began of-the Venetians and of-the
François, mult granz et mult fiere; et corurent as armes
French very great and very fierce and they-ran to-the arms
de totes parz. Et fu si granz la meslée, que poi i ot
from all sides And was so great the brawl that few there were
des rues où il n'eust grant estor d'espées et de lances et
of-the streets where it not-had great fight of-swords and of lances and
d'arbalestes et de darz; et mult i ot genz navrez et morz.
of-crossbows and of darts and many there were people wounded and dead
Mais li Venisien ne porent mie l'estor endurer, si comencierent 89
But the Venetians not could at-all the-fight endure so began
mult à perdre. Et li preudome qui ne voloient mie le mal,
much to lose And the worthy-men who not wished at-all the ill
vindrent tot armé à la meslée, et comencierent à dessevrer. Et
came all armed to the brawl and began to part And
cum il l'avoient dessevré en un leu, lors recomençoit en un
when they it-had parted in one place then it-began-again in an
altre. Issi dura, trosque à grant piece de la nuit; et à grant
other Thus it-lasted until to great part of the night and with great
travail et à grant martire le departirent tote-voie. Et sachiez
labor and with great torment it they-parted nevertheless And know

que ce fu la plus granz dolors qui onques avenist en ost; et par
that this was the most great sorrow that ever happened in host and by
poi que l'os ne fu tote perdue. Mais Diex nel volt mie soffrir.
little that the-host — was all lost But God not-it wished at-all to-suffer
90 Mult i ot grant domage d'ambedeus parz. Là si fu
Much there was great damage from-both sides There so was
morz uns hauz hom de Flandres qui avoit nom Giles de
dead a high man of Flanders who had name Giles of
Landas; et fu feruz parmi l'uel, et de ce cop fu morz
Landas and was struck through the-eye and of this blow was dead
à la mellée, et maint autre dont il ne fu mie si granz
in the brawl and many another of-whom there not was at-all so great
parole. Lors orent li dux de Venise et li baron grant
talk Then had the doge of Venice and the barons great
travail, tote cele semaine, de faire pais de cele mellée; et
labor all that week to make peace of that brawl and
tant i travaillierent que pais en fu, Dieu merci!
so-much there labored that peace thereof was God's mercy
91 Après cele quinzaine vint li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat,
After that fortnight came the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
qui n'ere mie encores venuz, et Mahius de Monmorenci,
who not-was at-all yet come and Matthew of Montmorency
et Pierres de Braiecuel, et maint autre prodome. Et après
and Peter of Bracieux and many another worthy-man And after
une autre quinzaine, revindrent li message d'Alemaigne qui
an other fortnight came-back the envoys of-Germany who
estoient al roi Phelippe et al valet de Costantinople.
were to-the king Philip and to-the youth of Constantinople
Et assemblerent li baron et li dux de Venise en un palais
And assembled the barons and the doge of Venice in a palace
où li dux ere à ostel. Et lors parlerent li message et
where the doge was at lodging And then spoke the envoys and

distrent: «Seignor, li rois Phelippes nos envoie à vos, et li
said Lords the king Philip us sends to you and the
fils l'empereor de Constantinople, qui freres sa fame est.
son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople who brother (of-)his wife is
«Seignor, fait li rois, je vos envoierai le frere ma fame; 92
Lords says the king I to-you will-send the brother (of-)my wife
si le met en la Dieu main (qui le gart de mort!) et
so him I-put in the God's hand who him keep from death and
en la vostre. Por ce que vos alez por Dieu et por droit
in the yours For this that you go for God and for right
et por justise, si devez à cels qui sont desherité à tort
and for justice so you-ought to those who are disinherited with wrong
rendre lor heritages, se vos poez. Et si vos fera la
to-render their heritages if you can And so to-you he-will-make the
plus haute convenance qui onques fust faite à gent, et
most high covenant that ever was made to people and
la plus riche aïe à la Terre d'oltremer conquerre.
the most rich help to the Land of-overseas to-conquer
«Tot premierement, se Diex done que vos le remetez en son 93
All first if God grants that you him restore in his
heritage, il metra tot l'enpire de Romanie à la obedience de
heritage he will-put all the-empire of Romania to the obedience of
Rome, dont ele ere partie pieça. Après il set que vos avez
Rome whence it was parted long-since Next he knows that you have
mis le vostre, et que vos iestes povre; si vos donra deus
spent the yours and that you are poor so to-you he-will-give two
cent mil mars d'argent, et viande à toz cels de l'ost, à
hundred thousand marks of-silver and victuals to all those of the-host to
petiz et à granz. Et il ses cors ira avec vos en la terre de
small and to great And he his body will-go with you into the land of
Babiloine, ou envoiera, se vos cuidiez que mielz sera, à toz
Babylon or will-send if you think that better it-will-be with all

dix mil homes à sa despense. Et cest servise vos fera par
ten thousand men at his expense And this service to-you he-will-do for
un an; et à toz les jorz de sa vie tendra cinq cens chevaliers
one year and at all the days of his life will-keep five hundred knights
en la Terre d'oltremer al suen, qui garderont la Terre.
in the Land of-overseas at-the his-own who will-guard the Land
94 «Seignor, de ce avons-nos plain pooir, font li message,
Lords of this have-we full power say the envoys
d'asseurer ceste convenance se vos la volez asseurer devers
to-confirm this covenant if you it wish to-confirm on-the-side-of
vos. Et sachiez que si halte convenance ne fu onques mais
you And know that so high covenant not was ever before
offerte à gent, ne n'a mie grant talant de conquerre, qui
offered to people nor not-has at-all great desire to conquer who
cesti refusera.» Et il dient que il en parleront; et
this-one will-refuse And they say that they thereof will-speak and
fu pris uns parlemenz à l'endemain; et quant il furent
was taken a parliament at the-next-day and when they were
ensemble, si lor fu ceste parole mostrée.
together so to-them was this speech set-forth

Discord in the Host

X

The Abbot of Vaux and his party refuse to fight Christians and demand Syria; the other party answers that Egypt or Greece is the road to the Holy Land, and the Abbot of Loos preaches the covenant. Boniface, Baldwin, Louis, and Hugh of Saint-Pol swear, only twelve Frenchmen in all. Through the winter deserters drown or are killed in Slavonia; Renaud of Montmirail goes to Syria sworn to return and never does, and the Flemish fleet sails from Marseilles for Syria instead of Modon.

Là ot parlé en maint endroit; et parla l'abes de Vals de 95
There was spoken in many-a place and spoke the-abbot of Vaux of
l'ordre de Cystiaus, et cele partie qui voloit l'ost depecier;
the-order of Cîteaux and that party which wished the-host to-break-up
et distrent qu'il ne s'i accorderoient mie; que
and they-said that-they not themselves-thereto would-agree at-all for
ce ere sor crestiens, et il n'estoient mie por ce meu,
this was against Christians and they not-were at-all for this set-out
ainz voloient aler en Surie.
but wished to-go into Syria
Et l'autre partie lor respondi: «Bel seignor, en Surie ne 96
And the-other party to-them answered Fair lords in Syria not
poez vos rien faire; et si le verroiz bien à cels meismes
can you anything do and so it you-will-see well by those same
qui nos ont deguerpiz, et sont alé as autres porz. Et
who us have forsaken and are gone to-the other ports And
sachez que par la terre de Babiloine ou par Grece iert
know that by the land of Babylon or by Greece will-be
recovrée la Terre d'oltremer, s'ele jamais est recovrée. Et se
recovered the Land of-overseas if-it ever is recovered And if
nos refusons ceste convenance, nos somes honi à toz jorz.»
we refuse this covenant we are shamed for all days

97 Ensi ere l'oz en discorde con vous oez. Et ne vos
Thus was the-host in discord as you hear And not yourselves
merveilliez mie se la laie genz ere en discorde; que li blanc
marvel at-all if the lay people was in discord for the white
moine de l'ordre de Cistiaus erent altressi en discorde en
monks of the-order of Citeaux were likewise in discord in
l'ost. Li abes de Loz, qui mult ere sainz hom et prodom,
the-host The abbot of Loos who very was holy man and worthy-man
et altre abbé qui à lui se tenoient, prechoient et crioient
and other abbots who to him themselves held preached and cried
merci à la gent, que il por Dieu tenissent l'ost ensamble,
mercy to the people that they for God should-hold the-host together
et que il feissent ceste convenance; «car ce est la chose par
and that they should-make this covenant for this is the thing by
quoi on puet mielz recovrer la Terre d'oltremer.» Et l'abbes
which one can better recover the Land of-overseas And the-abbot
de Vaus, et cil qui à lui se tenoient, repreecheoient
of Vaux and those who to him themselves held preached-in-turn
mult sovent, et disoient que tot ce ere mals; mais alassent
very often and said that all this was evil but they-should-go
en la terre de Surie, et feissent ce que il porroient.
into the land of Syria and should-do this that they could
98 Lors vint li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, et Baudoins li
Then came the marquis Boniface of Montferrat and Baldwin the
cuens de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li cuens Loeys, et li
count of Flanders and of Hainault and the count Louis and the
cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et cil qui à elx se tenoient; et
count Hugh of Saint-Pol and those who to them themselves held and
distrent que il feroient ceste convenance; que il seroient honi
said that they would-make this covenant for they would-be shamed
se il la refusoient. Ensi s'en alerent à l'ostel le duc,
if they it refused Thus themselves-thence went to the-lodging (of-)the doge

et furent mandé li més; et asseurerent la convenance, si con
and were summoned the envoys and confirmed the covenant so as
vos l'avez oï arriere, par sairemenz et par chartres pendanz.
you it-have heard before by oaths and by charters sealed
Et tant vos retrait li livres que il ne furent que doze qui 99
And so-much to-you relates the book that there not were but twelve who
les sairemenz jurerent de la partie des François; ne plus n'en
the oaths swore of the party of-the French nor more not-thereof
pooient avoir. De cels si fu li uns li marchis de Monferrat,
they-could have Of those so was the one the marquis of Montferrat
li cuens Baudoins de Flandres, li cuens Loeys de Blois et
the count Baldwin of Flanders the count Louis of Blois and
de Chartein, et li cuens de Saint-Pol, et huit altre qui à elx
of Chartres and the count of Saint-Pol and eight others who to them
se tenoient. Ensi fu la convenance faite et les chartres
themselves held Thus was the covenant made and the charters
baillies, et mis li termes quant li vallez de Costantinoble
handed and set the term when the youth of Constantinople
vendroit; et ce fu à la quinzaine de Pasques après.
would-come and this was at the fortnight of Easter after
Ensi sejorna l'oz des François à Jadres tot cel yver, contre 100
Thus sojourned the-host of-the French at Zara all that winter against
le roi de Hongrie. Et sachiez que li cuer des genz ne furent
the king of Hungary And know that the hearts of-the people not were
mie en pais; que l'une des parties se travailla à ce que li oz
at-all in peace for the-one of-the parties itself labored at this that the host
se departist, et li autre à ce qu'ele se tenist ensembre.
itself should-break-up and the other at this that-it itself should-hold together
Maint s'en emblerent des menues genz es nés des 101
Many themselves-thence stole-away of-the lesser people in-the ships of-the
mercheanz. En une nef s'en emblerent bien cinq cenz; si
merchants In one ship themselves-thence stole-away well five hundred so

noierent tuit et furent perdu. Une altre compaignie s'en
drowned all and were lost An other company themselves-thence
embla par terre, et si s'en cuida aler par Esclavonie; et li
stole-away by land and so itself-thence thought to-go through Slavonia and the
païsant de la terre les assaillirent et en ocistrent assez; et li
peasants of the land them assailed and of-them killed plenty and the
altre s'en reparierent fuiant arriere en l'ost. Ensi s'en
others themselves-thence returned fleeing back into the-host Thus itself-thence
aloit li oz forment en amenuissant chascun jor. En cel termine,
went the host greatly in dwindling each day In that time
se travailla tant uns halz hom de l'ost qui ere d'Alemaigne,
himself labored so-much a high man of the-host who was of-Germany
qui avoit non Garniers de Borlande, que il s'en ala en une
who had name Garnier of Borland that he himself-thence went in a
nef de marcheanz, et guerpi l'ost; dont il reçut grant blasme.
ship of merchants and forsook the-host whereof he received great blame
102 Après ne tarda gaires que uns hauz ber de France qui ot à
After not delayed much that a high baron of France who had as
non Renauz de Monmirail pria tant, par l'aïe le conte
name Renaud of Montmirail begged so-much by the-help (of-)the count
Loeys, que il fu envoiez en Surie en messaje en une des nés de
Louis that he was sent into Syria in message in one of-the ships of
l'estoire; et si jura sor sains de son poing destre, et il et tuit
the-fleet and so he-swore on relics of his hand right and he and all
li chevalier qui avec lui alerent, que dedenz la quinzaine que
the knights who with him went that within the fortnight that
il seroient arivé en Surie, et auroient fait lor message, que il
they would-be arrived in Syria and would-have done their message that they
repaireroient arrieres en l'ost. Par ceste convenance se departi
would-return back into the-host By this covenant himself departed
de l'ost, et avec lui Hervis del Castel ses niés, Guillaumes li
from the-host and with him Hervé of-the Châtel his nephew William the

visdames de Chartres, Gefrois de Belmont, Johans de Froeville,
vidame of Chartres Geoffrey of Beaumont John of Frouville
Pierres ses freres, et maint altre. Et li sairement que il firent
Peter his brother and many another And the oaths that they made
ne furent mie bien tenu; que il ne repairierent pas en l'ost.
not were at-all well kept for they not returned at-all into the-host
Lors revint une novelle en l'ost qui fu mult volentiers oïe: 103
Then came-back a news into the-host which was very willingly heard
que li estoires de Flandres, dont vos avez oï arrieres, ere
that the fleet of Flanders of-which you have heard before was
arivez à Marseille. Et Johans de Neele chastelains de Bruges
arrived at Marseilles And John of Nesle castellan of Bruges
qui ere chevetaines de cel ost, et Tierris qui fu filz le
who was captain of that host and Thierry who was son (of-)the
conte Phelippe de Flandres, et Nicholes de Mailli, manderent
count Philip of Flanders and Nicholas of Mailly sent-word-to
le conte de Flandres lor seignor que il ivernoient à Marseille,
the count of Flanders their lord that they were-wintering at Marseilles
et que il lor mandast sa volonté; que il feroient ce
and that he to-them should-send-word his will for they would-do this
que il lor manderoit. Et il lor manda, par le conseil
that he to-them would-send-word And he to-them sent-word by the counsel
del duc de Venise et des autres barons, que il meussent
of-the doge of Venice and of-the other barons that they should-set-out
à l'issue de marz, et venissent encontre lui au port de
at the-issue of March and should-come to-meet him to-the port of
Mouçon en Romanie. Halas! il l'atendirent si malvaisement,
Modon in Romania Alas they him-awaited so badly
que onques covent ne lor tindrent; ainz s'en alerent
that ever covenant not to-them they-kept but themselves-thence went
en Surie, où il savoient que il ne feroient nul esploit.
into Syria where they knew that they not would-do any achievement

Absolution from Rome and the Voyage to Corfu

XI

The barons send to Rome for absolution over Zara. Robert of Boves betrays the mission, but the pope absolves the host, bids it hold together, and gives the Bishop of Soissons and John of Noyon power to bind and loose. The Venetians raze Zara. Simon of Montfort, the Abbot of Vaux, and Enguerrand of Boves go over to the King of Hungary. The fleet sails ahead to Corfu; young Alexius reaches the doge at Zara, is received at Durazzo, and is welcomed at Corfu with great honor.

104 Or poez savoir, seignor, que se Diex ne amast ceste ost,
Now you-can know lords that if God not had-loved this host
qu'ele ne peust mie tenir ensemble, à ce que tant de
that-it not could at-all hold together for this that so-many of
gent li queroient mal.
people it sought ill

105 Lors parlerent li baron ensemble, si distrent qu'il envoieroient
Then spoke the barons together so said that-they would-send
à Rome à l'apostoile, porce que il lor savoit mal gré de la
to Rome to the-pope because that he to-them knew ill will of the
prise de Jadres; et eslistrent messages deus chevaliers et deus
taking of Zara and they-chose envoys two knights and two
clers, telx qu'il savoient qui bon fussent à cest message. Des
clerks such that-they knew who good would-be for this message Of-the
deus clers, fu li uns Neveles li evesques de Soisons, et maistre
two clerks was the one Nivelon the bishop of Soissons and master
Johans de Noion, qui ere chanceliers le conte Baudoin de
John of Noyon who was chancellor (of-)the count Baldwin of
Flandres; et des chevaliers, fu li uns Johans de Friaize et
Flanders and of-the knights was the one John of Friaize and

Roberz de Bove. Et cil jurerent sor sains loialment que il
Robert of Boves And those swore on relics loyally that they
feroient le message en bone foi, et que il repaireroient à l'ost.
would-do the message in good faith and that they would-return to the-host
Mult le tindrent bien li troi, et li quarz malvaisement; et 106
Very it held well the three and the fourth badly and
ce fu Roberz de Bove. Car il fist le message al pis qu'il
this was Robert of Boves For he did the message at-the worst that-he
pot, et s'en parjura, et s'en ala en Surie après les
could and himself-thereof forswore and himself-thence went into Syria after the
autres. Et li autre troi le firent mult bien, et distrent lor
others And the other three it did very well and said their
message ensi con manderent li baron, et distrent à l'apostoile:
message thus as commanded the barons and said to the-pope
«Li baron merci vos crient de la prise de Jadres; que il le
The barons mercy you cry of the taking of Zara for they it
fistrent comme cil qui mielz ne pooient faire, por la defaute
did as those who better not could do for the default
de cels qui estoient alé aus autres porz, et que autrement
of those who were gone to-the other ports and that otherwise
ne pooient tenir l'ost ensemble. Et sor ce mandent à
not they-could hold the-host together And upon this they-send-word to
vos comme à lor bon pere, que vos à lor commandoiz
you as to their good father that you to them command
vostre commandement que il sont prest de faire.»
your commandment which they are ready to do
Et li apostoiles dist aus messages qu'il savoit bien que, par 107
And the pope said to-the envoys that-he knew well that by
la defaute des autres, lor couvint grant meschief à faire;
the default of-the others to-them behooved great mischief to do
si en ot grant pitié. Et lors manda as barons et as
so thereof he-had great pity And then he-sent to-the barons and to-the

pelerins salut, et qu'il les asolt comme ses filz, et lor
pilgrims greeting and that-he them absolved as his sons and them
commandoit et prioit que il tenissent l'ost ensemble; car
commanded and prayed that they should-hold the-host together for
il savoit bien que sans cele ost ne pooit li servises Dieu
he knew well that without that host not could the service (of-)God
estre fais. Et dona plain pooir à Nevelon l'evesque de
be done And he-gave full power to Nivelon the-bishop of
Soisons et à maistre Johan de Noion, de lier et de deslier
Soissons and to master John of Noyon to bind and to loose
les pelerins trosqu'adonc que li cardonax vendroit en l'ost.
the pilgrims until-then that the cardinal would-come into the-host
108 Ensi fu jà del tens passé tant que li quaresmes fu;
Thus was already of-the time passed so-much that the Lent was
et atornerent lor navile por movoir à la Pasque. Quant
and they-prepared their fleet for to-set-out at the Easter When
les nés furent chargies, l'endemain de la Pasque, si se
the ships were laden the-next-day of the Easter so themselves
logierent li pelerin fors de la vile sor le port; et li
lodged the pilgrims outside of the town on the port and the
Venisien firent abatre la vile et les tors et les murs.
Venetians had pulled-down the town and the towers and the walls
109 Et dont avint une aventure dont mult pesa à cels de l'ost;
And then happened an adventure whereof much weighed on those of the-host
que uns des halz barons de l'ost, qui avoit nom Symons de
that one of-the high barons of the-host who had name Simon of
Monfort, ot fait son plait al roi de Ungrie qui anemis
Montfort had made his bargain with-the king of Hungary who enemy
estoit à cels de l'ost; et il s'en ala à lui et guerpi
was to those of the-host and he himself-thence went to him and forsook
l'ost. Avec lui ala Guis de Monfort ses freres, Symons de
the-host With him went Guy of Montfort his brother Simon of

Neafle, et Roberz Malvoisins, et Druis de Cresonessart,
Neauphle and Robert Mauvoisin and Dreux of Cressonsacq
et l'abes de Vals qui ere moines de l'ordre de Cystiaus,
and the-abbot of Vaux who was monk of the-order of Cîteaux
et maint autre. Et ne tarda guaires après, que s'en
and many another And not delayed much after that himself-thence
ala uns autres halz hom de l'ost au roi de Ungrie, qui
went an other high man of the-host to-the king of Hungary who
Engelranz de Boves ere apelez, et Hues ses freres, et les
Enguerrand of Boves was called and Hugh his brother and the
genz de lor païs ce que il en porent mener.
people of their country this that they thereof could lead
Ensi partirent cil de l'ost con vos avez oï: mult fu 110
Thus departed those from the-host as you have heard very was
granz domages à l'ost, et granz honte à cels qui le
great damage to the-host and great shame to those who it
firent. Lors comencierent à movoir les nés et li vissier;
did Then began to set-out the ships and the horse-transports
et fu devisé que il prendroient port à Corfol, une ysle
and was devised that they would-take port at Corfu an isle
en Romenie, et li premier attendroient les darraiens tant
in Romania and the first would-await the last until
qu'il seroient ensemble; et il si fistrent.
that-they would-be together and they so did
Ainz que li dux ne li marchis partissent del port de 111
Before that the doge nor the marquis should-depart from-the port of
Jadres, ne les galies, vint Alexis li fils l'empereor Sursac de
Zara nor the galleys came Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac of
Costantinople. Et l'i envoia li rois Phelippes d'Alemaigne;
Constantinople And him-there sent the king Philip of-Germany
et fu receuz à mult grant joie et à mult grant honor;
and he-was received with very great joy and with very great honor

et li bailla li dux les galies et les vaissials tant con
and to-him handed the doge the galleys and the vessels so-much as
lui convint. Et ensi partirent del port de Jadres, et
to-him behooved And thus they-departed from-the port of Zara and
orent bon vent; et alerent tant que il pristrent port à
had good wind and went so-long that they took port at
Duraz. Enqui rendirent cil de la terre la ville à lor seignor
Durazzo There rendered those of the land the town to their lord
(quant il le virent) mult volentiers, et li firent fealté.
when they him saw very willingly and to-him did fealty
112 Et d'enqui s'en partirent et vindrent à Corfol, et
And from-there themselves-thence departed and came to Corfu and
troverent l'ost qui ere logie devant la vile; et avoient tenduz
found the-host which was lodged before the town and they-had pitched
trez et paveillons, et les chevaus traiz des vissiers
tents and pavilions and the horses drawn from-the horse-transports
por refraichir. Et cum il oïrent que li filz l'empereor
for to-refresh And when they heard that the son (of-)the-emperor
de Constantinople ere arrivez al port, si veissiez maint
of Constantinople was arrived at-the port so you-might-see many-a
bon chevalier et maint bon serjant aler encontre, et mener
good knight and many-a good sergeant go to-meet and lead
maint bel destrier. Ensi le recurent à mult grant joie et
many-a fair charger Thus him they-received with very great joy and
à mult grant honor. Et il fist son tré tendre enmi l'ost;
with very great honor And he had his tent pitched amid the-host
et li marchis de Monferrat le suen delez, en cui garde li
and the marquis of Montferrat the his-own beside in whose keeping the
rois Phelippes l'avoit commandé, qui sa seror avoit à fame.
king Philip him-had commended who his sister had to wife

The Barons Hold the Host Together

XII

On Corfu more than half the host plots to stay behind and cross to Brindisi. The leaders, with young Alexius and the clergy, fall weeping at the malcontents' feet, and these agree to stay until Michaelmas if promised ships for Syria within a fortnight of asking. On Pentecost Eve 1203 the fleet sails, a sight Villehardouin swears was never equaled. Off Cape Malea a sergeant quits a ship returning from Syria to join the fleet. Andros submits, Guy of Coucy dies at sea, and the host gathers at Abydos.

Ensi sejornerent en cele ysle trois semaines, qui mult ere 113
Thus they-sojourned in that isle three weeks which very was
riche et plenteuroise. Et dedenz cel sejor lor avint une
rich and plentiful And within that sojourn to-them happened a
mesaventure qui fu pesme et dure; que une granz partie de
mischance which was grievous and hard that a great part of
cels qui voloient l'ost depecier, et qui avoient autrefois esté
those who wished the-host to-break-up and who had formerly been
encontre l'ost, parlerent ensemble et distrent que cele chose
against the-host spoke together and said that that thing
lor sembloit estre mult longe et mult perillose, et que
to-them seemed to-be very long and very perilous and that
il remanroient en l'isle, et en lairoient l'ost aler; et par
they would-remain in the-isle and thence would-let the-host go and by
le conduit à cels de Corfol (et quant l'ost en seroit alée),
the safe-conduct of those of Corfu and when the-host thence would-be gone
envoieroient au conte Gautier de Breine, qui adonc tenoit
they-would-send to-the count Walter of Brienne who then held
Brandiz, qu'il lor envoiast vaissiaus por aler à Brandiz.
Brindisi that-he to-them should-send vessels for to-go to Brindisi

114 Je ne vos puis mie toz cels nomer qui à ceste ouvre faire
I not to-you can at-all all those name who to this work to-do
furent, mais je vos en nomerai une partie, des plus maistres
were but I to-you thereof will-name a part of-the most master
chevetains. De cels fu li uns Odes li Champenois de Chamlite,
captains Of those was the one Odo the Champenois of Champlitte
Jaques d'Avennes, Pierres d'Amiens, Guis li chastelains de Coci,
James of-Avesnes Peter of-Amiens Guy the castellan of Coucy
Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Guis de Cappes et Clarembaus ses
Ogier of Saint-Chéron Guy of Chappes and Clarembaud his
niés, Guillaumes d'Aunoi, Pierres Coiseaus, Guis de Pesmes et
nephew William of-Aunoy Peter Coiseau Guy of Pesmes and
Haimmes ses freres, Guis de Couvelans, Richars de Danpierre,
Aimo his brother Guy of Conflans Richard of Dampierre
Odes ses freres, et maint autre qui lor avoient creanté par
Odo his brother and many another who to-them had promised from
derriere qu'il se tenroient à lor partie, qui ne l'osoient
behind that-they themselves would-hold to their party who not it-dared
mostrer pardevant por la honte; si que li livres tesmoigne bien
show in-front for the shame so that the book testifies well
que plus de la moitié de l'ost se tenoient à lor acort.
that more than the half of the-host themselves held to their accord
115 Et quant ce oït li marchis de Monferat, et li cuens
And when this heard the marquis of Montferrat and the count
Baudoins de Flandres, et li cuens Loeys, et li cuens de
Baldwin of Flanders and the count Louis and the count of
Saint-Pol, et li baron qui se tenoient à lor acort, si
Saint-Pol and the barons who themselves held to their accord so
furent mult esmaié et distrent: «Seignor, nos sommes mal
they-were very dismayed and said Lords we are ill
bailli. Se ceste gens se partent de nos avec cels qui
served If these people themselves part from us with those who

s'en sunt parti par maintes foiz, nostre os sera failie;
themselves-thence are parted by many times our host will-be failed
et nos ne porons nule conqueste faire. Mais alons à els et
and we not will-be-able any conquest to-make But let-us-go to them and
lor cheons as piez, et lor crions merci; que il aient
to-them let-us-fall at-the feet and to-them let-us-cry mercy that they may-have
por Dieu pitié d'els et de nos, et que il ne se
for God pity of-themselves and of us and that they not themselves
honissent, et que il ne nos toillent la rescosse d'oltremer.»
shame and that they not from-us take the rescue of-overseas
Ensi fu li consels acordez; et alerent tuit ensemble en une 116
Thus was the counsel agreed and they-went all together into a
valée où cil tenoient lor parlement, et menerent avec als
valley where those held their parliament and they-led with them
le fil l'empereor de Costantinople, et toz les evesques et toz
the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople and all the bishops and all
les abez de l'ost. Et cum il vindrent là, si descendirent à
the abbots of the-host And when they came there so they-dismounted on
pié. Et cil, cum il les virent, si descendirent de lor chevaus
foot And those when they them saw so dismounted from their horses
et alerent encontre. Et li baron lor chéirent as piez,
and went to-meet And the barons to-them fell at-the feet
mult plorant; et distrent que il ne se movroient tresque
much weeping and said that they not themselves would-move until
cil aroient creanté que il ne se movroient d'els.
those would-have promised that they not themselves would-move from-them
Et quant cil virent ce, si orent mult grant pitié et plorerent 117
And when those saw this so they-had very great pity and wept
mult durement quant il virent lor seignors et lor parenz et
very bitterly when they saw their lords and their kinsmen and
lor amis chaoir à lor piez. Si distrent que il en parleroient;
their friends fall at their feet So they-said that they thereof would-speak

et traistrent à une part, et parlerent ensemble. Et la summe
and drew to one side and spoke together And the sum
de lor conseil fut tels que il seroient encor avec els tresque à
of their counsel was such that they would-be still with them until to
la saint-Michel, par tel convent que il lor jureroient sor sainz
the Michaelmas by such covenant that they to-them would-swear on relics
loialment que dès enqui en avant, de quel eure que il les en
loyally that from there on forward of what hour that they them thereof
semonroient, dedenz les quinze jors que il lor donroient navie
would-summon within the fifteen days that they to-them would-give navy
à bone foi, sanz mal engin, dont il porroient aler en Surie.
in good faith without ill wile whereby they could go into Syria

118 Ensi fut otroié et juré; et lors ot grant joie par
Thus was-it granted and sworn and then there-was great joy through
tote l'ost. Et se recuillirent es nés, et li cheval
all the-host And themselves gathered into-the ships and the horses
furent mis es vissiers.
were put in-the horse-transports

119 Ensi se partirent del port de Corfol la veille de
Thus themselves departed from-the port of Corfu the eve of
Pentecoste, qui fu mil et deus cens anz et trois après
Pentecost which was thousand and two hundred years and three after
l'incarnation Nostre-Seignor Jesu Crist. Et enqui furent totes
the-incarnation (of-)Our-Lord Jesus Christ And there were all
les nés ensemble, et tuit li vissier et totes les galies
the ships together and all the horse-transports and all the galleys
de l'ost, et assez d'autres nés de marcheanz qui avec aus
of the-host and plenty of-other ships of merchants which with them
s'erent aroutées. Et li jorz fu bels et clers, et li
themselves-were joined And the day was fair and clear and the
venz dolz et soés; et il laissent aler les voiles al vent.
wind soft and gentle and they let go the sails to-the wind

Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, 120
And well testifies Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
qui cestre œvre dita (qui ainc n'i menti de mot à son
who this work dictated who ever not-there lied of word to his
escient, si con cil qui à toz les conseils fu), que onc si
knowledge so as he who at all the councils was that ever so
bele chose ne fu vue. Et bien sembloit estoire qui terre
fair thing not was seen And well it-seemed fleet which land
deust conquerre; que tant que on pooit veoir à oil, ne
ought to-conquer for as-far as one could see with eye not
pooit-on veoir se voiles non de nés et de vaissiaus, si
could-one see except sails not of ships and of vessels so
que li cuer des homes s'en esjoïssoient mult.
that the hearts of-the men themselves-thereof rejoiced much
Ensi corurent par mer tant que il vindrent à Cademelée, à 121
Thus they-ran by sea so-long that they came to Cape-Malea to
un trespas qui sor mer siet. Et lors encontrerent deus nés de
a strait which on sea lies And then they-met two ships of
pelerins et de chevaliers et de serjanz qui repairoient de Surie;
pilgrims and of knights and of sergeants who were-returning from Syria
et ce estoient de cels qui estoient alé al port de Marseille
and these were of those who were gone to-the port of Marseilles
passer. Et quant il virent l'estoire si bele et si riche, si orent
to-cross And when they saw the-fleet so fair and so rich so they-had
tel honte que il ne s'ouserent mostrer. Et li cuens Baudoins
such shame that they not themselves-dared show And the count Baldwin
de Flandres et de Hennaut envoia la barge de sa nef por
of Flanders and of Hainault sent the boat of his ship for
savoir quels genz ce estoient; et il distrent qu'il estoient.
to-know what people these were and they said who-they were

122 Et uns serjanz se lait correr contreval de la nef en la barge,
And a sergeant himself lets slide down from the ship into the boat
et dist à cels de la nef: «Je vos claim cuite ce qui remaint
and said to those of the ship I to-you declare quit this which remains
en la nef dou mien; quar je m'en irai avec cez: quar il
in the ship of-the my-own for I myself-thence will-go with these for it
semble bien que il doivent terre conquerre.» A grant bien fu
seems well that they must land conquer At great good was
atorné al serjant, et mult fu volentiers en l'ost veuz. Et
reckoned to-the sergeant and very he-was willingly in the-host seen And
por ce, dit hom que de mil males voies puet-on retorner.
for this says one that from thousand bad roads can-one turn-back
123 Ensi corut l'oz trosque à Nigre. Nigre si est une mult bone
Thus ran the-host as-far to Negro Negro so is a very good
ysle, et une mult bone citez que on appelle Nigrepont. Enqui
isle and a very good city which one calls Negropont There
si pristrent conseil li baron. Si s'en ala li marchis
so took counsel the barons So himself-thence went the marquis
Bonifaces de Monferrat et li cuens Baudoins de Flandres
Boniface of Montferrat and the count Baldwin of Flanders
et de Hennaut, à grant partie de vissiers et de galies,
and of Hainault with great part of horse-transports and of galleys
avec le fil l'empereor Sursac de Constantinoble, en une ysle
with the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac of Constantinople into an isle
que on apele Andre, et descendirent à terre. Si s'armerent
which one calls Andros and went-down to land So themselves-armed
li chevalier et corurent en la terre; et la genz del païs
the knights and ran into the land and the people of-the country
vindrent à merci al fil l'empereor de Constantinoble, et
came to mercy to-the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople and
li donerent tant dou lor que pais firent à lui.
to-him gave so-much of-the theirs that peace they-made with him

Et rentrerent en lor vaissiaus et corrurent par mer. Lors lor 124
And went-back into their vessels and ran by sea Then to-them
avint uns granz domaiges; que uns halz hom de l'ost, qui avoit
befell a great damage that a high man of the-host who had
nom Guis li chastelains de Coci, morut et fu gitez en la mer.
name Guy the castellan of Coucy died and was cast into the sea
Les autres nés qui n'erent mie cele part guenchies, furent 125
The other ships which not-were at-all that way turned were
entrées en boche d'Avie; et ce est là où li Braz-Saint-Jorge
entered into mouth of-Abydos and this is there where the Arm-Saint-George
chiet en la grant mer. Et corurent contremont le Braz
falls into the great sea And they-ran up the Arm
tresque à une cité que on apele Avie, qui siet sor le
as-far to a city which one calls Abydos which lies on the
Braz-Saint-George devers la Turquie, mult bele et mult bien
Arm-Saint-George toward the Turkey very fair and very well
asise. Et enqui pristrent port et descendirent à terre; et cil
situated And there they-took port and went-down to land and those
de la cité vindrent encontre els et lor rendirent la vile, si
of the city came to-meet them and to-them rendered the town so
con cil qui ne s'osoient defendre. Et il si firent mult bien
as those who not themselves-dared defend And they so had very well
garder, si que cil de la vile n'i perdirent vaillant un denier.
guarded so that those of the town not-there lost worth a penny
Ensi sejornerent enqui huit jorz por atendre les nés et 126
Thus they-sojourned there eight days for to-await the ships and
les galies et les vissiers qui estoient encor à venir.
the galleys and the horse-transports which were still to come
Et dedenz cel sejor pristrent des blez en la terre, que
And within that sojourn they-took of-the wheats in the land for
il ere moissons; et il en avoient grant mestier, quar
it was harvest and they thereof had great need for

il en avoient pou. Et dedenz ces huit jors furent venu
they thereof had little And within these eight days were come
tuit li vaissel et li baron. Et Diex lor dona bon tens.
all the vessels and the barons And God to-them gave good weather

Saint Stephen and the Landing at Chalcedon

XIII

The fleet sails up the Arm of Saint George and on Saint John's Eve anchors at the abbey of Saint Stephen, three leagues from Constantinople, whose walls and palaces make every man tremble. The doge advises taking the islands first for victuals, but God overturns the plan: next morning the fleet sails past the city walls under fire and lands on the Asian shore at Chalcedon, where the host lodges in an imperial palace and gathers the harvest. It then moves to Scutari, and the Emperor Alexius camps opposite.

127 Lors se partirent del port d'Avie tuit ensemble. Si
Then themselves departed from-the port of-Abydos all together So
peussiez veoir flori le Braz-Saint-Jorge contremont de nés
you-might see flowered the Arm-Saint-George upward with ships
et de galies et de vissiers; et mult granz mervoille
and with galleys and with horse-transports and very great marvel
ere la bialtez à regarder. Et ensi corurent contremont le
was the beauty to behold And thus they-ran up the
Braiz-Saint-Jorge, tant que il vindrent, la veille de la saint
Arm-Saint-George so-far that they came the eve of the saint
Jehan-Baptiste en juin, à Saint-Estiene, à une abbaïe qui
John-the-Baptist in June to Saint-Stephen to an abbey which
ere à trois lieues de Costantinoble. Et lors virent tot
was at three leagues from Constantinople And then saw all

à plain Costantinoble cil des nés et des galies et des
in full Constantinople those of-the ships and of-the galleys and of-the
vissiers; et pristrent port, et aancrerent lor vaissiaus.
horse-transports and took port and anchored their vessels
Or poez savoir que mult esgarderent Costantinople cil qui 128
Now you-can know that much gazed-at Constantinople those who
onques mais ne l'avoient veue; que il ne pooient mie cuidier
ever before not it-had seen for they not could at-all believe
que si riche vile peust estre en tot le monde, cum il virent
that so rich town could be in all the world when they saw
ces halz murs et ces riches tours dont ele ere close tot entor
these high walls and these rich towers wherewith it was enclosed all around
à la reonde, et ces riches palais et ces haltes yglises, dont il
in the round and these rich palaces and these high churches of-which it
i avoit tant que nuls nel poist croire, se il ne le veist à
there had so-many that anyone not-it could believe if he not it should-see with
l'oil, et le lonc et le lé de la vile qui de totes les autres ere
the-eye and the length and the breadth of the town which of all the others was
soveraine. Et sachiez que il n'i ot si hardi cui la chars ne
sovereign And know that it not-there had so bold whose the flesh not
fremist; et ce ne fu mie mervoille; que onques si granz affaires
trembled and this not was at-all marvel for ever so great business
ne fu enpris de nulle gent, puis que li monz fu estorez.
not was undertaken by any people since that the world was established
Lors descendirent à terre li conte et li baron et li dux de 129
Then went-down to land the counts and the barons and the doge of
Venise; et fu li parlemenz ou mostier Saint-Estiene. Là ot
Venice and was the parliament in-the minster Saint-Stephen There was
maint conseil pris et doné. Totes les paroles qui là furent dites
many-a counsel taken and given All the words that there were said

ne vos contera mie li livres; mais la summe del conseil si fu
not to-you will-recount at-all the book but the sum of-the counsel so was
tiels, que li dux de Venise se dreça en estant et lor dist:
such that the doge of Venice himself raised in standing and to-them said
130 «Seignor, je sai plus del convine de cest païs que vos
Lords I know more of-the state of this country than you
ne faites, car altre foiz i ai esté. Vos avez le plus
— do for other times there I-have been You have the most
grant afaire et le plus perillos entrepris que onques genz
great business and the most perilous undertaken that ever people
entrepreissent; por ce si covendroit que on ovrast sagement.
undertook for this so it-would-behoove that one should-work wisely
Sachiez, se nos alons à la terre ferme, la terre est granz et
Know if we go to the land firm the land is great and
large, et nostre gent sont povre et diseteus de la viande. Si
wide and our people are poor and needy of the victuals So
s'espandront par la terre por querre la viande; et il i
themselves-will-spread through the land for to-seek the victuals and it there
a mult grant plenté de la gent el païs; si ne porriens tot
has very great plenty of the people in-the country so not we-could all
garder que nos n'en perdissiens. Et nos n'avons mestier de
guard that we not-thereof should-lose And we not-have need to
perdre; que mult avons poi de gent à ce que nos volons faire.
lose for very we-have few of people for this that we wish to-do
131 «Il a isles ci près, que vos poez veoir de ci, qui sont
It has isles here near which you can see from here which are
habitées de genz, et laborées de blez et de viandes et
inhabited with people and tilled with wheats and with victuals and
d'autres biens. Alons iqui prendre port, et recuillons les
with-other goods Let-us-go there to-take port and let-us-gather the
blez et les viandes del païs; et quand nos aurons les
wheats and the victuals of-the country and when we shall-have the

viandes recuillies, alomes devant la vile, et faisons ce que
victuals gathered let-us-go before the town and let-us-do this that
Nostre Sires aura porveu. Quar plus seurement guerroie
Our Lord will-have provided For more surely makes-war
cil qui a la viande que cil qui n'en a point.» A cel
he who has the victuals than he who not-thereof has at-all To that
conseil s'acorderent li conte et li baron, et s'en
counsel themselves-agreed the counts and the barons and themselves-thence
ralerent tuit à lor nés chascuns et à ses vaissiaus.
went-back all to their ships each and to his vessels
Ensi repouserent cele nuit. Et al maitin, le jor de la 132
Thus they-rested that night And at-the morning the day of the
feste monseignor saint Johan-Baptiste, en juing, furent drecies
feast (of-)my-lord saint John-the-Baptist in June were raised
les banieres et li confanon es chastials des nés, et les
the banners and the pennons on-the castles of-the ships and the
houces ostées des escuz, et portendu li bort des nés.
covers removed from-the shields and hung the gunwales of-the ships
Chascuns regardoit ses armes tels con à lui convint; que
Each looked-to his arms such as to him behooved for
de fi sevent que par tens en aront mestier.
of certain they-know that in time thereof they-will-have need
Li marinier traient les ancres et laissent les voiles al 133
The mariners draw the anchors and let the sails to-the
vent aler; et Diex lor done bon vent tel con à els
wind go and God to-them gives good wind such as to them
convint. Si s'en passent très pardevant Constantinople,
behooved So themselves-thence pass right before Constantinople
si près des murs et des tours que à maintes de lor
so near to-the walls and to-the towers that at many of their

nés traist-on. Si i avoit tant de gent sor les murs et
ships shot-one So there had so-many of people on the walls and
sor les tors, que il sembloit que il n'aust se là non.
on the towers that it seemed that there not-was except there not
134 Ensi lor bestorna Diex Nostre Sires le conseil qui fu pris
Thus to-them overturned God Our Lord the counsel which was taken
le soir de torner es ysles, ausi con se chascuns n'en aust
the evening to turn to-the isles just as if each not-thereof had
onques oï parler. Et maintenant traient à la ferme terre plus
ever heard speak And at-once they-draw to the firm land more
droit que il onques puent; et pristrent port devant un palais
straight than they ever can and took port before a palace
l'empereor Alexi, dont li leus estoit apelez Chalcidoines; et
(of-)the-emperor Alexius whereof the place was called Chalcedon and
fu endroit Costantinoble, d'autre part del Braz, devers la
was opposite Constantinople on-other side of-the Arm toward the
Turquie. Cil palais fu un des plus biax et des plus delitables
Turkey That palace was one of-the most fair and of-the most delightful
que unques oel peussent esgarder, de toz les deliz que il
that ever eye could behold of all the delights that it
covient à cors d'ome, que en maison de prince doit avoir.
behooves for body of-man that in house of prince ought to-have
135 Et li conte et li baron descendirent à la terre, et se
And the counts and the barons went-down to the land and themselves
erbergierent el palais et en la vile entor; et li plusor
lodged in-the palace and in the town around and the most
tendirent lor paveillons. Lors furent li cheval trait fors des
pitched their pavilions Then were the horses drawn out of-the
vissiers, et li chevalier et li serjant descendirent à la
horse-transports and the knights and the sergeants went-down to the
terre à totes les armes, si que il ne remest es vaissiaus
land with all the arms so that there not remained in-the vessels

que li marinier. La contrée fu bele et riche et planteurose
but the mariners The country was fair and rich and plentiful
de toz biens, et les moies des blez (qui estoient messoné)
of all goods and the stacks of-the wheats which were reaped
parmi les champs; tant que chascuns on volt prendre
through the fields so-much that each thereof wished to-take
si en prist, con cil qui grant mestier en avoient.
so thereof took as those who great need thereof had
Ensi sejornerent en cel palais l'endemain, et al tierz jor 136
Thus they-sojourned in that palace the-next-day and at-the third day
lor dona Diex bon vent; et cil marinier resachent lor
to-them gave God good wind and those mariners draw-up-again their
ancres et drecent lor voiles al vent. Ensi s'en vont
anchors and raise their sails to-the wind Thus themselves-thence go
contremont le Braz, bien une lieue desor Constantinople,
up the Arm well a league above Constantinople
à un palais qui ere l'empereor Alexi, qui ere apelez
to a palace which was (of-)the-emperor Alexius which was called
l'Escutaire. Enqui se ancreerent les nés et li vissier
the-Scutari There themselves anchored the ships and the horse-transports
et totes les galies; et la chevalerie qui ere erbergie el
and all the galleys and the knightbood which was lodged in-the
palais de Calcedoine, ala encoste par terre.
palace of Chalcedon went alongside by land
Ensi se herbergierent sor le Braiz Saint-Jorge, à 137
Thus themselves lodged on the Arm Saint-George at
l'Escutaire et contremont, l'os des François. Et quant
the-Scutari and upward the-host of-the French And when
ce vit l'emperere Alexis, si fist la soe ost issir de
this saw the-emperor Alexius so had the his host come-out of
Costantinoble; si se herberja sor l'autre rive, d'autre part,
Constantinople so itself lodged on the-other bank on-other side

endroit als; si fist tendre ses paveillons, por ce que cil ne
opposite them so had pitched his pavilions for this that those not
peussent prendre terre par force sor lui. Ensi sejorna l'os
could take land by force upon him Thus sojourned the-host
des François par nuef jorz; et se pourchaça de viande
of-the French for nine days and himself provided with victuals
cil qui mestier en ot; et ce furent tuit cil de l'ost.
he who need thereof had and these were all those of the-host

The Foragers and the Emperor's Message

XIV

While foragers scour the country, a company of eighty knights guarding the host routs the Greek grand duke's five hundred at the foot of the mountain and brings back rich booty. The emperor's envoy, the Lombard Nicholas Roux, asks why Christians bound for the Sepulcher invade a Christian land, offers victuals and money if they leave, and threatens them. Conon of Béthune answers that the land belongs to the emperor's nephew and that the usurper should submit to him, and tells the envoy not to return without that answer.

138 Dedenz cel sejor, issi une compagnie de mult bone gent por
Within that sojourn came-out a company of very good people for
garder l'ost, que on ne li feist mal; et li forier cerchierent
to-guard the-host that one not to-it should-do ill and the foragers searched
la contrée. En cele compagnie fu Odes li Champenois de
the country In that company was Odo the Champenois of
Chanlite et Guillaumes ses freres, et Ogiers de Saint-Cheron,
Champlitte and William his brother and Ogier of Saint-Chéron
et Manassiers de l'Isle, et li cuens Girarz (uns cuens de
and Manasses of the-Isle and the count Gerard a count of

Lombardie qui ert de la maisnie le marchis de Monferrat);
Lombardy who was of the household (of-)the marquis of Montferrat
et orent bien avec als quatre-vins chevaliers de mult bone gent.
and they-had well with them fourscore knights of very good people
Et choisirent el pié de la montaigne paveillons bien à 139
And they-spied at-the foot of the mountain pavilions well at
trois liues de l'ost; et ce estoit li megedux l'empereor de
three leagues from the-host and this was the grand-duke (of-)the-emperor of
Constantinoble, qui bien avoit cinq cenz chevaliers de Grius.
Constantinople who well had five hundred knights of Greeks
Quant nostre gent les virent, si ordenerent lor genz en quatre
When our people them saw so they-ordered their people in four
batailles; et fu lor conselx tielx que il iroient combatre à
battalions and was their counsel such that they would-go to-fight with
els. Et quant li Grieu les virent, si ordenerent lor batailles, et
them And when the Greeks them saw so they-ordered their battalions and
se rengierent pardevant lor paveillons et les attendirent;
themselves ranged in-front-of their pavilions and them awaited
et nostre gent les alerent ferir mult vigueroisement.
and our people them went to-strike very vigorously
A l'aïe de Dieu Nostre Seignor, petit dura cil estors, 140
With the-help of God Our Lord little lasted that fight
et li Grieu lor tornerent les dos; si furent desconfit à
and the Greeks to-them turned the backs so they-were routed at
la premiere assemblée, et li nostre les enchaucierent bien
the first encounter and the ours them pursued well
une liue grant. Là gaaignerent assez chevaus et roncins
a league great There they-won many horses and nags
et palefroiz, et muls et mules, et tentes et paveillons,
and palfreys and mules and she-mules and tents and pavilions
et tel gaing con à tel besoigne aferoit. Ensi s'en
and such gain as to such business befitted Thus themselves-thence

reviendrent en l'ost, où il furent mult volentiers veu,
came-back into the-host where they were very willingly seen
et departirent lor gaing si con il durent.
and divided their gain so as they ought
141 A l'autre jor après, envoia l'emperere Alexis un message
At the-other day after sent the-emperor Alexius a envoy
as contes et as barons et ses letres. Cil messages avoit
to-the counts and to-the barons and his letters That envoy had
nom Nicholas Rous, et ere nez de Lombardie; et trova
name Nicholas Roux and was born of Lombardy and found
les barons el riche palais del Scutaire où il estoient
the barons in-the rich palace of-the Scutari where they were
à un conseil, et les salua de par l'empereor Alexi de
at a council and them greeted on behalf-of the-emperor Alexius of
Constantinoble, et tendi ses letres le marchis Boniface de
Constantinople and held-out his letters (to-)the marquis Boniface of
Monferrat; et cil les reçut. Et furent leues les letres devant
Montferrat and he them received And were read the letters before
toz les barons; et paroles i ot de maintes manieres es
all the barons and words there had of many manners in-the
lettres que li livres ne raconte mie; et après les autres
letters which the book not recounts at-all and after the other
paroles qui furent, si furent de créance, que l'om creist
words which were so they-were of credence that one should-believe
celui qui les avoit aportées, qui Nicholas Rous avoit nom.
him who them had brought who Nicholas Roux had name
142 «Biels sire, font-il, nous avons veues voz letres, et nos
Fair lord say-they we have seen your letters and to-us
dient que nos vous créons; et nos vous créons bien. Or
they-say that we you believe and we you believe well Now
dites ce que vos plaira.»
say this that to-you will-please

Et li messages estoit devant les barons en estant, et parla: 143
And the envoy was before the barons in standing and spoke
«Seignor, fait-il, l'emperere Alexis vos mande que bien
Lords says-he the-emperor Alexius to-you sends-word that well
set que vos iestes la meillor gens qui soient sanz corone,
he-knows that you are the best people who may-be without crown
et de la meillor terre qui soit. Et mult se merveille por
and of the best land which may-be And much himself marvels for
quoi ne à quoi vos iestes venu en sa terre ne en son regne;
why nor for what you are come into his land nor into his realm
que vos estes crestien, et il est crestiens; et bien set
for you are Christians and he is Christian and well he-knows
que vos iestes meu por la sainte Terre d'oltremer, et por la
that you are set-out for the holy Land of-overseas and for the
sainte-Croiz et por le Sepulcre rescore. Se vos iestes povre ne
holy-Cross and for the Sepulcher to-rescue If you are poor or
diseteus, ils vos donra volentiers de ses viandes et de son
needy he to-you will-give willingly of his victuals and of his
avoir, et vos li vuidiez sa terre. Ne vos voldroit autre
wealth and you to-him empty his land Nor to-you would-wish-he other
mal faire, et neporquant si en a-il le pooir; car se vos
ill do and nevertheless so thereof has-he the power for if you
estiez vint tant de gent, ne vos en porriez vos aler
were twenty times-as-much of people not yourselves thence could you go
(se il mal vos voloit faire) que vos ne fussiez tout desconfit.»
if he ill to-you wished to-do that you not should-be all routed
Par l'acort et le conseil aus autres barons et le duc 144
By the-accord and the counsel of-the other barons and (of-)the doge
de Venise, se leva en piez Coenes de Bethune, qui bons
of Venice himself raised on feet Conon of Béthune who good
chevaliers et sages estoit, et bien eloquens; et respont al
knight and wise was and well eloquent and answers to-the

message: «Bel sire, vos nos avez dit que vostre sire se
envoy Fair lord you to-us have said that your lord himself
merveille mult porquoi nostre seignor et nostre baron sont
marvels much why our lords and our barons are
entré en son regne ne en sa terre. En sa terre il ne sont mie
entered into his realm nor into his land Into his land they not are at-all
entré, quar il la tient à tort et à pechié, contre Dieu et
entered for he it holds with wrong and with sin against God and
contre raison; ainz est son nevou qui ci siet entre nos sor
against reason but it-is (of-)his nephew who here sits among us on
une chaiere, qui est fils de son frere l'empereor Sursac. Mais
a chair who is son of his brother the-emperor Sursac But
s'il voloit à la merci son nevou venir, et li rendoit la
if-he wished to the mercy (of-)his nephew to-come and to-him rendered the
corone et l'empire, nos li proieriens que il li pardonast,
crown and the-empire we him would-pray that he to-him should-pardon
et li donast tant que il peust vivre richement. Et se vos
and to-him should-give so-much that he could live richly And if you
por cestui message n'i revenez altre foiz, ne soiez si hardiz
for this message not-there return other time not be so bold
que vos plus i revegniez.» Ensi se parti li messages; et
that you more there come-back Thus himself departed the envoy and
s'en rala ariere en Constantinoble à l'empereor Alexi.
himself-thence went-back back into Constantinople to the-emperor Alexius

The Young Alexius Shown to the City

xv

The doge and Boniface sail young Alexius beneath the walls and proclaim him the rightful lord, but no Greek dares own him. On horseback in the fields the barons form seven battalions, Baldwin of Flanders in the vanguard and Boniface in the rear, and the host confesses and makes wills. On the appointed morning the knights come out of the transports and leap into the sea to the waist, and the Greeks flee the shore before the lances are lowered.

Li baron parlerent ensemble l'endemain et distrent qu'il 145
The barons spoke together the-next-day and said that-they
mostreroient Alexi, le fil l'empereor de Constantinoble, al
would-show Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople to-the
pueple de la cité. Et dont firent ariver les galies totes. Li
people of the city And then they-had arrive the galleys all The
dux de Venise et li marchis de Monferat entrerent en une,
doge of Venice and the marquis of Montferrat entered into one
et mistrent avec alx Alexi, le fil l'empereor Sursac; et
and put with them Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac and
es autres galies entrerent li chevalier et li baron qui volt.
in-the other galleys entered the knights and the barons who wished
Ensi s'en alerent rez à rés des murs de Costantinople, 146
Thus themselves-thence went close to close with-the walls of Constantinople
et mostrerent al pueple des Grés le valet, et distrent:
and showed to-the people of-the Greeks the youth and said
«Véez ici vostre seignor naturel; et sachiez nos ne venimes
See here your lord natural and know we not came
mie por vos mal faire, ainz venimes por vos garder et por
at-all for you ill to-do but we-came for you to-guard and for
vos deffendre, se vos faites ce que vos devez. Car cil cui
you to-defend if you do this that you ought For he whom

vos obéissiez cum à seignor, vos tient à tort et à pechié,
you obey as to lord you holds with wrong and with sin
contre Dieu et contre raison. Et bien savez con il a
against God and against reason And well you-know how he has
desloiaument ovré vers son seignor et vers son frere; que
disloyally wrought toward his lord and toward his brother for
il li a les els traiz, et tolu son empire à tort et à
he from-him has the eyes drawn and taken his empire with wrong and with
pechié. Et véez ci le droit oir; se vos vos tenez à lui,
sin And see here the rightful heir if you yourselves hold to him
vos feroiz ce que vos devroiz: et se vos nel faites, nos vos
you will-do this that you ought and if you not-it do we to-you
ferons le pis que nos porrons.» Onques nus de la terre ne
will-do the worst that we can Ever anyone of the land nor
de la cité ne fist semblant que il se tenist à lui, por la
of the city not made semblance that he himself held to him for the
cremor et por la dotance de l'empereor Alexi. Ensi s'en
fear and for the dread of the-emperor Alexius Thus themselves-thence
revindrent en l'ost ariere, et alerent chascuns à sa heberge.
came-back into the-host back and went each to his lodging
147 L'endemain, quant il orent la messe oïe, s'asemblerent à
The-next-day when they had the mass heard themselves-assembled at
parlement; et fu li parlemenz à cheval en mi les champs.
parliament and was the parliament on horseback in mid the fields
Là peussiez veoir maint bel destrer et maint bon chevalier
There you-might see many-a fair charger and many-a good knight
desus. Et fu li conseils des batailles deviser, quantes et
above And was the counsel of-the battalions to-devise how-many and
quels il en auroient. Bestance i ot assez d'une part
which they thereof would-have Dispute there was plenty on-one side
et d'autre; mais la fins del conseil fu tels: que al
and on-other but the end of-the counsel was such that to-the

conte Baudoin de Flandres fu otroïe l'avangarde, porce que
count Baldwin of Flanders was granted the-vanguard because that
il avoit mult grant plenté de bones genz et d'archiers et
he had very great plenty of good people and of-archers and
d'arbalestiers, plus que nuls qui en l'ost fust.
of-crossbowmen more than anyone who in the-host might-be
Et après fu devisé que l'autre bataille feroit Henris ses 148
And after was devised that the-other battalion would-make Henry his
freres, et Mahius de Walaincourt et Balduins de Belveoir,
brother and Matthew of Walincourt and Baldwin of Beauvoir
et maint autre bon chevalier de lor terre et de lor païs
and many another good knight of their land and of their country
qui avec els estoient.
who with them were
La tierce bataille fist li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, Pierres 149
The third battalion made the count Hugh of Saint Pol Peter
d'Amiens ses niés, Eustaices de Canteleu, Ansiaus de Kaeu,
of-Amiens his nephew Eustace of Canteleux Anseau of Cayeux
et maint bon chevalier de lor terre et de lor païs.
and many-a good knight of their land and of their country
La quarte bataille fist li cuens Loeys de Blois et de 150
The fourth battalion made the count Louis of Blois and of
Chartain, qui mult fu granz et riche et redotée; que il i
Chartres which very was great and rich and dreaded for it there
avoit mult grant plenté de bons chevaliers et de bone gent.
had very great plenty of good knights and of good people
La quinte bataille fist Mahius de Mommorenci, et li 151
The fifth battalion made Matthew of Montmorency and the
Champenois. Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne fu en cele.
Champenois Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne was in that-one
Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Manessiers de l'Isle, Miles li Braibanz,
Ogier of Saint-Chéron Manasses of the-Isle Miles the Brabançon

Machaires de Sainte-Menehalt, Johans Foisnons, Guis de Capes,
Macaire of Sainte-Menehould John Foisnon Guy of Chappes
Clarembauz ses niez, Roberz de Rançoi: totes ces genz fisent
Clarembaud his nephew Robert of Ronsoy all these people made
la quinte bataille. Sachiez que il i ot maint bon chevalier.
the fifth battalion Know that it there had many-a good knight
152 La siste bataille firent les gens de Borgoigne. En celi
The sixth battalion made the people of Burgundy In this-one
fu Odes li Champenois de Chanlite, Guillaumes ses freres,
was Odo the Champenois of Champlitte William his brother
Guis de Pesmes, Haimmes ses freres, Othes de la Roche,
Guy of Pesmes Aimo his brother Otto of the Roche
Richars de Dompierre, Odes ses freres, Guis de Covlans,
Richard of Dampierre Odo his brother Guy of Conflans
et les gens de lor terre et de lor païs.
and the people of their land and of their country
153 La setime battaille fist li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, qui
The seventh battalion made the marquis Boniface of Montferrat which
mult fu granz. Là furent li Lombart et li Toscain et li
very was great There were the Lombards and the Tuscans and the
Aleman, et totes les genz qui furent dès le mont de Moncenis
Germans and all the people who were from the mountain of Mont-Cenis
trosque à Lion sor le Rone. Tuit cil furent en la battaille
as-far to Lyons on the Rhone All those were in the battalion
le marchis; et fu devisé que il feroit l'ariere-garde.
(of-)the marquis and was devised that he would-make the-rearguard
154 Li jors fu devisez quant il se recueilleroient es
The day was devised when they themselves would-gather into-the
nés et es vaissiaus, por prendre terre par force, ou por
ships and into-the vessels for to-take land by force either for
vivre ou por morir; et sachiez que ce fu une des plus
to-live or for to-die and know that this was one of-the most

doutoses choses à faire qui onques fust. Lors parlerent li
dreadful things to do that ever might-be Then spoke the
evesque et li clergiez al pueple, et lor mostrerent que
bishops and the clergy to-the people and to-them showed that
ils fussent confez et feist chascuns sa devise; que il ne
they should-be confessed and should-make each his will for they not
savoient quant Diex feroit son commandement d'els. Et il
knew when God would-do his commandment of-them And they
si firent mult volentiers par tote l'ost, et mult pitosement.
so did very willingly through all the-host and very piteously
Li termes vint si con devisez fu; et li chevalier furent 155
The term came so as devised it-was and the knights were
es vissiers tuit avec lor destriers; et furent tuit armé,
in-the horse-transports all with their chargers and were all armed
les helmes laciez, et li cheval covert et enselé. Et les autres
the helms laced and the horses covered and saddled And the other
genz qui n'avoient mie si grant mestier en bataile, furent es
people who not-had at-all so great need in battle were in-the
granz nés tuit; et les galées furent armées et atornées totes.
great ships all and the galleys were armed and arrayed all
Et li matins fu biels, un poi après le soleil levant; et 156
And the morning was fair a little after the sun rising and
l'emperieres Alexis les attendoit à granz batailles et à
the-emperor Alexius them awaited with great battalions and with
granz corroiz de l'autre part. Et on sone les bozines; et
great arrays on the-other side And one sounds the trumpets and
chascune galie fu à un vissier liée por passer oltre plus
each galley was to a horse-transport tied for to-pass over more
delivréement. Il ne demandent mie chascuns qui doit aler
freely They not ask at-all each who ought to-go
devant; mais qui ançois puet, ançois arive. Et li chevalier
before but who sooner can sooner arrives And the knights

issirent des vissiers, et saillirent en la mer trosque à la
came-out of-the horse-transports and leaped into the sea as-far as the
çainture tuit armé, les hielmes laciez et les glaives es mains;
waist all armed the helms laced and the lances in-the hands
et li bon archier et li bon serjant et li bon arbalestrier,
and the good archers and the good sergeants and the good crossbowmen
chascuns à sa compaignie, là endroit où ele ariva.
each with his company there in-place where it arrived

157 Et li Greu firent mult grant semblant del retenir; et quant
And the Greeks made very great semblance of-the holding and when
ce vint as lances baissier, li Grieu lor tornerent les dos: si
it came to-the lances lowering the Greeks to-them turned the backs so
s'en vont fuiant, et lor laissent le rivage. Et sachiez
themselves-thence go fleeing and to-them leave the shore And know
que onques plus orguellieusement nuls porz ne fu pris. Adonc
that ever more proudly any port not was taken Then
comencent li marinier à ovrir les portes des vissiers, et
begin the mariners to open the doors of-the horse-transports and
à giter les ponz fors; et on comence les chevax à traire;
to throw the bridges out and one begins the horses to draw
et li chevalier comencent à monter sor lor chevaus; et
and the knights begin to mount on their horses and
les batailles se comencent à rengier si com il devoient.
the battalions themselves begin to range so as they ought

The Tower of Galata

XVI

The Greeks abandon their camp. To force the harbor chain the host lodges before the tower of Galata; a sally from it is driven back, James of Avesnes is wounded in the face, and the tower is taken, the harbor won, and the fleet brought into it. The Venetians will attack from the sea and the French by land. The barons repair a broken bridge and camp between Blachernae and the castle of Bohemond, before one gate only, short of food and armed six or seven times a day.

Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et de Hennaut chevaucha, 158
The count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault rode
qui l'avangarde faisoit, et les autres batailles après, chascune
who the-vanguard made and the other battalions after each
si cum eles chevauchier devoient; et alerent trosque là
so as they to-ride ought and went as-far-as there
où l'emperere Alexis avoit esté logiez. Et il s'en
where the-emperor Alexius had been lodged And he himself-thence
fu tornez vers Costantinoble, et laissa tenduz trés et
was turned toward Constantinople and left pitched tents and
paveillons; et là gaignerent nostre gent assez.
pavilions and there won our people much
De nostres barons fut tels li conseils que il se 159
Of our barons was such the counsel that they themselves
hebergeroient sor le port devant la tor de Galathas, où la
would-lodge on the port before the tower of Galata where the
chaiene fermoit qui movoit de Costantinoble. Et sachiez de
chain closed which went from Constantinople And know of
voir que par cele chaiene covenoit entrer qui al port de
truth that by that chain behooved to-enter who to-the port of
Constantinoble voloit entrer. Et bien virent nostre baron, se
Constantinople wished to-enter And well saw our barons if

il ne prenoient cele tor et rompoient cele chaiene, que
they not took that tower and broke that chain that
il estoient mort et mal bailli. Ensi se herbergierent
they were dead and ill served Thus themselves lodged
la nuit devant la tor et en la juerie que l'on apele
the night before the tower and in the jewry that one calls
l'Estanor, où il avoit mult bone vile et mult riche.
the-Estanor where it had very good town and very rich
160 Bien se fissent la nuit eschaugaitier; et l'endemain, quant
Well themselves had the night watched and the-next-day when
fu hore de tierce, si firent une assaillie cil de la tor de
it-was hour of tierce so made a sally those of the tower of
Galathas, et cil qui de Constantinoble lor venoient aidier
Galata and those who from Constantinople to-them came to-help
en barges; et nostre gent corent as armes. Là assembla
in barges and our people run to-the arms There joined-battle
premiers Jaques d'Avesnes et la soe maisnie à pié; et sachiez
first James of-Avesnes and the his household on foot and know
que il fu mult chargiez, et fu feruz parmi le vis d'un glaive,
that he was very pressed and was struck through the face with-a lance
et en aventure de mort. Et uns suens chevaliers fu montez à
and in chance of death And one his-own knight was mounted on
cheval, qui avoit nom Nicholes de Janlain; et secorrut mult bien
horse who had name Nicholas of Jenlain and succored very well
son seignor, et le fist mult bien, si que il en ot grant pris.
his lord and it did very well so that he thereof had great praise
161 Et li criz fu levez en l'ost; et nostre gent vienent de totes
And the cry was raised in the-host and our people come from all
parz et les mistrent enz mult laidement, si que assez en i
sides and them drove in very foully so that plenty of-them there
ot de morz et de pris; si que de tels i ot qui ne guenchirent
were of dead and of taken so that of such there were who not turned

mie à la tor; ainz alerent as barges dunt il erent venu; et
at-all to the tower but went to-the barges whence they were come and
là en i ot assez de noiez, et alquant en eschaperent.
there of-them there were plenty of drowned and some thereof escaped
Et cels qui guenchirent à la tor, cil de l'ost les tindrent si
And those who turned to the tower those of the-host them held so
près que il ne porent la porte fermer. Enqui refu granz
near that they not could the gate shut There again-was great
li estors à la porte; et la lor tollirent par force, et les
the fight at the gate and it from-them took by force and them
pristrent laienz. Là en i ot assez de morz et de pris.
took therein There of-them there were plenty of dead and of taken
Ensi fu li chastiaus de Galathas pris, et li porz gaigniez 162
Thus was the castle of Galata taken and the port won
de Costantinoble par force. Mult en furent conforté cil de
of Constantinople by force Much thereof were comforted those of
l'ost, et mult en loerent Dam Dieu, et cil de la vile
the-host and much thereof praised Lord God and those of the town
desconforté. Et l'endemain furent enz el port traites les
discomforted And the-next-day were within in-the port drawn the
nés et li vaissel et les galies et li vissier. Et donc
ships and the vessels and the galleys and the horse-transports And then
pristrent cil de l'ost conseil ensemble por savoir quel chose
took those of the-host counsel together for to-know what thing
il porroient faire, s'il asauroient la vile par mer ou par
they could do if-they would-assault the town by sea or by
terre. Mult s'acorderent li Venisien que les eschieles fussient
land Much themselves-agreed the Venetians that the ladders should-be
dreciées es nés, et que toz li assaus fust par devers la
raised on-the ships and that all the assault should-be on toward the
mer. Li François disoient que il ne se savoient mie si
sea The French said that they not themselves knew-how at-all so

bien aidier sor mer com il savoient par terre; mais quant il
well to-help on sea as they knew-how by land but when they
aroient lor chevaus et lor armes, il se sauroient mielz
would-have their horses and their arms they themselves would-know-how better
aidier par terre. Ensi fu la fins del conseil que li Venisien
to-help by land Thus was the end of-the counsel that the Venetians
assauroient par mer, et li baron et cil de l'ost par terre.
would-assault by sea and the barons and those of the-host by land
163 Ensi sejornerent par quatre jorz. Al cinquiesme jor après,
Thus they-sojourned for four days At-the fifth day after
s'arma tote l'oz; et chevauchierent les battailles si con eles
itself-armed all the-host and rode the battalions so as they
erent ordenées, tot par desor le port, trosque endroit le palais
were ordered all along above the port as-far-as opposite the palace
de Blaquerne; et li naviles vint par dedenz le port dès ci
of Blachernae and the fleet came by within the port from here
que endroit els; et ce fu près del chief del port. Et là si
until opposite them and this was near to-the head of-the port And there so
a un flum qui fiert en la mer, que on n'i puet passer se
is a river which strikes into the sea that one not-there can pass except
par un pont de pierre non. Li Grieu avoient le pont colpé; et
by a bridge of stone not The Greeks had the bridge cut and
li baron firent tote jor l'ost laborer et tote la nuit por le
the barons had all day the-host labor and all the night for the
pont afaitier. Ensi fu li ponz afaitiez, et les batailles armées
bridge to-repair Thus was the bridge repaired and the battalions armed
au maitin; et chevauchierent li uns après l'autre, si con
at-the morning and rode the ones after the-other so as
il erent ordené. Et vont devant la vile; et nus de la cité
they were ordered And go before the town and anyone of the city

n'issi fors encontre als, et fu mult granz merveille; que por
not-came out against them and it-was very great marvel for for
un que il estoient en l'ost, estoient-il dui cent en la vile.
one that they were in the-host were-they two hundred in the town
Lors fu li conseils des barons telx que il se hebergeroient 164
Then was the counsel of-the barons such that they themselves would-lodge
entre le palais de Blaquerne et le chastel Buimont, qui
between the palace of Blachernae and the castle (of-)Bohemond which
ere une abaïe close de murs. Et lors furent tendu li tref
was an abbey enclosed with walls And then were pitched the tents
et li paveillon; et bien fu fiere chose à regarder: que de
and the pavilions and well was-it proud thing to behold for of
Costantinoble, qui tenoit trois liues de front par devers la
Constantinople which held three leagues of front on toward the
terre, ne pot tote l'oz assegier que l'une des portes. Et
land not could all the-host besiege but one of-the gates And
li Venisien furent en la mer es nés et es vaissiaus; et
the Venetians were on the sea in-the ships and in-the vessels and
drecierent les eschieles et les mangoniaus et les perieres, et
raised the ladders and the mangonels and the petraries and
ordenerent lor assaut mult bien. Et li baron ratornerent le
ordered their assault very well And the barons arrayed-in-turn the
lor par devers la terre et de perrieres et de mangoniaus.
theirs on toward the land and with petraries and with mangonels
Et sachiez que il n'estoient mie en pais; que il n'ere hore 165
And know that they not-were at-all in peace for there not-was hour
de nuit ne de jor que l'une des batailles ne fust armée
of night nor of day that one of-the battalions not should-be armed
par devant la porte por garder les engins et les assaillies.
in front-of the gate for to-guard the engines and the sallies
Et por tot ce ne remanoit mie que il n'en feissent assez
And for all this not remained at-all that they thereof should-make plenty

par cele porte et par autres, si que il les tenoient si
by that gate and by others so that they them held so
corz, que six fois ou sept les covenoit le jor armer par
short that six times or seven them behooved the day to-arm through
tote l'ost; ne n'avoient pooir que il porchaçassent viande
all the-host nor not-had power that they might-forage victuals
quatre arbalestées loing de l'ost. Et il en avoient mult
four crossbow-shots away from the-host And they thereof had very
poi, se de farine non et de bacons; et de cel avoient
little except of flour not and of bacons and of salt they-had
poi, et de char fresche nulle chose, se il ne l'avoient des
little and of flesh fresh no thing if they not it-had of-the
chevaus que on lor ocioit. Et sachiez que il n'avoient
horses that one to-them killed And know that they not-had
viande comunalment à tote l'ost por trois semaines. Et
victuals commonly for all the-host for three weeks And
mult estoient perillosement; que onques par tant poi de
very they-were perilously for ever by so few of
gent ne furent assegié tant de gent en nule vile.
people not were besieged so-many of people in any town

The Assault on the Walls

XVII

The host fences its camp with palisades and throws back constant sallies; Constantine Lascaris is taken and William of Champlitte's arm broken. After ten days four battalions assault the walls by land while three guard the camp, and fifteen knights and sergeants gain the wall near the sea but are thrown down by its English and Danish guards. The doge sets his ships in one line against the harbor walls, and the din is as if earth and sea were sinking.

Lors se porpenserent de un mult bon engin; que il 166
Then themselves they-bethought of a very good device for they
fermerent tote l'ost de bones lices et de bons merriens
enclosed all the-host with good palisades and with good timbers
et de bones barres; et si en furent mult plus fort
and with good bars and so thereof were much more strong
et plus seur. Li Grieu lor faissoient si sovent assaillies
and more secure The Greeks to-them made so often sallies
que il nes laissoient reposser; et cil de l'ost les
that they not-them let rest and those of the-host them
remetoient arriers mult durement; et totes foiz que il
put-back back very hard and all times that they
issoient fors, i perdoient li Grieu.
came out there lost the Greeks
Un jor feissoient li Borgueignon l'agait, et li Grieu lor 167
One day made the Burgundians the-watch and the Greeks to-them
firent une assaillie; et issirent de lor meillors gens une partie
made a sally and came-out of their best people a part
fors. Et cil lor recorrurent sus, si les remistrent enz mult
out And those to-them ran-in-turn upon so them put-back in very
durement; et les menerent si près de la porte que granz
hard and them led so near to the gate that great

fés de pierres lor getoit-on sor als. Là ot pris un des
loads of stones on-them threw-one upon them There was taken one of-the
meillors Grex de laienz, qui ot non Constantins li Ascres;
best Greeks of there-within who had name Constantine the Lascaris
et le prist Gautiers de Nuilli tot monté sor le cheval. Et
and him took Walter of Neuilly all mounted on the horse And
enqui ot Guillaumes de Chanlite brisié le braz d'une pierre;
there had William of Champlitte broken the arm with-a stone
dont granz damages fu, que il ere mult preuz et mult vailanz.
whereof great damage was for he was very worthy and very valiant
168 Toz les cops et toz les bleciez et toz les morz ne vos pui mie
All the blows and all the wounded and all the dead not to-you I-can at-all
raconter; mais ainz que li estorz parfinast, vint uns chevaliers
recount but before that the fight should-end came a knight
de la masnie Henri, le frere le conte Baudoin de Flandres
of the household (of-)Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders
et de Hennaut, qui ot nom Eustaices dou Marchois; et ne
and of Hainault who had name Eustace of-the Marchais and not
fu armez que d'un gamboison et d'un chapel de fer, son escu
was armed but with-a gambeson and with-a hat of iron his shield
à son col; et le fist mult bien à l'enz metre, si que grant pris
at his neck and it did very well at the-in putting so that great praise
l'en dona l'on. Poi ere jorz que on ne feist assaillies,
to-him-thereof gave one Seldom was day that one not made sallies
mais ne vos puis totes retraire. Tant les tenoient près que
but not to-you I-can all relate So them they-held near that
ne pooient dormir, ne reposser, ne mengier, s'armé non.
not they-could sleep nor rest nor eat except-armed not
169 Une autre assaillie firent par une porte desore, où li Greu
An other sally they-made by a gate above where the Greeks
reperdirent assez. Mais là si fu morz uns chevaliers qui ot
lost-again much But there so was dead a knight who had

nom Guillaumes del Gi; et là le fist mult bien Mahius de
name William of-the Gi and there it did very well Matthew of
Valencort, et perdi son cheval al pont de la porte, qui li
Walincourt and lost his horse at-the bridge of the gate which to-him
fu morz; et maint le firent mult bien qui à celle mellée furent.
was killed and many it did very well who at that brawl were
A cele porte desus le palais de Blaquerne, où il issoient plus
At that gate above the palace of Blachernae where they came-out most
soventes fois, en ot Pierres de Braiecuel plus le pris que
oft times thereof had Peter of Bracieux more the praise than
nus, porce que il ere plus prez logiez et plus sovent i avint.
anyone because that he was most near lodged and most often there came
Ensi lor dura cil perils et cil travaus près de dix jorz, tant 170
Thus to-them lasted that peril and that travail near of ten days until
que un joesdi maitin fu lor assaus atornez, et les eschieles; et
that a Thursday morning was their assault arrayed and the ladders and
li Venisien rorent le lor appareillié par mer. Ensi fu devisez
the Venetians had-in-turn the their prepared by sea Thus was devised
li assaus que les trois batailles des sept garderoient l'ost par
the assault that the three battalions of-the seven would-guard the-host by
defors, et les quatre iroient à l'asaut. Li marchis Bonifaces
outside and the four would-go to the-assault The marquis Boniface
de Monferat garda l'ost par devers les chans, et la bataille
of Montferrat guarded the-host on toward the fields and the battalion
des Borgoignons, et la bataille des Champenois, et Mahius
of-the Burgundians and the battalion of-the Champenois and Matthew
de Monmorenci. Et li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et de
of Montmorency And the count Baldwin of Flanders and of
Hennaut ala assaillir, et la soe gens, et Henris ses freres; et
Hainault went to-assail and the his people and Henry his brother and

li cuens Loeys de Blois et de Chartein, et li cuens Hues de
the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the count Hugh of
Saint Pol, et cil qui à els se tenoient, alerent à l'asaut.
Saint Pol and those who to them themselves held went to the-assault
171 Et drecierent à une barbecane deus eschieles enprès la
And they-raised against a barbican two ladders near the
mer; et li murs fu mult garniz d'Englois et de Danois,
sea and the wall was very manned with-English and with Danes
et li assauz forz et bons et durs. Et par vive force
and the assault strong and good and hard And by living force
monterent des chevaliers sor les eschieles et dui serjant, et
mounted of-the knights on the ladders and two sergeants and
conquistrent le mur sor als; et monterent sor le mur bien
conquered the wall upon them and mounted on the wall well
quinze, et se combatoient main à main as haches et
fifteen and themselves fought hand to hand with-the axes and
as espées. Et cil dedenz se refforcierent mult; si les
with-the swords And those within themselves strengthened much so them
metent fors mult laidement, si que il en retindrent deus.
put out very foully so that they thereof retained two
Et cil qui furent retenu de la nostre gent, si furent mené
And those who were retained of the our people so were led
devant l'empereor Alexi; s'en fu mult liez. Ensi remest
before the-emperor Alexius himself-thereof was very glad Thus remained
li assauz devers les François; et en i ot assez de
the assault on-the-side-of the French and of-them there were plenty of
bleciez et de quassez; s'en furent mult irié li baron.
wounded and of bruised themselves-thereof were very angered the barons
172 Et li dux de Venise ne se fu mie obliés; ainz ot ses nés
And the doge of Venice not himself was at-all forgotten but had his ships
et ses vissiers et ses vaissiaus ordenez d'un front, et cil
and his horse-transports and his vessels ordered in-one front and that

fronz duroit bien trois arbalestrées; et comencent la rive à
front lasted well three crossbow-shots and they-begin the shore to
aprochier qui desoz les murs et desoz les tors estoit. Lors
approach which below the walls and below the towers was Then
veissiez mangoniaus giter des nés et des vissiers,
you-might-see mangonels throw from-the ships and from-the horse-transports
et quarriaus d'arbalestre traire, et ces ars traire mult
and quarrels of-crossbow shoot and these bows shoot very
delivrement; et cels dedenz desfendre des murs et des
freely and those within defend from-the walls and from-the
tours mult durement, et les eschieles des nés aprochier si
towers very hard and the ladders of-the ships approach so
durement que en plusors leus s'entreferoient d'espées et de
hard that in several places each-other-they-struck with-swords and with
lances; et li huz ere si granz que il sembloit que terre et
lances and the shout was so great that it seemed that earth and
mers fondist. Et sachiez que les galies n'osoient terre prendre.
sea might-sink And know that the galleys not-dared land take

The Emperor Declines Battle

XVIII

The blind doge, armed in his prow under the banner of Saint Mark, has his galley run ashore, and the Venetians seize twenty-five towers. When the Emperor Alexius comes out with some forty battalions against the host's six, the doge gives up his towers to live or die with the pilgrims, and after a long standoff the emperor withdraws.

Or porroiz oïr estrange proesce; que li dux de Venise, 173
Now you-will-be-able to-hear strange prowess that the doge of Venice
qui vialz hom ere et gote ne véoit, fu toz armez, el
who old man was and a-drop not saw was all armed in-the

chief de la soe galie, et ot le gonfanon Saint Marc par
head of the his galley and had the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark in
devant lui; et escrioit as suens que il le meissent à
front-of him and cried to-the his-own that they him should-put on
terre, ou se ce non il feroit jutise de lor cors. Et il
land or if this not he would-do justice of their bodies And they
si firent; que la galie prent terre, et il saillent fors; si
so did that the galley takes land and they leap out so
portent le confanon Saint Marc par devant lui à la terre.
carry the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark in front-of him to the land
174 Et quant li Venisien voient le confanon Saint Marc à la
And when the Venetians see the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark on the
terre, et la galie lor seignor qui ot terre prise devant als,
land and the galley (of-)their lord which had land taken before them
si se tint chascuns à honi, et vont à la terre tuit; et cil
so himself held each for shamed and they-go to the land all and those
des vissiers saillent fors et vont à la terre, et cil des
of-the horse-transports leap out and go to the land and those of-the
granz nés entrent es barges et vont à la terre, qui ainz ainz,
great ships enter into-the barges and go to the land who sooner sooner
qui mielz mielz. Lors veissiez assaut grant et merveillox;
who better better Then you-might-see assault great and marvelous
et ce tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Harduin li mareschaus de
and this testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of
Champaigne, qui ceste ovre traita, que plus de quarante li
Champagne who this work composed that more than forty to-him
distrent por verité que il virent le confanon Saint Marc de
said for truth that they saw the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark of
Venise en une des tors, et mie ne sorent qui l'i porta.
Venice on one of-the towers and at-all not knew who it-there carried

Or oiez estrange miracle: et cil dedenz s'enfuient, si 175
Now hear strange miracle and those within themselves-flee so
guerpissent les murs; et cil entrent enz, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz
forsake the walls and those enter in who sooner sooner who better
mielz, si que il saisissent vint-cinq des tors et garnissent
better so that they seize twenty-five of-the towers and furnish
de lor gent. Et li dux prant un batel, si mande messages as
with their people And the doge takes a boat so sends envoys to-the
barons de l'ost, et lor fait assavoir que il avoient vint-cinq
barons of the-host and to-them makes to-know that they had twenty-five
tors, et seussent por voir que il nes pooient reperdre. Li
towers and should-know for truth that they not-them could lose-again The
baron sont si lié que il nel pooient croire que ce soit voirs;
barons are so glad that they not-it could believe that this may-be true
et li Venicien comencent à envoier chevaus et palefroiz à
and the Venetians begin to send horses and palfreys to
l'ost en batiaus de cels que il avoient gaaignez dedenz la vile.
the-host in boats of those that they had won within the town
Et quant li empereres Alexis vit que il furent ensi entré 176
And when the emperor Alexius saw that they were thus entered
dedenz la vile, si comence ses genz à envoier à si grant
within the town so begins his people to send in so great
foison vers els que cil virent que il nes porroient
abundance toward them that those saw that they not-them could
soffrir. Si mistrent le feu entr'els et les Grex; et li
withstand So they-set the fire between-themselves and the Greeks and the
venz venoit de vers nos genz; et li feus comence si granz
wind came from toward our people and the fire begins so great
à naistre, que li Gré ne pooient veoir noz genz. Ensi se
to rise that the Greeks not could see our people Thus themselves
retraistrent à lor tors que il avoient saisies et conquises.
drew-back to their towers that they had seized and conquered

177 A donc issi l'emperere Alexis de Costantinoble à tote sa
At then came-out the-emperor Alexius from Constantinople with all his
force fors de la cité, par autres portes bien loing de une leue
force out of the city by other gates well far of a league
de l'ost; et comence si granz genz à issir que il sembloit
from the-host and begins so great people to come-out that it seemed
que ce fust toz li monz. Lors fist ses batailles ordener
that this might-be all the world Then he-had his battalions ordered
parmi la campaigne, et chevauchent vers l'ost; et quant noz
through the plain and they-ride toward the-host and when our
François les voient, si saillent as armes de totes parz. Cel
French them see so they-leap to-the arms from all sides That
jor, faisoit Henris li freres le conte Baudoin de Flandres et
day made Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and
de Hennaut, l'agait as engins devant la porte de Blaquerne,
of Hainault the-watch at-the engines before the gate of Blachernae
et Mahius de Vaslaincourt et Baudoins de Belveoir, et
and Matthew of Walincourt and Baldwin of Beauvoir and
lor gens qui à els se tenoient. Endroit aus, avoit
their people who to them themselves held Opposite them had
l'empereres Alexis atorné granz genz qui saldroient par trois
the-emperor Alexius arrayed great people who would-sally by three
portes fors, con il se ferroit en l'ost par d'autre part.
gates out when he himself would-strike into the-host by on-other side

178 El lors issirent les six batailles qui furent ordenées, et
And then came-out the six battalions which were ordered and
se rengent par devant lor lices; et lor serjant et
themselves range in front-of their palisades and their sergeants and
lor escuier à pié par derriere les cropes de lor chevaus,
their squires on foot by behind the cruppers of their horses
et li archier et li arbalestier par devant als; et firent
and the archers and the crossbowmen in front-of them and made

bataille de lor chevaliers à pié, dont il avoient bien deus
battalion of their knights on foot of-whom they had well two
cenz qui n'avoient mais nul cheval. Et ensi se tindrent
hundred who not-had more any horse And thus themselves held
quoi devant lor lices; et fu mult granz sens; que se il
quiet before their palisades and it-was very great sense for if they
alassent à la campaigne assembler à els, cil avoient si
had-gone to the plain to-join with them those had so
grant foison de gent, que tuit fuissiens noié entr'aus.
great abundance of people that all we-would-have-been drowned among-them
Il sembloit que tote la campaigne fust couverte de batailles; et 179
It seemed that all the plain were covered with battalions and
venoient le petit pas tuit ordené. Bien sembloit perillose chose;
they-came the little pace all ordered Well it-seemed perilous thing
que cil n'avoient que six batailes, et li Grieu en avoient
for those not-had but six battalions and the Greeks thereof had
bien quarante; et il n'i avoit celi qui ne fust graindre
well forty and it not-there had that-one which not might-be greater
que une des nos. Mais li nostre estoient ordené en tel
than one of-the ours But the ours were ordered in such
manere que on ne pooit à els venir, se par devant non. Et
manner that one not could to them come except by front not And
tant chevaucha l'enperiere Alexis qu'il fu si près que on traioit
so-far rode the-emperor Alexius that-he was so near that one shot
des uns aus autres. Et quant ce oï il dux de Venise, si fist
from-the ones to-the others And when this heard the doge of Venice so had
ses gens retraire et guerpir les tors que il avoient conquises,
his people draw-back and forsake the towers that they had conquered
et dist que li voloit vivre ou morir avec les pelerins. Ensi
and said that he wished to-live or to-die with the pilgrims Thus

s'en vint devers l'ost, et descendi il meismes toz premiers
himself-thence came toward the-host and went-down he himself all first
à la terre, et ce que il i en pot traire de la soe gent fors.
to the land and this that he there thereof could draw of the his people out
180 Ensi furent longuement les batailles des pelerins et des Grius
Thus were long the battalions of-the pilgrims and of-the Greeks
vis-à-vis; que li Gré ne s'oserent venir ferir en lor estal,
face-to-face for the Greeks not themselves-dared come to-strike into their position
et cil ne volrent eslongnier les lices. Et quant l'empereres
and those not wished go-far-from the palisades And when the-emperor
Alexis vit ce, si comença ses genz à retraire; et quant il ot
Alexius saw this so began his people to draw-back and when he had
ses gens raliez, si s'en retorna ariere. Et quant ce vit li
his people rallied so himself-thence turned back And when this saw the
hos des pelerins, si comença à chevaucher le petit pas vers
host of-the pilgrims so began to ride the little pace toward
lui; et les batailles des Grés comencent à aler en voie; et
him and the battalions of-the Greeks begin to go on way and
se traistrent ariers à un palais qui ere apelez li Philippos.
themselves drew back to a palace which was called the Philopatium
181 Et sachiez que onques Diex ne traist de plus grant peril
And know that ever God not drew from more great peril
nule gent con il fist cels de l'ost cel jor; et sachiez qu'il
any people as he did those of the-host that day and know that-it
n'i ot si hardi qui n'aust grant joie. Ensi se remest
not-there had so bold who not-had great joy Thus itself remained
cele bataille cel jor; que plus n'i ot fait, si con Diex
that battle that day for more not-there was done so as God
le volt. L'empereres Alexis s'en retorna en la vile, et
it wished The-emperor Alexius himself-thence turned into the town and
cil de l'ost alerent à lor herberges: si se desarmerent,
those of the-host went to their lodgings so themselves disarmed

que erent mult las et travaillié; et poi mangierent et
for they-were very weary and toiled and little ate and
poi burent, car poi avoient de viande.
little drank for little they-had of victuals

Isaac Restored

XIX

That night the usurper flees with his treasure, and the city brings the blind Sursac from prison and seats him on the throne. The host rejoices but, wary, sends Matthew of Montmorency, Villehardouin, and two Venetians to demand that the father confirm the son's covenant. Past ranks of English and Danish axemen they reach Sursac, and in private Villehardouin recites the terms. Sursac calls them very great and hard to fulfill, but confirms them under a golden seal.

Or oiez les miracles Nostre Seignor, com eles sont beles 182
Now hear the miracles (of-)Our Lord how they are fair
tot partot là où li plaist! Cele nuit domaignement,
all everywhere there where to-him pleases That night precisely
l'emperieres Alexis de Costantinoble prist de son tresor ce
the-emperor Alexius of Constantinople took of his treasure this
qu'il en pot porter, et mena de ses gens avec lui qui aler
that-he thereof could carry and led of his people with him who to-go
s'en voldrent; si s'enfui et laissa la cité. Et cil de
themselves-thence wished so himself-fled and left the city And those of
la vile remestrent mult esbahi; et traistrent à la prison où
the town remained very dismayed and drew to the prison where
l'emperiere Sorsac estoit, qui avoit les ialz traiz. Si le vestent
the-emperor Sursac was who had the eyes drawn So him they-clothe
emperialment; si l'emporterent el halt palais de Blacquerne,
imperially so him-carried into-the high palace of Blachernae

et l'asistrent en la halte chaiere, et li obéirent come lor
and him-seated in the high chair and to-him obeyed as their
seignor. Et dont pristrent messages par le conseil l'empereor
lord And then they-took envoys by the counsel (of-)the-emperor
Sursac, et envoierent à l'ost; et manderent le fil l'empereor
Sursac and sent to the-host and sent-word-to the son (of-)the-emperor
Sursac et les barons que l'empereres Alexis s'en ere
Sursac and the barons that the-emperor Alexius himself-thence was
fuiz, et si avoient relevé à empereor l'empereor Sursac.
fled and so they-had raised to emperor the-emperor Sursac
183 Quant li valez le sot, si manda le marchis Boniface de Monferat,
When the youth it knew so sent-for the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
et li marchis manda les barons par l'ost. Et quant il furent
and the marquis sent-for the barons through the-host And when they were
assamblé al paveillon le fil l'empereor Sursac, si lor
assembled at-the pavilion (of-)the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac so to-them
conte ceste novele; et quant il l'oïrent, de la joie qu'il orent
he-tells this news and when they it-heard of the joy that-they had
ne convient mie à parler; que onques plus granz joie ne fu faite
not behooves at-all to speak for ever more great joy not was made
el monde. Et mult fu Nostre Sire loez pitousement par as
in-the world And much was Our Lord praised piteously by them
toz de ce que en si petit de terme les ot secoruz, et de si
all of this that in so little of time them he-had succored and from so
bas con il estoient les ot mis al desore. Et por ce puet-on
low as they were them had put to-the top And for this can-one
bien dire: «Qui Diex vielt aidier, nuls hom ne li puet nuire.»
well say Whom God wishes to-help any man not him can harm
184 Lors comença à ajorner, et l'ouz se comença à armer; si
Then began to dawn and the-host itself began to arm so
s'armerent tuit par l'ost, porce que il ne créoient mie
themselves-armed all through the-host because that they not believed at-all

bien les Grex. Et messaige comencent à issir dui ou troi
well the Greeks And messengers begin to come-out two or three
ensemble, et content ces noveles meismes. Li consels as
together and tell these news same The counsel of-the
barons et as contes fu tels, et cil al duc de Venise,
barons and of-the counts was such and that of-the doge of Venice
que il envoieroient messaiges laienz savoir coment li afaires
that they would-send envoys therein to-know how the affair
i estoit; et se ce estoit voirs que on lor avoit dit, que
there was and if this was true that one to-them had said that
on requerroit le pere que il asseurast altelx convenances con
one should-ask the father that he should-confirm such covenants as
li filz avoit faites, ou il ne lairoient mie entrer le fil en
the son had made or they not would-let at-all enter the son into
la vile. Eslit furent li message: si en fu li uns Mahius
the town Chosen were the envoys so of-them was the one Matthew
de Monmorenci, et Geffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne
of Montmorency and Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
fu li autres, et dui Venitien de par le duc de Venise.
was the other and two Venetians on behalf-of the doge of Venice
Ensi furent li message conduit trosqu'à la porte, et on 185
Thus were the envoys conducted as-far-as-to the gate and one
lor ovri la porte, et descendirent à pié. Et li Grifon
to-them opened the gate and they-dismounted on foot And the Griffons
orent mis d'Englois et de Danois à totes les haches à
had put of-English and of Danes with all the axes from
la porte, tres ci que al palais de Blaquerne. Einsint les
the gate right here until to-the palace of Blachernae Thus them
amenerent dès ci au haut palais; là troverent l'empereor
they-led from here to-the high palace there they-found the-emperor
Sursac (si richement vestu que por noient demandast-on
Sursac so richly clothed that for nothing would-one-seek

home plus richement vestu), et l'empereriz sa fame dejoste
man more richly clothed and the-empress his wife beside
lui, qui ere mult bele dame, suer le roi de Ongrie. Des
him who was very fair lady sister (of-)the king of Hungary Of-the
autres hauz homes et des haltes dames i avoit tant
other high men and of-the high ladies there had so-many
que on n'i pooit son pié torner, si richement acesmées
that one not-there could his foot turn so richly adorned
que eles ne pooient plus. Et tuit cil qui avoient esté le
that they not could more And all those who had been the
jor devant contre lui, estoient cel jor tot à sa volenté.
day before against him were that day all at his will

186 Li message vindrent devant l'empereor Sursac; l'emperere et
The envoys came before the-emperor Sursac the-emperor and
tuit li autre les honorerent mult. Et distrent li message
all the others them honored much And said the envoys
que il voloient parler à lui privéement de par son fil
that they wished to-speak to him privately on behalf-of his son
et de par les barons de l'ost. Et il se dreça, si
and on behalf-of the barons of the-host And he himself raised so
s'en entra en une chambre, et n'enmena avec lui que
himself-thence entered into a chamber and not-led with him but
l'empereris, et son chancelier, et son druguemant, et les
the-empress and his chancellor and his interpreter and the
quatre messages. Par l'acort as autres messages, mostra
four envoys By the-accord of-the other envoys set-forth
Joffrois de Ville Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne la
Geoffrey of Ville Hardouin the marshal of Champagne the
parole, et dist à l'empereor Sursac:
speech and said to the-emperor Sursac

«Sire, tu vois le servise que nos avons fait à ton fil, et 187
Lord thou seest the service that we have done to thy son and
conbien nos li avons sa convenance tenue. Ne il ne puet
how-well we to-him have his covenant kept Nor he not can
çaiens entrer trosque adonc qu'il ara fait nostre creant
here-within enter until then that-he shall-have made our pledge
des convenz qu'il nos ha; et à toi mande, comme tes filz,
of-the covenants that-he to-us has and to thee sends-word as thy son
que tu nos asseures la convenance en tel forme et en tel
that thou to-us confirm the covenant in such form and in such
maniere con il nos a fait. — Quelx est la convenance?» fait
manner as he to-us has made What is the covenant says
l'empereres. — «Telx com je vos dirai,» respont li messagiers.
the-emperor Such as I to-you shall-tell answers the envoy
«Tot el premier chief, metre tot l'empire de Romanie à 188
All in-the first head to-put all the-empire of Romania to
l'obedience de Rome, dont il est partiz pieça; après, doner
the-obedience of Rome whence it is parted long-since after to-give
deus cens mil mars d'argent à celx de l'ost, et viande
two hundred thousand marks of-silver to those of the-host and victuals
à un an à petiz et à granz; et mener dix mil homes
for one year to small and to great and to-lead ten thousand men
à pié et à cheval (telx à pié com nos vorrons, et telx à
on foot and on horse such on foot as we will-wish and such on
cheval com nos vorrons) en ses vaissiaus et à sa despense
horse as we will-wish in his vessels and at his expense
en la terre de Babiloine, et tenir par un an; et en la Terre
into the land of Babylon and to-hold for one year and in the Land
d'oltremer à tenir cinq cens chevaliers à sa despense tote sa
of-overseas to keep five hundred knights at his expense all his
vie, qui garderont la Terre. Telx est la convenance que vostre
life who will-guard the Land Such is the covenant that your

fils nos a; et si la nos a aseurée par saremenz et par
son to-us has and so it to-us has confirmed by oaths and by
chartes pendanz, et par le roi Phelippe d'Alemaigne qui vostre
charters sealed and by the king Philip of-Germany who your
file a. Icestui convenant volons-nos que vos asseurez alsi.
daughter has This covenant wish-we that you confirm likewise
189 « — Certes,» fait l'empereres, «la convenance est mult granz,
Certainly says the-emperor the covenant is very great
ne je ne voi comment elle puisse estre ferme; et ne por
nor I not see how it may be fulfilled and not for
quant, vos l'avez tant servi, et moi et lui, que se on vos
all-that you it-have so-much served both me and him that if one to-you
en donoit trestot l'empire, si l'ariez-vos bien deservi.» En
thereof gave all the-empire so it-would-have-you well deserved In
maintes manieres i ot paroles dites et retraites; mais la
many manners there had words said and recounted but the
fins si fu telx, que li peres asseura les convenances, si con li
end so was such that the father confirmed the covenants so as the
fils les avoit asseurées, par sairemens et par chartes pendanz
son them had confirmed by oaths and by charters sealed
bullées d'or. La charte fu delivrée as messages. Ensi
with-bulls of-gold The charter was delivered to-the envoys Thus
pristrent congié à l'empereor Sursac, et tornerent en l'ost
they-took leave of the-emperor Sursac and turned into the-host
arriere, et distrent as barons qu'il avoient la besoigne faite.
back and said to-the barons that-they had the business done

The Coronation of the Young Alexius

XX

Young Alexius enters the city to his father, and at the two emperors' request the host lodges across the harbor, and many visit the city's churches and relics. Crowned on the first of August, Alexius begins to pay what he owes, and each pilgrim is repaid his passage as he paid it at Venice. He tells the barons privately that the Greeks hate him for their sake and asks them to stay until March, offering to extend the Venetian fleet a year at his cost. The barons put it to the host.

Lors monterent li baron à cheval et amenerent le vallet 190
Then mounted the barons on horse and led the youth
à mult grant joie en la cité à son pere; et li Gré li
with very great joy into the city to his father and the Greeks to-him
ovrirent la porte, et le reçurent à mult grant joie et à
opened the gate and him received with very great joy and with
mult grand feste. La joie del pere et del fil fu mult granz,
very great feast The joy of-the father and of-the son was very great
que il ne s'estoient pieça entreveu, et que de si grant
for they not themselves-had long-since seen-each-other and that from so great
poverté et de si grant essil furent torné à si grant haltesce,
poverty and from so great exile they-were turned to so great height
par Dieu avant et par les pelerins après. Ensi fu la joie mult
by God before and by the pilgrims after Thus was the joy very
granz dedenz Costantinoble et en l'ost defors des pelerins,
great within Constantinople and in the-host outside of-the pilgrims
de l'honor et de la victoire que Diex lor ot donée.
of the-honor and of the victory that God to-them had given
Et l'endemain proia l'empereres as contes et as barons 191
And the-next-day prayed the-emperor to-the counts and to-the barons
et ses fils meismes que il por Dieu s'alassent herbergier
and his son himself that they for God themselves-should-go to-lodge

d'autre part del port devers l'Estanor et devers Galatas; que
on-other side of-the port toward the-Estanor and toward Galata for
se il se heberjoient en la vile, il doteroient la mellée
if they themselves lodged in the town they would-fear the brawl
d'als et des Grius, et bien en porroit la citez estre
of-them and of-the Greeks and well thereof could the city be
destruite. Et il dient que il l'avoient tant servi en mainte
destroyed And they say that they him-had so-much served in many-a
maniere, que il ne refuseroient jà chose qu'il lor proiast.
manner that they not would-refuse ever thing that-he of-them should-ask
Ensi s'en alerent herbergier d'altre part: ensi sejornerent
Thus themselves-thence went to-lodge on-other side thus they-sojourned
en pais et en repos, en grant plenté de bones viandes.
in peace and in rest in great plenty of good victuals

192 Or poez savoir que mult de cels de l'ost alerent à veoir
Now you-can know that many of those of the-host went to see
Costantinople, et les riches palais et les altes yglises dont
Constantinople and the rich palaces and the high churches of-which
il avoit tant, et les granz richesces (que onques en nule vile
there were so-many and the great riches for ever in any town
tant n'en ot). Des saintuaires ne covient mie à parler;
so-much not-thereof there-was Of-the relics not behooves at-all to speak
que autant en avoit-il à ice jor en la vile cum el remanant
for as-much thereof had-it at that day in the town as in-the remnant
dou monde. Ensi furent mult comunel li Grieu et li François
of-the world Thus were very in-common the Greeks and the French
de totes choses, et de mercheandises et d'autres biens.
in all things and in merchandise and in-other goods

193 Par le commun conseil des Frans et des Grez fu devisé que
By the common counsel of-the Franks and of-the Greeks was devised that
li noviaus emperere seroit encoronez à la feste monseignor
the new emperor would-be crowned at the feast (of-)my-lord

saint Pere, entrant august. Ensi fu devisé, et ensi fu fait.
saint Peter entering August Thus was-it devised and thus was-it done
Coronez fu si haltement et si honoréement con l'em faisoit
Crowned he-was so highly and so honorably as one made
les empereors grex à cel tens. Après comença à paier l'avoir
the emperors Greek at that time After he-began to pay the-money
que il devoit à cels de l'ost; et il le departirent par l'ost, et
that he owed to those of the-host and they it divided through the-host and
rendi chascuns son passage tel con il l'avoient paié en Venise.
rendered each his passage such as they it-had paid in Venice
Li novials emperere ala sovent veoir les barons en l'ost, et 194
The new emperor went often to-see the barons in the-host and
mult les honora, tant cum il pot plus faire; et il le dut bien
much them honored as-much as he could more do and he it ought well
faire, quar il l'avoient mult bien servi. Un jor vint en l'ost
to-do for they him-had very well served One day he-came into the-host
as barons privéement, en l'ostel le conte Baudoin de
to-the barons privately in the-lodging (of-)the count Baldwin of
Flandres et de Hennaut. Enqui fu mandez li dux de Venise,
Flanders and of Hainault There was summoned the doge of Venice
et li halt baron privéement; et il lor mostra une parole et
and the high barons privately and he to-them set-forth a speech and
dist: «Seignor, je sui emperere par Dieu et par vos; et fait
said Lords I am emperor by God and by you and done
m'avez le plus halt servise que onques gens feissent mais
to-me-have-you the most high service that ever people did before
à nul home crestien. Sachiez que assez genz me mostrent bel
to any man Christian Know that many people to-me show fair
semblant, qui ne m'aiment mie; et mult ont li Grieu grant
semblance who not me-love at-all and much have the Greeks great
despit, quant je par voz forces sui entrez en mon heritage.
spite when I by your forces am entered into my heritage

195 «Vostre termes est près que vos vos en devez raler, et la
Your term is near that you yourselves thence must go-back and the
compaignie de vos et des Venisiens ne dure que trosque à
company of you and of-the Venetians not lasts but until to
la feste saint Michel. Dedenz si cort terme ne puis vostre
the feast (of-)saint Michael Within so short term not can-I your
convent assovir. Sachiez, se vos me laissiez, li Grieu me
covenant fulfill Know if you me leave the Greeks me
héent por vos; je reperdrai la terre, et si m'ociront. Mais
hate for you I will-lose-again the land and so me-will-kill But
faites une chose que je vos dirai: demoressiez trosque al
do a thing that I to-you will-say remain until to-the
marc, et je vos alongeroie votre estoire de la feste saint
March and I to-you would-lengthen your fleet from the feast (of-)saint
Michel en un an, et paieroie le costement as Venisiens,
Michael in one year and would-pay the cost to-the Venetians
et vos donroie ce que mestiers vos seroit trosque à la
and to-you would-give this that need to-you would-be until to the
Pasque. Et dedenz cel termine aroie ma terre si mise à
Easter And within that term I-would-have my land so put to
point que je ne la poroie reperdre; et vostre convenance si
point that I not it could lose-again and your covenant so
seroit atendue, que je auroie l'avoir paié, qui me vendroit
would-be fulfilled for I would-have the-money paid which to-me would-come
de par totes mes terres; et je seroie si atornez de navile
on behalf-of all my lands and I would-be so furnished with fleet
de aler avec vos ou d'envoier, si con je le vos ai convent;
to go with you or to-send so as I it to-you have covenanted
et lors ariez l'esté de lonc en lonc por ostoier.»
and then you-would-have the-summer from length into length for to-make-war

Li baron distrent que il en parleroient ensemble sanz lui. 196
The barons said that they thereof would-speak together without him
Il conurent bien que c'ere voirs que il disoit, et que c'ere
They knew well that it-was true what he said and that it-was
mielz por l'empereor et por als. Et il respondirent que il
better for the-emperor and for them And they answered that they
nel pooient faire se par le comun esgart de l'ost non; et
not-it could do except by the common judgment of the-host not and
il en parleroient à cels de l'ost, et l'en respondroient
they thereof would-speak to those of the-host and him-thereof would-answer
ce que il poroient trover. Ensi s'en parti l'empereres
this that they could find Thus himself-thence departed the-emperor
Alexis d'els, et s'en rala en Constantinople arieres.
Alexius from-them and himself-thence went-back into Constantinople back
Et il remestrent en l'ost, et pristrent l'endemain un
And they remained in the-host and took the-next-day a
parlement. Et furent mandé tuit li baron et li chevetaigne
parliament And were summoned all the barons and the captains
de l'ost, et des chevaliers la graindre partie; et lors fu à
of the-host and of-the knights the greater part and then was to
toz ceste parole retraite, si con l'emperere lor ot requise.
all this speech related so as the-emperor to-them had requested

The Emperor's Progress

XXI

The old Corfu faction demands its ships for Syria; the others plead that winter is near and the Holy Land better won from a secure empire in spring. The Venetians agree to serve another year from Michaelmas, the emperor paying, and peace returns. Matthew of Montmorency dies and is buried in the Hospitallers' church. Alexius sets out with Boniface and other barons to subdue his empire, and all the Greeks submit except Johanitsa, the Vlach king of Wallachia and Bulgaria.

197 Lors ot mult grant descorde en l'ost, si cum il avoit eu
Then there-was very great discord in the-host so as there had been
maintes foiz de cels qui volsissent que li oz se departist;
many times from those who would-wish that the host itself should-break-up
que il lor sembloit que ele durast trop. Et cele partie
for it to-them seemed that it lasted too-long And that party
qui à Corfol avoit meu la descorde, semostrent les autres
which at Corfu had stirred the discord summoned the others
de lor sairemenz, et distrent: «Bailiez nos les vaissiauz, si
of their oaths and said Hand to-us the vessels so
con vos le nos avez juré; car nos en volons aler en Surie.»
as you it to-us have sworn for we thence wish to-go into Syria
198 Et li autre lor crioient merci, et distrent: «Seignor, por
And the others to-them cried mercy and said Lords for
Dieu, ne perissons la grant honor que Diex nos a faite. Se
God not let-us-destroy the great honor that God to-us has done If
nos alons en Surie, l'entrée de l'iver ert quant nos y
we go into Syria the-beginning of the-winter will-be when we there
vendrons, ne nos ne porons ostoier; ensinque ert la besoigne
shall-come nor we not will-be-able to-make-war so-that will-be the business
Nostre Seignor perdue. Mais se nos atendons trosque al
(of-)Our Lord lost But if we wait until to-the

marz, nos lairons cest empereor en bon estat, et nos en irons
March we will-leave this emperor in good state and we thence will-go
riche d'avoir et de viande; et puis nos en irons en Surie, et
rich in-wealth and in victuals and then we thence will-go into Syria and
corrons en la terre de Babiloine. Et nostre estoires nos durra
will-run into the land of Babylon And our fleet to-us will-last
trosque à la saint Michiel, et de la saint Michiel trosque
until to the saint Michael and from the saint Michael until
à la Pasque, porce que il ne se poront partir de nos
to the Easter because that they not themselves will-be-able to-part from us
por l'iver. Et ensi porra estre la Terre d'oltre-mer aquise.»
for the-winter And thus will-be-able to-be the Land of-overseas won
Il ne chaloit à cels qui l'ost voloient depecier de meillor 199
It not mattered to those who the-host wished to-break-up of better
ne de pejor, mais que li oz se departist. Et cil qui
nor of worse but that the host itself should-break-up And those who
l'ost voloient tenir ensemble, travaillerent tant, à l'aïe
the-host wished to-hold together labored so-much with the-help
de Dieu, que li afaires fu mis à fin en tel maniere que
of God that the affair was brought to end in such manner that
li Venisien rejurerent un an, de la feste saint Michiel,
the Venetians swore-in-turn one year from the feast (of-)saint Michael
à retenir l'estoire, et l'enpereres Alexis lor dona tant
to keep the-fleet and the-emperor Alexius to-them gave so-much
que fait fu; et li pelerin lor rejurerent la compaignie
that done it-was and the pilgrims to-them swore-in-turn the company
à tenir, si con il avoient fait autrefoiz, à cel termine
to keep so as they had done formerly at that term
meismes. Et ensi fu la concorde et la pais mise en l'ost.
same And thus was the concord and the peace put in the-host

200 Lors lor avint une mult granz mesaventure en l'ost; que
Then to-them befell a very great mischance in the-host that
Mahius de Monmorenci, qui ere uns des meillors chevaliers
Matthew of Montmorency who was one of-the best knights
del roiaume de France, et des plus prisiez et des plus amez,
of-the kingdom of France and of-the most esteemed and of-the most loved
acoucha de maladie, et agrava tant sa maladie que fu morz.
took-to-bed of sickness and worsened so-much his sickness that he-was dead
Et ce fu granz diels et granz domages, uns des greignors
And this was great mourning and great damage one of-the greatest
qui avenist en l'ost d'un sol home. Et fu enterrez à une
that might-happen in the-host from-a single man And he-was buried in a
yglise de monseignor Saint Johan de l'Hospital de Jerusalem.
church of my-lord Saint John of the-Hospital of Jerusalem
201 Après, par le conseil des Grius et des François,
After by the counsel of-the Greeks and of-the French
issi l'empereres Alexis, à mult grant compaignie, de
came-out the-emperor Alexius with very great company from
Costantinople por l'empire aquiter et metre à sa volenté. Avec
Constantinople for the-empire to-subdue and to-put at his will With
lui en ala granz partie des barons, et l'autre remest por
him thence went great part of-the barons and the-other remained for
l'ost garder. Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat ala avec lui,
the-host to-guard The marquis Boniface of Montferrat went with him
et li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, et Henris li freres le conte
and the count Hugh of Saint Pol and Henry the brother (of-)the count
Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut, et Jaques d'Avesnes,
Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and James of-Avesnes
Guillaumes de Chanlite, et Hues de Colemi, et altres genz
William of Champlitte and Hugh of Colemi and other people
assez dont li livres ore se taist. En l'ost remaint li cuens
plenty of-whom the book now itself is-silent In the-host remains the count

Baudoins de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li cuens Loeys
Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and the count Louis
de Blois et de Chartein, et la graindre partie des pelerins.
of Blois and of Chartres and the greater part of-the pilgrims
Et sachiez que en cele ost où l'empereres ala, que tuit 202
And know that in that host where the-emperor went that all
li Grieu de l'une part et de l'altre del Braz vindrent à
the Greeks from the-one side and from the-other of-the Arm came to
lui, et à son comandemant et à sa volenté, et li firent
him and to his command and to his will and to-him did
fealté et homage con à lor seignor, fors solement Johanis
fealty and homage as to their lord except only Johanitsa
qui ere rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie. Et cil Johanis si
who was king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria And that Johanitsa so
ere uns Blas qui ere revelez contre son pere et contre son
was a Vlach who was rebelled against his father and against his
oncle; et si les avoit guerroiez vint anz, et avoit tant de
uncle and so them had warred twenty years and had so-much of
la terre conquis sor als que rois s'en ere faiz riches.
the land conquered upon them that king himself-thereof was made rich
Et sachiez que de cele partie del Braz Saint George devers
And know that of that side of-the Arm Saint George toward
occident, poi en failloit que il ne l'en avoit tolu près
west little thereof lacked that he — him-thereof had taken near
de la moitié. Icil ne vint pas à sa volenté ne à sa merci.
of the half That-one not came at-all to his will nor to his mercy

The Great Fire, and Alexius Breaks Faith

XXII

While the emperor is away, a brawl between Greeks and Latins ends in a fire that burns for two days across the city to Saint Sophia, and fifteen thousand Latins flee to the host. The Abbot of Loos dies. Alexius returns at Martinmas grown proud, stops visiting the barons, and lets his payments dwindle to nothing despite Boniface's reproaches, so the barons resolve to send envoys to demand the covenant or defy him.

203 Endementiers que l'enpereres Alexis fu en cele ost, si
While that the-emperor Alexius was in that host so
ravint une mult granz mesaventure en Costantinople;
happened-in-turn a very great mischance in Constantinople
que une meslée comença de Grieus et des Latins qui erent
for a brawl began of Greeks and of-the Latins who were
en Constantinople estagier; dont il en i avoit mult. Et
in Constantinople resident of-whom it thereof there had many And
ne sai quex genz, por mal, mistrent le feu en la vile; et cil
not I-know what people for ill set the fire in the town and that
feus fu si granz et si orribles que nus hom nel pot esteindre
fire was so great and so horrible that any man not-it could extinguish
ne abaissier. Et quant ce virent li baron de l'ost, qui estoient
nor abate And when this saw the barons of the-host who were
herbergié d'autre part del port, si furent mult dolent et
lodged on-other side of-the port so they-were very sorrowful and
mult en orent grant pitié, cum il virent ces haltes yglises
much thereof had great pity when they saw these high churches
et ces palais riches fondre et abaissier, et ces granz rues
and these palaces rich collapse and fall and these great streets
marcheandes ardoir à feu; et il n'en pooient plus faire.
of-merchants burn with fire and they not-thereof could more do

Ensi porprist li feus desus le port à travers, tres ci que 204
Thus seized the fire above the port at crosswise right here until
parmi le plus espès de la vile et trosque en la mer d'autre
through the most thick of the town and as-far into the sea on-other
part, rez à rez del mostier Sainte-Sophie. Et dura deus jorz
side close to close with-the minster Saint-Sophia And it-lasted two days
et deus nuis; que onques ne pot estre estainz par home;
and two nights that ever not could be extinguished by man
et tenoit bien li frons del feu, si cum il aloit ardant, demie
and held well the front of-the fire so as it went burning half
lieue de terre. Del damage, ne de l'avoir, ne de la richesce
league of land Of-the damage nor of the-wealth nor of the riches
qui là fu perdue, ne vos porroit nus conter, et des
which there was lost not to-you could anyone recount and of-the
homes et des fames et des enfanz, dont il ot mult ars.
men and of-the women and of-the children of-whom there were many burned
Tuit li Latin qui estoient hebergié dedenz Costantinoble, de 205
All the Latins who were lodged within Constantinople from
quelque terre que il fussent, n'i osserent plus demorer,
whatever land that they might-be not-there dared more remain
ainz pristrent lor fames et lor anfanz, et lor avoirs que
but took their wives and their children and their goods that
il en porent traire del feu ne eschamper; et entrerent
they thereof could draw from-the fire or rescue and entered
en barges et en vaissiaus, et passerent le port devers
into barges and into vessels and crossed the port toward
les pelerins. Et ne furent mie pou, que il furent bien
the pilgrims And not were at-all few for they were well
quinze mil, que petit que grant; et puis fu il granz
fifteen thousand as-well small as great and afterward was it great
mestiers as pelerins que il fussent oltre passé. Ensi furent
need to-the pilgrims that they were over crossed Thus were

desacointié li Franc et li Grec; que il ne furent mie si
estranged the Franks and the Greeks for they not were at-all so
comunel con il avoient esté devant: si ne s'en sorent
common as they had been before so not themselves-thereof knew
à cui prendre; qu'il lor pesa d'une part et d'autre.
to whom to-take for-it to-them weighed on-one side and on-other
206 En cel termine, lor avint une chose dont li baron et
In that time to-them happened a thing whereof the barons and
cil de l'ost furent mult irié; que li abbes de Los, qui
those of the-host were very angered for the abbot of Loos who
ere sainz hom et prodom, fu morz, et qui avoit volu
was holy man and worthy-man was dead and who had wished
le bien de l'ost; et ere moines de l'ordre de Cistials.
the good of the-host and was monk of the-order of Cîteaux
207 Ensi demora l'enpereres Alexis mult longuement en l'ost où
Thus remained the-emperor Alexius very long in the-host where
il fu issuz, trosque à la saint Martin; et lors revint en
he was gone-out until to the saint Martin and then came-back into
Constantinoble ariere. Mult fu granz joie de lor venue; que li
Constantinople back Very was great joy of their coming for the
Grieu et les dames de Costantinoble alerent encontre lor amis
Greeks and the ladies of Constantinople went to-meet their friends
à granz chevauchies; et li pelerin ralerent encontre les lor,
in great cavalcades and the pilgrims went-in-turn to-meet the theirs
dont il orent mult grant joie. Ensi s'en rentra l'empereres
whereof they had very great joy Thus himself-thence re-entered the-emperor
en Constantinoble el palais de Blaquerne; et li marchis
into Constantinople into-the palace of Blachernae and the marquis
de Monferat et li altre baron s'en reparierent en l'ost.
of Montferrat and the other barons themselves-thence returned into the-host

L'empereres, qui mult ot bien fait son afaire et mult cuida 208
The-emperor who very had well done his business and much thought
estre au desseure, s'enorgueilli vers les barons et vers
to-be at-the above himself-grew-proud toward the barons and toward
cels qui tant de bien li avoient fait; ne ne les ala mie
those who so-much of good to-him had done nor not them went at-all
veoir en l'ost si com il soloit faire. Et il envéoient à
to-see in the-host so as he was-wont to-do And they sent to
lui, et prioient que il lor feist paiement de lor avoir,
him and prayed that he to-them should-make payment of their money
si con il lor avoit convent. Et il les mena de respit
so as he to-them had covenant And he them led from delay
en respit, et lor faisoit d'ores en altres petiz paiemenz
into delay and to-them made from-time to time small payments
et povres; et en la fin devint noienz li paiemenz.
and poor and in the end became nothing the payment
Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, qui plus l'avoit des 209
The marquis Boniface of Montferrat who more him-had than-the
autres servi et mielz ere de lui, i ala mult sovent; et
others served and better was with him there went very often and
li blasmoit le tort que il avoit vers els, et reprovoit
him blamed (for-)the wrong that he had toward them and reproached
le grant servise que il li avoient fait; que onques si
the great service that they to-him had done for ever so
granz ne fu faiz à nul home. Et il les menoit par respit,
great not was done to any man And he them led by delay
ne chose qu'il lor creantast ne tenoit; tant que il virent
nor thing that-he to-them promised not he-kept so-much that they saw
et conurent clerement que il ne queroit se mal non.
and knew clearly that he not sought except ill not

210 Et pristrent li baron de l'ost un parlement, et li dux
And took the barons of the-host a parliament and the doge
de Venise; et distrent qu'il conossoient que cil ne
of Venice and said that-they knew that that-one not
lor atendroit nul covent, et si ne lor disoit onques
to-them would-keep any covenant and so not to-them said ever
voir; et que il envoiassent bons messages por requerre
truth and that they should-send good envoys for to-require
lor convenance, et por reprover lou servise que il li
their covenant and for to-reproach the service that they to-him
avoient fait; et se il le voloit faire, preissent le; et s'il
had done and if he it wished to-do let-them-take it and if-he
nel voloit faire, desfiassent le de par als, et bien li
not-it wished to-do let-them-defy him on behalf-of them and well to-him
deissent qu'il pourchaceroient le lor si come il poroient.
let-them-say that-they would-pursue the theirs so as they could

The Defiance and the Fireships

XXIII

Conon of Béthune, Villehardouin, Miles the Brabançon, and three Venetians ride to Blachernae and, before both emperors, demand the covenant on pain of defiance. The Greeks are outraged that anyone should defy the emperor in his own chamber, and the envoys barely escape. War begins. In midwinter the Greeks loose seventeen fireships at night against the fleet, but the Venetians tow them burning out of the harbor, losing only a Pisan merchantman. Such is Alexius' reward for their service.

211 A cel message fu esliz Coenes de Betune et Geoffrois de
To that message was chosen Conon of Béthune and Geoffrey of
Ville-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne, et Miles li
Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne and Miles the

Braibanz de Provins; et li dux de Venise i envoia trois
Brabançon of Provins and the doge of Venice there sent three
hals homes de son conseil. Ensi monterent li message sor lor
high men of his council Thus mounted the envoys on their
chevax, les espées çaintes; et chevaucherent ensemble trosque
horses the swords girt and rode together as-far
al palais de Blaquerne. Et sachiez que il alerent en grant
to-the palace of Blachernae And know that they went in great
peril et en grant aventure, selon la traïson as Grés.
peril and in great hazard according-to the treason of-the Greeks
Ensique descendirent à la porte et entrerent el palais, et 212
Thus-so they-dismounted at the gate and entered into-the palace and
troverent l'empereor Alexi et l'empereor Sursac son père seanz
found the-emperor Alexius and the-emperor Sursac his father sitting
en deus chaieres lez-à-lez. Et delez aus seoit l'empereris qui
on two chairs side-by-side And beside them sat the-empress who
ere fame al pere et marastre al fil, et ere suer al roi
was wife to-the father and stepmother to-the son and was sister to-the king
de Hungrie, bele dame et bone. Et furent à grant plenté
of Hungary fair lady and good And there-were in great plenty
de haltes genz, et mult sembla bien corz à riche prince.
of high people and very seemed well court of rich prince
Par le conseil as autres messages mostra la parole Coenes de 213
By the counsel of-the other envoys set-forth the speech Conon of
Betune, qui mult ere sages et bien enparlez: «Sire, nos somes
Béthune who very was wise and well spoken Lord we are
à toi venu de par les barons de l'ost et de par le duc de
to thee come on behalf-of the barons of the-host and on behalf-of the doge of
Venise. Et saches tu que il te reprovent le grant servise que
Venice And know thou that they thee reproach-with the great service that
il t'ont fait, con la gens sevent et cum il est apparisant.
they to-thee-have done as the people know and as it is apparent

Vos lor avez juré, vos et vostre peres, la convenance à
You to-them have sworn you and your father the covenant to
tenir que vos lor avez convent; et vos chartes en ont.
keep that you to-them have covenanted and your charters thereof they-have
Vos ne lor avez mie si bien tenue com vos deussiez.
You not to-them have at-all so well kept as you ought
214 «Semont vos en ont maintes foiz, et nos vos en
Summoned you thereof they-have many times and we you thereof
semonons, voiant toz voz barons, de par als, que vos lor
summon seeing all your barons on behalf-of them that you to-them
taignoiz la convenance qui est entre vos et als. Se vos le
keep the covenant which is between you and them If you it
faites, mult lor ert bel; et se vos nel faites, sachiez
do much to-them it-will-be fair and if you not-it do know
que dès hore en avant il ne vos tienent ne por seignor ne
that from this-hour on forward they not you hold nor for lord nor
por ami; ainz porchaceront que il auront le leur en totes
for friend but will-pursue that they will-have the theirs in all
les manieres que il porront. Et bien vos mandent-il que il
the manners that they can And well you send-word-they that they
ne feroient ne vos ne altrui mal, tant que il l'aussent
not would-do neither to-you nor to-another ill until that they him-had
desfié; que il ne firent onques traïson, ne en lor terre n'est-il
defied for they not did ever treason nor in their land not-is-it
mie acostumé que il le facent. Vos avez bien oï que nos
at-all accustomed that they it do You have well heard what we
vos avons dit, et vos vos conseilleroiz si con vos plaira.»
to-you have said and you yourselves will-consider so as to-you will-please
215 Mult tindrent li Gré à grant mervoille et à grant oltrage
Much held the Greeks to great marvel and to great outrage
ceste desfiance; et distrent que onques mais nus n'avoit
this defiance and said that ever before anyone not-had

esté si ardiz qui ossast l'empereor de Constantinople desfier
been so bold who dared the-emperor of Constantinople defy
en sa chambre meismes. Mult fist as messages malvais
in his chamber itself Much made to-the envoys bad
semblant l'empereres Alexis, et tuit li Grieu qui maintes
semblance the-emperor Alexius and all the Greeks who many
foiz lor avoient fait mult biel.
times to-them had made very fair-show
Li bruis fu mult granz par là dedenz; et li message 216
The noise was very great through there within and the envoys
s'en tornent et vienent à la porte et montent sor les
themselves-thence turn and come to the gate and mount on the
chevaus. Quant il furent defors la porte, n'i ot celui
horses When they were outside the gate not-there was that-one
qui ne fust mult liez; et ne fu mie granz mervoille, que
who not were very glad and not was at-all great marvel for
il erent mult de grant peril eschampé; que mult se tint
they were very from great peril escaped for much it held
à pou que il ne furent tuit mort ou pris. Ensi s'en
by little that they — were all dead or taken Thus themselves-thence
revindrent à l'ost, et conterent as barons si con il avoient
came-back to the-host and told to-the barons so as they had
esploitié. Ensi comença la guerre, et forfist qui forfaire pot,
fared Thus began the war and did-harm who to-do-harm could
et par mer et par terre. En maint leu assemblerent li Franc
both by sea and by land In many-a place joined-battle the Franks
et li Grieu; onques, Dieu merci! n'assemblerent ensemble
and the Greeks ever God's mercy not-joined together
que plus n'i perdissent li Grieu que li Franc. Ensi dura
that more not-there should-lose the Greeks than the Franks Thus lasted
la guerre grant piece, trosque enz el cuer de l'iver.
the war great while until within in-the heart of the-winter

217 Et lors se porpenserent li Grieu d'un mult grant enging;
And then themselves bethought the Greeks of-a very great device
qu'il pristrent dix sept nés granz, ses emplirent totes de
for-they took ten seven ships great so-them filled all with
granz merrienz et d'esprises, et d'estopes, et de poiz, et de
great timbers and with-kindling and with-tow and with pitch and with
toniaus; et attendirent tant que li venz venta de vers aus
casks and waited until that the wind blew from toward them
mult durement. Et une nuit, à mie nuit, mistrent le feu es
very hard And one night at mid night they-set the fire in-the
nés, et laissierent les voiles aler al vent; et li feus aluma
ships and let the sails go to-the wind and the fire kindled
mult halt, si que il sembloit que tote la terre arsist. Et ensi
very high so that it seemed that all the land might-burn And thus
s'en vienent vers les navies des pelerins; et li criz
themselves-thence come toward the fleets of-the pilgrims and the cry
lieve en l'ost, et saillent as armes de totes parz. Li Venisien
rises in the-host and they-leap to-the arms from all sides The Venetians
corrent à lor vaissiaus, et tuit li autre qui vaissials i avoient;
run to their vessels and all the others who vessels there had
et les comencent à rescore dou feu mult viguerosement.
and them begin to rescue from-the fire very vigorously
218 Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne,
And well testifies Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
qui ceste ovre dita, que onques sor mer ne s'aiderent genz
who this work dictated that ever on sea not themselves-helped people
mielz que li Venisien firent; qu'il sailirent es galies et
better than the Venetians did for-they leaped into-the galleys and
es barges des nés, et prenoient les nés totes ardanz à
into-the barges of-the ships and took the ships all burning with
cros, et les tiroient par vive force devant lor anemis fors
hooks and them drew by living force before their enemies out

del port, et les metoient el corrant del Braz, et les
of-the port and them put into-the current of-the Arm and them
laissoient aler ardant contreval le Braz. Des Grex i avoit
let go burning down the Arm Of-the Greeks there were
tant sor la rive venuz que ce n'ere fins ne mesure; et ere
so-many on the shore come that this not-was end nor measure and was
li criz si granz que il sembloit que terre et mers fondist.
the cry so great that it seemed that earth and sea might-sink
Et entroient es barges et en salvacions, et traioient
And they-entered into-the barges and into lifeboats and shot
as noz qui rescooient le feu; et en i ot de bleciez.
at-the ours who rescued-from the fire and of-them there were of wounded
La chevalerie de l'ost, erraument qu'ele ot oï le cri, 219
The knighthood of the-host at-once that-it had heard the cry
si s'armerent tuit; et issirent les battailles as champs,
so themselves-armed all and came-out the battalions to-the fields
chascune endroit soi, si con ele ere hebergie; et il douterent
each in-place itself so as it was lodged and they feared
que li Greiu ne les venissent assaillir par devers les champs.
that the Greeks — them should-come to-assail on toward the fields
Ensi soffrirent cel travail et cele angoisse trosque à cler jor; 220
Thus they-suffered that travail and that anguish until to clear day
mais par l'aïe de Dieu ne perdirent noient li noz, fors que une
but by the-help of God not lost anything the ours except that one
nef de Pisans qui ere plaine de marchaandise; icele si fu arse
ship of Pisans which was full of merchandise that-one so was burned
del feu. Mult orent esté en grant peril cele nuit; que se lor
by-the fire Much had-they been in great peril that night for if their
naviles fust ars, il aussent tot pardu; que il ne s'en
fleet were burned they would-have all lost for they not themselves-thence

peussent aler par terre ne par mer. Ice guerredon lor volt
could go by land nor by sea This reward to-them wished
rendre li empereres Alexis del service qu'il li avoient fait.
to-render the emperor Alexius for-the service that-they to-him had done

Murzuphlus Usurps the Empire

XXIV

Murzuphlus, the Greek who most urged the quarrel, seizes Alexius in his bed at midnight, puts on the red boots, and is crowned. Sursac dies of fear, and Murzuphlus, after poison fails, strangles Alexius and buries him with honor as if he had died a natural death. The clergy declare the war just against murderers who have left the obedience of Rome. Henry of Flanders raids Philea on the Black Sea, and Murzuphlus, ambushing him on his return, is routed and loses his standard and an icon of Our Lady.

221 Et lors virent li Gré qui erent issi mellé as Frans,
And then saw the Greeks who were thus embroiled with-the Franks
qu'il n'i avoit mais point de la pais; si pristrent conseil
that-it not-there had more a-whit of the peace so they-took counsel
privéement por lor seignor traïr. Il i avoit un Gré qui ere
privately for their lord to-betray It there had a Greek who was
mielz de lui que tuit li autre, et plus li avoit fait faire la
better with him than all the others and more him had made make the
mellée as Frans que nus. Cil Grieus avoit à non Morchuflex.
brawl with-the Franks than anyone That Greek had as name Murzuphlus
222 Par le conseil et par le consentement as autres, un soir,
By the counsel and by the consent of-the others one evening
à la mie nuit, que l'empereres Alexis dormoit en sa chambre,
at the mid night that the-emperor Alexius slept in his chamber
cil qui garder le devoient (Morchuflés demainement et li
those who to-guard him ought Murzuphlus especially and the

autre qui avec lui estoient) le pristrent en son lit et le
others who with him were him took in his bed and him
gitterent en une chartre, en prison; et Morchuflés chauça les
cast into a dungeon in prison and Murzuphlus put-on the
hueses vermoilles par l'aïe et par le conseil des autres Grex.
boots red by the-help and by the counsel of-the other Greeks
Si se fist empereor; après le coronerent à Sainte Sophie.
So himself made emperor after him they-crowned at Saint Sophia
Or oïez se onques si orrible traïsons fu faite par nule gent.
Now hear if ever so horrible treason was done by any people
Quant ce oï l'emperere Sursac que ses fils fu pris et 223
When this heard the-emperor Sursac that his son was taken and
cil fu coronez, si ot grant paor, et li prist une
that-one was crowned so he-had great fear and him took a
maladie qui ne dura mie longuement; si moru. Et cil
sickness which not lasted at-all long so he-died And that
emperere Morchuflex si fist le fil que il avoit en prison,
emperor Murzuphlus so had the son whom he had in prison
deus foiz ou trois enpoisoner; et ne plot Deu que il
two times or three poisoned and not it-pleased God that he
morust. Après ala, si l'estrangla en murtre; et quant il
should-die After he-went so him-strangled in murder and when he
l'ot estranglé, si fist dire partot que il ere morz de
him-had strangled so had said everywhere that he was dead of
sa mort; et le fist ensevelir con empereor honorablement,
his death and him had buried as emperor honorably
et metre en terre; et fist grant semblant que lui pesoit.
and put in earth and made great semblance that him it-grieved
Mais murtres ne puet estre celez. Clerement fu seu 224
But murder not can be hidden Clearly it-was known
prochainement des Grieus et des François que li murtres
soon by-the Greeks and by-the French that the murder

ere si faiz con vos avez oï retraire. Lors pristrent li baron
was so done as you have heard related Then took the barons
de l'ost et li dux de Venise un parlement; et si i
of the-host and the doge of Venice a parliament and so there
furent li evesque et toz li clergiez. A ce s'acorda toz li
were the bishops and all the clergy To this themselves-agreed all the
clergiez (et cil qui avoient le commandement de l'apostoile
clergy and those who had the command of the-pope
le mostrerent as barons et as pelerins) que cil qui tel
it showed to-the barons and to-the pilgrims that he who such
murtre faisoit, n'avoit droit en terre tenir; et tuit cil qui
murder did not-had right in land to-hold and all those who
estoient consentant, estoient parçonier del murtre; et oltre
were consenting were partners of-the murder and beyond
tot ce, que il s'estoient sotrait de l'obedience de Rome.
all this that they themselves-were withdrawn from the-obedience of Rome
225 «Porquoi nos vos disons, fait li clergiez, que la bataille
Wherefore we to-you say says the clergy that the battle
est droite et juste; et se vos avez droite entention de
is right and just and if you have right intention to
conquerre la terre et mettre à l'obedience de Rome, vos
conquer the land and to-put at the-obedience of Rome you
arez le pardon tel cum l'apostoiles le vos a octroié,
will-have the indulgence such as the-pope it to-you has granted
tuit cil qui confés i morront.» Sachiez que ceste chose
all those who confessed there will-die Know that this thing
fu granz confors as barons et as pelerins.
was great comfort to-the barons and to-the pilgrims
226 Granz fu la guerre entre les Frans et les Grex; car ele n'apaisa
Great was the war between the Franks and the Greeks for it not-abated
mie, ainz crut adès et esforça; et poi ere jorz que on n'i
at-all but grew ever and strengthened and few was days that one not-there

assemblast ou par terre ou par mer. Lors fist une chevauchie
joined-battle either by land or by sea Then made a raid
Henris, li freres le conte Baudoin de Flandres, et mena
Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and led
grant partie de la bone gent de l'ost. Avec lui ala Jaques
great part of the good people of the-host With him went James
d'Avesnes, et Baldoins de Belveoir, Odes li Champenois de
of-Avesnes and Baldwin of Beauvoir Odo the Champenois of
Chanlite, Guillaumes ses freres, et les genz de lor païs. Et
Champlitte William his brother and the people of their country And
s'en partirent à une vesprée, et chevaucherent toute nuit;
themselves-thence departed at an evening and rode all night
et l'endemain, de halte hore, si vindrent à une bone vile qui la
and the-next-day at high hour so they-came to a good town which the
Filée avoit nom, et la pristrent; et firent grant gaieng de proies,
Philea had name and it took and made great gain of booty
de prisons, de robes, de viandes, qu'il envoierent es barges
of prisoners of robes of victuals which-they sent in-the barges
à l'ost contreval le Braz; que la vile seoit sor la mer de Rossie.
to the-host down the Arm for the town sat on the sea of Russia
Ensi sejornerent deus jors en cele vile, à mult grant plenté de 227
Thus they-sojourned two days in that town with very great plenty of
viandes, dont il en i avoit mult et assez. Al tierz jor,
victuals of-which it thereof there had many and plenty At-the third day
s'en partirent à totes lor proies et à toz lor gaienz,
themselves-thence departed with all their booty and with all their gains
et chevauchierent arriers vers l'ost. L'empereres Morchuflés oï
and rode back toward the-host The-emperor Murzuphlus heard
dire les noveles que cil estoient issu de l'ost; et parti par
say the news that those were gone-out of the-host and departed by
nuit de Costantinoble à grant partie de sa gent, et lors se
night from Constantinople with great part of his people and then himself

mist en un agait où cil devoient revenir. Et les vit passer à
put in an ambush where those were-to come-back And them saw pass with
totes lor proies et à toz lor gaains, et les batailles l'une après
all their booty and with all their gains and the battalions the-one after
l'autre, tant que l'ariere-garde vint. L'ariere-garde faisoit Henris,
the-other until that the-rearguard came The-rearguard made Henry
li freres le conte Baldoin de Flandres, et la soe gens; et
the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and the his people and
l'empereres Morchuflex lor corrut sore à l'entrée d'un bois;
the-emperor Murzuphlus them ran upon at the-entrance of-a wood
et cil tornent encontre lui. Si assemblerent mult durement.
and those turn against him So they-joined very hard
228 A l'aïe de Dieu, fu desconfiz l'emperere Morchuflex; et
With the-help of God was routed the-emperor Murzuphlus and
dut estre pris ses cors domaines; et pardi son gonfanon
was-near to-be taken his body own and lost his gonfanon
emperial, et une ancone qu'il faisoit porter devant lui, où
imperial and an icon which-he had carried before him where
il se fioit mult il et li autre Gré (en cele ancone ere
he himself trusted much he and the other Greeks in that icon was
Nostre Dame formée); et pardi bien trosque à vint chevaliers
Our Lady figured and lost well as-far to twenty knights
de la meillor gent que il avoit. Ensi fu desconfiz l'empereres
of the best people that he had Thus was routed the-emperor
Morchuflex con vos avez oï; et fu granz la guerre entre
Murzuphlus as you have heard and was great the war between
lui et les Frans; et fu jà de l'iver granz partie passée,
him and the Franks and was already of the-winter great part passed
et entor la Chandelor fu, et aprocha li quaresmes.
and about the Candlemas it-was and drew-near the Lent

The Pact Before the Assault

XXV

Those who sailed from Marseilles to Syria achieve nothing: some die of sickness, and a company riding to serve Bohemond of Antioch is destroyed by the Turks, Vilain of Neuilly among the dead. Before Constantinople both sides build up their works, the Greeks adding wooden stages to every tower. Franks and Venetians swear a pact: the booty pooled and shared, six electors from each side to choose an emperor who takes a quarter and two palaces, and twenty-four to assign the fiefs.

Or vos lairons de cels qui devant Constantinoble sunt; si 229
Now to-you we-will-leave of those who before Constantinople are so
parlerons de cels qui alerent as autres porz, et de l'estoire
we-will-speak of those who went to-the other ports and of the-fleet
de Flandres qui avoit l'hiver sejorné à Marseille, et furent
of Flanders which had the-winter sojourned at Marseilles and were
passé en l'esté en la terre de Surie tuit; et furent si granz
crossed in the-summer into the land of Syria all and were so great
genz que il estoient assez plus que cil qui estoient devant
people that they were much more than those who were before
Costantinoble. Or oïez quex domages fu, quant il ne furent
Constantinople Now hear what damage it-was when they not were
avec cels josté; quar toz jorz mais fust la crestientez alcie. Mais
with those joined for all days more would-be the Christendom raised But
Diex nel volt por lor pechiez: li un furent mort de l'enfermeté
God not-it wished for their sins the ones were dead of the-sickness
de la terre; li autre tornerent en lor païs arriere. Onques nul
of the land the others turned into their country back Ever any
esploit ne firent ne nul bien, là où il alerent en la terre.
achievement not they-made nor any good there where they went in the land

230 Et une compaignie de mult bone gent s'esmut por raler
And a company of very good people itself-set-out for to-go-in-turn
en Antioche al prince Buymont, qui ere princes d'Antioche
into Antioch to-the prince Bohemond who was prince of-Antioch
et cuens de Triple, et avoit guerre al roy Lion, qui ere
and count of Tripoli and had war with-the king Leo who was
sires des Hermins. Et cele compaignie aloit al prince en
lord of-the Armenians And that company went to-the prince in
soldées; et li Turc del païs le sorent, et lor firent un
pay and the Turks of-the country it knew and to-them made an
agait par là où il devoient passer. Et vindrent à els; si
ambush by there where they were-to pass And they-came to them so
se combatirent et furent desconfit li Franc, que onques
themselves fought and were routed the Franks for ever
nus n'en eschampa qui ne fust ou morz ou pris.
anyone not-thereof escaped who not might-be either dead or taken
231 Là si fu morz Vilains de Nuilli, qui ert uns des bons
There so was dead Vilain of Neuilly who was one of-the good
chevaliers del monde, et Giles de Traisignies, et maint autre;
knights of-the world and Giles of Trasignies and many another
et fu pris Bernarz de Moroel, et Renaus de Danpierre, et
and was taken Bernard of Moreuil and Renaud of Dampierre and
Johans de Vilers, et Guillaumes de Nuilly, qui colpes n'i
John of Villers and William of Neuilly who fault not-there
avoit. Et sachiez que de quatre-vins chevaliers que il avoit
had And know that of fourscore knights that there were
en la rote, onques uns n'en eschapa qu'il ne fussent ou
in the company ever one not-thereof escaped that-they not might-be either
mort ou pris. Et bien tesmoigne li livres que onques nus
dead or taken And well testifies the book that ever anyone

n'eschiva l'ost de Venise, que maus ou honte ne li avenist;
not-shunned the-host of Venice that ill or shame not to-him might-befall
et por ce si fait que sages qui se tient devers le mielx.
and for this so does as wise-man who himself holds toward the better
Or vos lairons de cels; si parlerons de cels qui sont 232
Now to-you we-will-leave of those so we-will-speak of those who are
devant Costantinoble, qui mult bien firent lor engins atorner,
before Constantinople who very well had their engines arrayed
et lor perieres et lor mangonials drecier par les nés et par
and their petraries and their mangonels raised on the ships and on
les vissiers, et toz engins qui ont mestier à vile prandre;
the horse-transports and all engines which have use for town to-take
et les eschieles des antaines drecier sor les hauz mas des
and the ladders of-the yards raised on the high masts of-the
nés, qui estoient si haltes que n'ere se merveile non.
ships which were so high that it-not-was except marvel not
Et quant ce virent li Grieu, si recomencierent la vile à 233
And when this saw the Greeks so began-again the town to
rehorder endroit als, qui mult ere fermée de hals murs et de
re-timber opposite them which very was enclosed with high walls and with
haltes tors. Ne n'i avoit si halte tor où il ne feissent
high towers Nor not-there was so high tower where they not should-make
deus estages ou trois de fust por plus halcier; ne onques
two stages or three of wood for more to-raise nor ever
nule vile ne fu si bien hordée. Ensi laborerent d'une part
any town not was so well timbered Thus labored on-one side
et d'autre li Grieu et li Franc grant partie del quaresme.
and on-other the Greeks and the Franks great part of-the Lent
Lors parlerent cil de l'ost ensemble et pristrent conseil 234
Then spoke those of the-host together and took counsel
coment il se contendroient. Assez i ot parlé et avant
how they themselves would-conduct Much there was spoken both forward

et arriere; mais la summe del conseil fut tels, que, se Diex
and back but the sum of-the counsel was such that if God
donoit qu'il entrassent en la vile à force, que toz li gaainz
granted that-they should-enter into the town by force that all the gain
qui i seroit faiz, seroit aportez ensemble et departiz
which there would-be made would-be brought together and divided
comunelment si con il devroit; et se il estoient poesteif de
in-common so as it ought and if they were masters of
la cité, six home seroient pris de François et six de Venisiens;
the city six men would-be taken of French and six of Venetians
et cil jureroient sor sains que il esliroient à empereor celui
and those would-swear on relics that they would-elect to emperor him
cui il cuideroient que fust plus à profit de la terre. Et cil
whom they would-think that would-be most to profit of the land And he
qui empereres seroit par l'eslecion de cels, si aroit lo quart
who emperor would-be by the-election of those so would-have the fourth
de tote la conqueste et dedenz la cité et defors, et en outre
of all the conquest both within the city and outside and in addition
aroit le palais de Bouchelion et celui de Blaquerne; et les
would-have the palace of Bucoleon and that of Blachernae and the
trois pars seroient parties par mi, la moitiez as Venisiens
three parts would-be divided by half the half to-the Venetians
et la moitiez à cels de l'ost. Et lors seroient pris doze
and the half to those of the-host And then would-be taken twelve
des plus sages de l'ost des pelerins et doze des Venisiens,
of-the most wise of the-host of-the pilgrims and twelve of-the Venetians
et cil departiroient les fiez et les honors par les homes,
and those would-divide the fiefs and the honors among the men
et deviseroient quel servise il en feroient à l'empereor.
and would-set-out what service they thereof would-do to the-emperor

Ensi fu ceste convenance asseurée et jurée d'une part et 235
Thus was this covenant confirmed and sworn on-one side and
d'autre des François et des Venisiens, qu'à l'issue de marz
on-other by-the French and by-the Venetians that-at the-end of March
en un an s'en porroit aler qui voldroit; et cil qui
in one year himself-thence could go who would-wish and those who
demorroient en la terre seroient tenu de servise à l'empereor
would-remain in the land would-be bound of service to the-emperor
tel con ordenez seroit. Ensi fu faite la convenance et asseurée,
such as ordered would-be Thus was made the covenant and confirmed
et escommenié del clergié tuit cil qui ne la tendroient.
and excommunicated by-the clergy all those who not it would-keep

The Second Assault

XXVI

On the Friday after mid-Lent the fleet attacks half a league of wall, but the pilgrims are driven back with loss, and some would sail away. They lash the ladder ships in pairs, two to a tower. On Monday a north wind drives the Pilgrim *and the* Paradise *against a tower, and a Venetian and Andrew of Urboise enter it. Knights scale the walls, break three gates, and charge Murzuphlus' camp; he flees to Bucoleon, and the host camps by the walls, expecting over a month's fighting.*

Mult fu bien li naviles atornez et hordez, et recueillies 236
Very was well the fleet arrayed and timbered and gathered
les viandes totes as pelerins. Joesdi après mi-quaresme,
the victuals all to-the pilgrims Thursday after mid-Lent
entrerent tuit es nés et traistrent les chevaus es
entered all into-the ships and drew the horses into-the
vissiers. Et chascune bataille si ot son navile par soi,
horse-transports And each battalion so had its fleet by itself

et furent tuit coste à coste arengié; et furent departies
and were all side to side ranged and were divided
les nés d'entre les galies et les vissiers. Et fu granz
the ships from-among the galleys and the horse-transports And it-was great
mervoille à regarder; et bien tesmoigne li livres que bien
marvel to behold and well testifies the book that well
duroit demie liue françoise li assals, si cum il ere ordenez.
lasted half league French the assault so as it was ordered
237 Et le vendredi matin, se traistrent les nés et les galies et
And the Friday morning themselves drew the ships and the galleys and
li autre vaissel vers la vile, si con ordené erent; et commence
the other vessels toward the town so as ordered they-were and begins
li assals mult fors et mult durs. En mains leus descendirent à
the assault very strong and very hard In many places they-went-down to
terre et alerent trosque as murs; et en mains leus refurent
land and went as-far to-the walls and in many places were-in-turn
les eschieles des nés si aprochies, que cil des tors et des
the ladders of-the ships so approached that those of-the towers and of-the
murs et cil des eschieles s'entreferoient des glaives, de
walls and those of-the ladders each-other-struck with-the lances from
main tenant. Ensi dura cil assals, mult durs et mult fors et
hand holding Thus lasted that assault very hard and very strong and
mult fiers, trosque vers hore de none en plus de cent leus.
very fierce until toward hour of nones in more than hundred places
238 Mais par noz pechiez, furent li pelerin resorti de l'asaut;
But by our sins were the pilgrims driven-back from the-assault
et cil qui estoient descendu à terre des galies et des
and those who were gone-down to land from-the galleys and from-the
vissiers, furent remis enz à force. Et bien sachiez que plus
horse-transports were put-back in by force And well know that more
pardirent cil de l'ost cel jor que li Grieu, et mult en
lost those of the-host that day than the Greeks and much thereof

furent li Grieu resbaudi. Tels i ot qui se traistrent
were the Greeks emboldened Such there were who themselves drew
arriere de l'assaut, et les vassials en quoi il estoient; et
back from the-assault and the vessels in which they were and
tels i ot qui remestrent à ancre si près de la vile, que il
such there were who remained at anchor so near to the town that they
getoient à perrieres et à mangonials li un as autres.
threw with petraries and with mangonels the ones at-the others
Lors pristrent à la vesprée un parlement cil de l'ost et li 239
Then took at the evening a parliament those of the-host and the
dux de Venise, et assemblerent en une yglise d'autre part (de
doge of Venice and assembled in a church on-other side from
cele part où il avoient esté logié). Là ot maint conseil
that side where they had been lodged There was many-a counsel
doné et pris; et furent mult esmaié cil de l'ost por ce que
given and taken and were very dismayed those of the-host for this that
il lor fu le jor mescheu. Assez i ot de cels qui loerent
it to-them was the day befallen-ill Plenty there were of those who advised
que on alast d'autre part de la vile, de cele part où ele
that one should-go on-other side of the town on that side where it
n'ere mie si hordée. Et li Venicien, qui plus savoient de la
not-was at-all so timbered And the Venetians who more knew of the
mer, distrent que se il i aloient, li coranz de l'aigue les
sea said that if they there went the current of the-water them
enmenroit contreval le Braz; si ne porroient lor vaissiaus arester.
would-carry down the Arm so not they-could their vessels stop
Et sachiez que il avoit de cels qui volsissent que li coranz
And know that there were of those who would-wish that the current
enmenast les vaissials contreval le Braz, ou li venz (à cels ne
should-carry the vessels down the Arm or the wind to them not

chausist ù), mais qu'il partissent de la terre et alassent en
mattered where but that-they should-depart from the land and should-go on
voie. Et il n'ere mie mervoille, que mult erent en grant peril.
way And it not-was at-all marvel for very they-were in great peril
240 Assez i ot parlé et avant et ariere; mais la somme del
Much there was spoken both forward and back but the sum of-the
conseil si fu tels: que il ratorneroient lor afaire l'endemain,
counsel so was such that they would-array-again their business the-next-day
qui semadis ere, et le diemenche tote jor, et le lunedi
which Saturday was and the Sunday all day and the Monday
iroient à l'assaut; et lieroient les nés où les eschieles
would-go to the-assault and would-bind the ships where the ladders
estoient, deus et deus. Ensi assauroient deus nés à une
were two and two Thus would-assault two ships to one
tor, porce qu'il orent veu que à cel jor n'avoit assailli que
tower because that-they had seen that at that day not-had assailed but
une nés à une tor, si estoit trop grevée chascune par
one ship at one tower so was too-much burdened each by
soi; que cil de la tor estoient plus que cil de l'eschiele.
itself for those of the tower were more than those of the-ladder
Et por ce si fu bons porpensemenz que plus greveroient
And for this so it-was good thought that more would-burden
deus eschieles à une tor que une. Ensi com il fu devisé,
two ladders at one tower than one Thus as it was devised
si fu fait; et ensi attendirent le semadi et dimenche.
so it-was done and thus they-awaited the Saturday and Sunday
241 L'empereres Morchuflés s'ere venuz herbergier devant
The-emperor Murzuphlus himself-was come to-lodge before
l'asaut en une place à tot son pooir, et ot tendues ses
the-assault in a place with all his power and had pitched his
vermeilles tentes. Ensi dura cil afaires trosque à lundi matin;
red tents Thus lasted that business until to Monday morning

et lors furent armé cil des nés et des vissiers et cil
and then were armed those of-the ships and of-the horse-transports and those
des galies. Et cil de la vile les doterent mains que il ne
of-the galleys And those of the town them feared less than they —
firent à premiers; si furent si esbaudi que sor les murs et sor
did at first so were so emboldened that on the walls and on
les tors ne paroient se genz non. Et lors comença li assaus
the towers not appeared except people not And then began the assault
fiers et merveilleus; et chascuns vaissiaus assailloit endroit lui.
fierce and marvelous and each vessel assailed in-place itself
Li huz de la noise fu si granz que il sembla que terre fondist.
The shout of the noise was so great that it seemed that earth might-sink
Ensi dura li assaus longement, tant que Nostre Sires lor fist 242
Thus lasted the assault long until that Our Lord to-them had
lever un vent qu'on apele Boire; et bota les nés et les vaissiaus
raised a wind that-one calls Boreas and pushed the ships and the vessels
sor la rive plus qu'il n'estoient devant. Et deus nés qui
on the shore more than-they were before And two ships which
estoient liées ensemble, don l'une avoit nom la Pelerine et li
were tied together whereof the-one had name the Pilgrim and the
autre li Paravis, aprochierent tant à la tor, l'une d'une part et
other the Paradise approached so-much to the tower the-one on-one side and
l'altre d'autre (si con Diex et li venz les mena) que l'eschiele
the-other on-other so as God and the wind them led that the-ladder
de la Pelerine se joinst à la tor. Et maintenant uns Veniciens
of the Pilgrim itself joined to the tower And at-once a Venetian
et uns chevaliers de France qui avoit nom Andrius d'Urboise,
and a knight of France who had name Andrew of-Urboise
entrerent en la tor; et autre genz comence à entrer après
entered into the tower and other people begins to enter after
als, et cil de la tor se desconfisent et s'en vont.
them and those of the tower themselves rout and themselves-thence go

243 Quant ce virent li chevalier qui estoient es vissiers, si
When this saw the knights who were in-the horse-transports so
s'en issent à la terre et drecent eschieles à plain
themselves-thence come-out to the land and raise ladders at flat
del mur, et montent contremont le mur par force; et
of-the wall and mount up the wall by force and
conquistrent bien quatre des tors. Et il comencent à saillir
conquered well four of-the towers And they begin to leap
des nés et des vissiers et des galies, qui ainz ainz,
from-the ships and from-the horse-transports and from-the galleys who sooner sooner
qui mielz mielz; et peçoient bien trois des portes, et entrent
who better better and break well three of-the gates and enter
enz; et comencent les chevas à traire des vissiers; et
in and begin the horses to draw from-the horse-transports and
li chevalier comencent à monter, et chevauchent droit à
the knights begin to mount and ride straight to
la heberge l'empereor Morchuflex. Et il avoit ses batailles
the lodging (of-)the-emperor Murzuphlus And he had his battalions
rengies devant ses tentes; et cum il virent venir les
ranged before his tents and when they saw come the
chevaliers à cheval, si se desconfisent; et s'en va
knights on horse so themselves rout and himself-thence goes
l'empereres fuiant par les rues al chastel de Bouchelion.
the-emperor fleeing through the streets to-the castle of Bucoleon
244 Lor veissiez Grifons abatre, et chevaus gaaignier et
Then you-might-see Griffons cut-down and horses won and
palefroiz, et muls et mules, et autres avoirs. Là ot tant
palfreys and mules and she-mules and other goods There was so-many
des morz et des navrez qu'il n'en ere ne fins ne mesure.
of-the dead and of-the wounded that-it not-thereof was neither end nor measure
Granz partie des hals homes de Grece guenchirent vers la
Great part of-the high men of Greece turned toward the

porte de Blacquerne. Et vespres iere jà bas; et furent
gate of Blachernae And vespers was already low and were
cil de l'ost lassé de la bataille et de l'ocision. Et se
those of the-host weary from the battle and from the-slaughter And themselves
comencent à asembler en unes places granz qui estoient
begin to assemble in some places great which were
dedenz Costantinople; et pristrent conseil que il se
within Constantinople and took counsel that they themselves
herbergeroient près des murs et des tors que il avoient
would-lodge near to-the walls and to-the towers that they had
conquises; que il ne cuidoient mie que il eussent la vile
conquered for they not thought at-all that they would-have the town
vaincue en un mois, ne les forz yglises ne les forz palais, et
vanquished in a month nor the strong churches nor the strong palaces and
le pueple qui ere dedenz. Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait.
the people who was within Thus as it was devised so it-was done

The City Taken

XXVII

The city is taken on the Monday before Palm Sunday. That night Murzuphlus flees by the Golden Gate, and a fire set near Boniface's camp burns more houses than three of France's greatest cities hold. Boniface receives Bucoleon, with two empresses and a boundless treasure, and Henry of Flanders Blachernae. Villehardouin testifies that never since the creation was so much won in one city, where fewer than twenty thousand men have taken four hundred thousand.

Ensi se herbergierent devant les murs et devant les tors 245
Thus themselves lodged before the walls and before the towers
près de lors vaissials. Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres de Hennaut
near to their vessels The count Baldwin of Flanders of Hainault

se herberja es vermeilles tentes l'empereor Morchuflex
himself lodged in-the red tents (of-)the-emperor Murzuphlus
qu'il avoit laissiées tendues, et Henris ses freres devant le
which-he had left pitched and Henry his brother before the
palais de Blaquerne; Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, il et
palace of Blachernae Boniface the marquis of Montferrat he and
la soe gens, devers l'espès de la vile. Ensi fu l'oz herbergie
the his people toward the-thick of the town Thus was the-host lodged
con vos avez oï, et Costantinople prise le lundi de Pasque
as you have heard and Constantinople taken the Monday of Easter
florie. Et li cuens Loeys de Blois et de Chartain avoit langui
flowered And the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres had languished
tot l'iver d'une fievre quartaine, et ne se pot armer.
all the-winter of-a fever quartan and not himself could arm
Sachiez que mult ere granz domages à cels de l'ost; que mult
Know that very was great damage to those of the-host for very
i avoit bon chevalier de cors; et gisoit en un vissier.
in-him there-was good knight of body and he-lay in a horse-transport
246 Ensi se reposerent cil de l'ost cele nuit, qui mult
Thus themselves rested those of the-host that night who very
erent lassé. Mais l'empereres Morchuflex ne reposa mie,
were weary But the-emperor Murzuphlus not rested at-all
ainz assembla totes ses genz; et dist que il iroit les
but assembled all his people and said that he would-go the
Frans assaillir. Mais il nel fist mie ensi con il dist; ainz
Franks to-assail But he not-it did at-all so as he said but
chevaucha vers autres rues, plus loing qu'il pot de cels de
rode toward other streets more far that-he could from those of
l'ost, et vint à une porte que on apelle Porte Oire: par
the-host and came to a gate that one calls Gate Golden by

enqui s'enfui et guerpi la cité, et après lui s'enfui qui
there himself-fled and forsook the city and after him himself-fled who
fuir en pot; et de tot ce ne sorent noient cil de l'ost.
flee thence could and of all this not knew anything those of the-host
En cele nuit, devers la herberge Boniface le marchis de 247
In that night toward the lodging (of-)Boniface the marquis of
Monferrat, ne sai quex gens qui cremoient les Grez qu'i
Montferrat not I-know what people who feared the Greeks that-they
nes assaillissent, mistrent le feu entr'aus et les Grex. Et
them should-assail set the fire between-them and the Greeks And
la vile comence à esprendre et à alumer mult durement; et
the town begins to catch and to kindle very hard and
ardi tote cele nuit et l'endemain trosque al vespre. Et ce
burned all that night and the-next-day until to-the evening And this
fu li tierz feus qui fu en Constantinoble dès que li Franc
was the third fire which was in Constantinople since that the Franks
vindrent el païs; et plus ot arses maisons qu'il
came into-the country and more there-were burned houses than-there
n'ait es trois plus granz citez del roialme de France.
are in-the three most great cities of-the kingdom of France
Cele nuis trespassa, et vint li jors qui fu al mardi maitin; 248
That night passed and came the day which was at-the Tuesday morning
et lors s'armerent tuit par l'ost, et chevalier et serjant; et
and then themselves-armed all through the-host both knights and sergeants and
traist chascuns à sa bataille. Et issirent des herberges, et
drew each to his battalion And they-came-out of-the lodgings and
cuiderent plus grant bataille trover que il n'avoient fait le jor
thought more great battle to-find than they had done the day
devant; qu'il ne savoient mot que l'empereres s'en fust
before for-they not knew word that the-emperor himself-thence were
fuiz la nuit. Si ne troverent onques qui fust encontre als.
fled the night So not they-found ever who might-be against them

249 Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat chevaucha tote la marine
The marquis Boniface of Montferrat rode all the shore
droit vers Boche de lion; et quant il vint là, si li
straight toward Mouth of lion and when he came there so to-him
fu renduz, salves les vies à cels qui dedenz estoient. Là
was rendered saved the lives to those who within were There
fu trové li plus des haltes dames qui estoient fuies el
was found the most of-the high ladies who were fled into-the
chastel; que là fu trovée la suer le roi de France qui
castle for there was found the sister (of-)the king of France who
avoit esté empereris, et la suer le roi de Hongrie qui
had been empress and the sister (of-)the king of Hungary who
ravoit esté empereris, et des autres dames mult. Del
in-turn-had been empress and of-the other ladies many Of-the
tresor qui ere en cel palais ne covient mie parler; quar
treasure which was in that palace not behooves at-all to-speak for
tant en avoit que ce n'iert ne fins ne mesure.
so-much thereof there-was that this not-was neither end nor measure
250 Autressi cum cil palais fu renduz le marchis Boniface
Likewise as that palace was rendered (to-)the marquis Boniface
de Monferrat, fu renduz cil de Blaquerne à Henri frere
of Montferrat was rendered that of Blachernae to Henry brother
le conte Baudoin de Flandres, sals les cors à cels qui
(of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders save the bodies to those who
estoient dedenz. Là refu li tresors si très granz trovez;
were within There was-in-turn the treasure so very great found
que il n'en i ot mie mains que en celui de Boche de
that it not-thereof there was at-all less than in that of Mouth of
lion. Chascuns garni le chastel qui li fu renduz de sa
lion Each furnished the castle which to-him was rendered with his
gent, et fist le tresor garder; et les autres genz qui furent
people and had the treasure guarded and the other people who were

espandu parmi la vile, gaaignierent assez; et fu si granz li
spread through the town won much and was so great the
gaaienz faiz que nus ne vos en sauroit dire la fin,
gain made that anyone not to-you thereof would-know-how to-tell the end
d'or et d'argent, et de vasselement et de pierres precieuses,
of-gold and of-silver and of plate and of stones precious
et de samiz et de dras de soie, et de robes vaires et grises
and of samites and of cloths of silk and of robes vair and gray
et hermines, et toz les chiers avoirs qui onques furent
and ermines and all the dear goods which ever were
trové en terre. Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li
found on earth And well testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the
mareschaus de Champaigne, à son escient par verté, que puis
marshal of Champagne to his knowledge by truth that since
que li siecles fu estorez, ne fu tant gaainié en une vile.
that the world was established not was so-much won in one town
Chascuns prist ostel tel cum li plot, et il en i avoit 251
Each took lodging such as to-him pleased and it thereof there had
assez. Ensi se herberja l'oz des pelerins et des Veniciens;
plenty Thus itself lodged the-host of-the pilgrims and of-the Venetians
et fu granz la joie de l'onor et de la victoire que Diex
and was great the joy of the-honor and of the victory that God
lor ot donée; que cil qui avoient esté en poverté, estoient
to-them had given for those who had been in poverty were
en richece et en delit. Ensi firent la Pasque Florie et la
in riches and in delight Thus they-kept the Easter Flowered and the
Grant Pasque après, en cele honor et en cele joie que Diex
Great Easter after in that honor and in that joy that God
lor ot donée. Et bien en durent Nostre Seignor loer;
to-them had given And well thereof they-ought Our Lord to-praise
que il n'avoient mie plus de vint mil homes armez entre
for they not-had at-all more than twenty thousand men armed between

uns et altres; et par l'aïe de Dieu si avoient pris quatre
ones and others and by the-help of God so they-had taken four
cens mil homes ou plus, et en la plus fort vile qui fust
hundred thousand men or more and in the most strong town which might-be
en tot le munde (qui granz vile fu), et la mielz fermée.
in all the world which great town was and the best fortified

The Booty and the Election of Baldwin

XXVIII

The booty is gathered in three churches, but covetousness sets in and much is kept back despite excommunication; the Count of Saint-Pol hangs one of his own knights with his shield round his neck. The pilgrims pay the Venetians fifty thousand marks and share out a hundred thousand. To keep both rivals, the barons agree that whichever of Baldwin and Boniface is not elected will receive the land beyond the Arm toward Turkey and the isle of Greece, and be the emperor's man. Nivelon of Soissons announces the twelve electors' choice: Baldwin of Flanders.

252 Lors fu crié par tote l'ost, de par le marchis Boniface
Then was cried through all the-host on behalf-of the marquis Boniface
de Monferrat qui sires ere de l'ost, et de par les barons
of Montferrat who lord was of the-host and on behalf-of the barons
et de par le duc de Venise, que toz li avoirs fust
and on behalf-of the doge of Venice that all the goods should-be
aportez et assemblez, si con il ere asseuré et juré et fais
brought and assembled so as it was assured and sworn and made
escomuniemenz. Et furent nomé li leu en trois yglises;
excommunications And were named the places in three churches
et là mist-on gardes des François et des Veniciens, des
and there put-one guards of-the French and of-the Venetians of-the

plus loiaus que on pot trover. Et lors comença chascuns
most loyal that one could find And then began each
à aporter le gaieng et à metre ensamble.
to bring the gain and to put together
Li uns aporta bien, et li autres mauvaisement; que 253
The one brought well and the other badly for
covoitise, qui est racine de toz mals, ne laissa; ainz
covetousness which is root of all evils not left-off but
comencierent d'enqui en avant li covotous à retenir des
began from-there on forward the covetous to retain of-the
choses, et Nostre Sires les comença mains à amer. Ha!
things and Our Lord them began less to love Ah
Diex, con s'estoient leialment demené trosque à cel point;
God how themselves-had loyally conducted until to that point
et Dam Diex lor avoit bien mostré que de toz lor
and Lord God to-them had well shown that in all their
afaires les avoit honorez et essauciez sor tote l'autre gent.
affairs them he-had honored and exalted above all the-other people
Et maintes foiz ont domage li bon por les malvais.
And many times have damage the good for the bad
Assemblez fu li avoirs et li gaains; et sachiez que il ne fu 254
Assembled was the wealth and the gain and know that it not was
mie toz aportez avant; quar assez en i ot de ceus qui
at-all all brought forward for plenty thereof there were of those who
en retinrent, seur l'escomeniement de l'apostole. Ce qui aus
thereof retained under the-excommunication of the-pope This which to-the
moustiers fu aporté, assemblé fu et desparti des Frans et des
minsters was brought assembled was and divided by-the Franks and by-the
Veniciens par moitié, si cum la compaignie ere jurée. Et sachiez
Venetians by half so as the company was sworn And know
que li pelerin quant il orent parti, que il paierent de la lor
that the pilgrims when they had divided that they paid of the their

partie cinquante mil mars d'argent as Veniciens, et bien
part fifty thousand marks of-silver to-the Venetians and well
en departirent cent mil entr'alx ensemble par lor
thereof divided hundred thousand among-themselves together among their
gent. Et savez coment? Deus serjanz à pié contre un à cheval,
people And know-you how Two sergeants on foot against one on horse
et deus serjanz à cheval contre un chevalier. Et sachiez que
and two sergeants on horse against one knight And know that
onques hom n'en ot plus pour altesce ne pour proesce que il
ever man not-thereof had more for highness nor for prowess than he
eust, se ensi non con il fu devisé et fait, se emblé ne fu.
should-have except thus not as it was devised and done if stolen not it-was
255 Et de l'embler, cil qui en fu revoiz, sachiez que il en
And of the-stealing he who thereof was convicted know that there thereof
fu fait grant justise; et assez en i ot de penduz.
was done great justice and plenty of-them there were of hanged
Li cuens de Saint-Pol en pendi un suen chevalier l'escu
The count of Saint-Pol thereof hanged a his-own knight the-shield
al col, qui en avoit retenu; et mult i ot de cels
at-the neck who thereof had retained and many there were of those
qui en retindrent, des petiz et des granz; mais ne fu
who thereof retained of-the small and of-the great but not it-was
mie seu. Bien poez savoir que granz fu li avoirs; que
at-all known Well you-can know that great was the wealth for
sanz celui qui fu emblez et sans la partie des Veniciens,
without that which was stolen and without the part of-the Venetians
en vint bien avant quatre cens mil mars d'argent, et
thereof came well forward four hundred thousand marks of-silver and
bien dix mil chevaucheures, que unes que autres. Ainsi
well ten thousand mounts both ones and others Thus
fu departiz li gaienz de Costantinople con vos avez oï.
was divided the gain of Constantinople as you have heard

Lors assemblerent à un parlement, et requist li comuns de 256
Then they-assembled at a parliament and required the commons of
l'ost que il voloient faire empereor, si con devisé ere. Et
the-host that they wished to-make emperor so as devised it-was And
tant parlerent que il pristrent un autre jor; et à cel jor
so-much they-spoke that they took an other day and at that day
seroient eslit li doze sus qui seroit l'eslections. Et ne pooit
would-be chosen the twelve upon whom would-be the-election And not could
estre que à si grant honor con de l'empire de Costantinoble,
it-be that for so great honor as of the-empire of Constantinople
n'en i aust mult des habaanz et des envious. Mais
not-thereof there should-be many of-the covetous and of-the envious But
la granz discorde qui i fu, si fu del conte Baudoin de
the great discord which there was so was of-the count Baldwin of
Flandres et de Hennaut et del marchis Boniface de Monferat;
Flanders and of Hainault and of-the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
et de ces deus disoient tote la genz que li uns le seroit.
and of these two said all the people that the one it would-be
Et quant ce virent li preudome de l'ost que il taignoient 257
And when this saw the worthy-men of the-host that they held
à l'un et à l'autre, si parlerent ensemble et distrent:
to the-one and to the-other so they-spoke together and said
«Seignor, se on eslit l'un de ces deus halz homes, li
Lords if one elects the-one of these two high men the
autres aura tel envie qu'il enmenra tote sa gent. Et
other will-have such envy that-he will-take-away all his people And
ensi se puet pardre la terre; que altressi dut estre perdue
thus itself can lose the land for likewise ought to-be lost
cele de Jerusalem, quant il eslistrent Godefroi de Buillon,
that of Jerusalem when they elected Godfrey of Bouillon
quant la terre fu conquise. Et li cuens de Saint Gile en
when the land was conquered And the count of Saint Gilles thereof

ot si grant envie, qu'il porchaça as autres barons et
had so great envy that-he contrived with-the other barons and
à toz cels qu'il pot, qu'il se partissent de l'ost. Et
with all those that-he could that-they themselves should-part from the-host And
s'en ala assez de la gent; que cil remestrent si poi,
themselves-thence went many of the people so-that those remained so few
que se Diex nes aust sostenuz, que pardue fust la terre.
that if God not-them had sustained that lost would-be the land
Et por ce si devons garder que altressi ne nos avieigne.
And for this so we-ought to-watch that likewise not to-us may-happen
258 «Mais porchaçons coment nos les reteignons ambedeus. Que
But let-us-contrive how we them may-retain both For
celui cui Diex donra qu'il soit esliz d'aus à empereor, que
he whom God will-grant that-he be chosen of-them to emperor that
li autres en soit liez; et cil doint à l'autre tote la terre
the other thereof be glad and that-one may-give to the-other all the land
d'autre part del Braz devers la Turquie, et l'isle de Grece;
on-other side of-the Arm toward the Turkey and the-isle of Greece
et cil en sera ses hom. Ensi les porons ambedeus
and that-one thereof will-be his man Thus them we-will-be-able both
retenir.» Ensi con il fut devisé, si fu fait; et l'otroierent
to-retain Thus as it was devised so was-it done and it-granted
andui mult debonnairement. Et vint li jors del parlement,
both very graciously And came the day of-the parliament
que li parlemenz assembla; et furent eslit li doze, six
that the parliament assembled and were chosen the twelve six
d'une part, et six d'autre; et cil jurerent sor sainz que il
on-one side and six on-other and those swore on relics that they
esliroient, à bien et à bone foi, celui qui plus grant mestier
would-elect to good and in good faith him who more great need
i auroit et qui mieldres seroit à governer l'empire.
there would-have and who better would-be to govern the-empire

Ensi furent eslit li doze, et uns jorz pris de l'eslection; et 259
Thus were chosen the twelve and a day taken of the-election and
à cel jor qui pris fu, assemblerent à un riche palais, où
at that day which taken was they-assembled at a rich palace where
li dux de Venise ere à ostel, un des plus bials del monde.
the doge of Venice was at lodging one of-the most fair of-the world
Là ot si grant assemblée de gent que ce n'ere se granz
There was so great assembly of people that this not-was except great
mervoille non; que chascuns voloit veoir qui seroit esliz. Apelé
marvel not for each wished to-see who would-be chosen Called
furent li doze qui devoient faire l'eslecion, et furent mis en
were the twelve who ought to-make the-election and were put in
une mult riche chapele, qui dedenz le palais ere; et ferma
a very rich chapel which within the palace was and shut
on l'uis par dehors, si qu'il ne remest nus avec aus; et li
one the-door from outside so that-it not remained anyone with them and the
baron et li chevalier remestrent en un grant palais dehors.
barons and the knights remained in a great palace outside
Et dura li consels tant que il furent à un acort; et 260
And lasted the council so-long that they were at an accord and
chargierent lor parole, par le créant de toz les autres, à
charged their word by the consent of all the others to
Nevelon l'evesque de Soisons qui ere uns des doze. Et
Nivelon the-bishop of Soissons who was one of-the twelve And
vindrent fors là où li baron furent tuit et li dux de
they-came out there where the barons were all and the doge of
Venise. Or poez savoir qu'il furent de maint home esgardé,
Venice Now you-can know that-they were by many-a man gazed-at
por savoir quels l'eslections seroit. Et li evesques lor
for to-know what the-election would-be And the bishop to-them
mostra la parole, oiant toz, en tel maniere come il estoit
showed the word hearing all in such manner as he was

chargiez des autres, et lor dist: «Seignor, nos somes
charged by-the others and to-them said Lords we are
acordé, la Dieu merci! de faire empereor; et vos avez tuit
agreed the (of-)God mercy to make emperor and you have all
juré que celui cui nos eslirons à empereor, vos lo tendrez
sworn that him whom we shall-elect to emperor you him will-hold
por enpereor; et se nus en voloit estre encontre, que vos
for emperor and if anyone thereof wished to-be against that you
li seriez aidant. Et nos le nomerons en l'eure que Diex
to-him would-be helping And we him will-name in the-hour that God
fu nez: le conte Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut.»
was born the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault
261 Et li criz fu levez de joie el palais; si l'enportent del
And the cry was raised of joy in-the palace so him-they-carry from-the
palais; et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat l'enporte tot
palace and the marquis Boniface of Montferrat him-carries all
avant d'une part enz el mostier, et li fait tote l'onor
forward on-one side into in-the minster and to-him does all the-honor
que il pot. Ensi fu esliz li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et
that he could Thus was chosen the count Baldwin of Flanders and
de Hennaut à empereor, et li jorz pris de son coronement à
of Hainault to emperor and the day taken of his coronation at
trois semaines de Pasques. Or poez savoir que mainte riche
three weeks of Easter Now you-can know that many-a rich
robe i ot faite por le coronement; et il orent bien de quoi.
robe there was made for the coronation and they had well of what

Boniface Marries the Empress

XXIX

Boniface marries Sursac's widow, sister of the King of Hungary. Odo of Champlitte dies. Baldwin is crowned in Saint Sophia in 1204 and lodged at Bucoleon. Boniface asks for the kingdom of Salonika, near his wife's brother, in place of the promised lands, and does homage for it. Murzuphlus takes Tzurulum, and Baldwin resolves to march out and conquer the land, leaving Count Louis, the doge, Conon, and Villehardouin to guard the city. Henry goes ahead to Adrianople.

Dedenz lo terme del coronement, espousa li marchis 262
Within the term of-the coronation wedded the marquis
Boniface de Monferat l'empereris qui fu fame l'empereor
Boniface of Montferrat the-empress who was wife (of-)the-emperor
Sursac, qui ere suer le roi de Hungrie. Et en cel termine
Sursac who was sister (of-)the king of Hungary And in that term
si morut uns des plus hals barons de l'ost, qui avoit nom
so died one of-the most high barons of the-host who had name
Oedes li Champenois de Chanlite; et fu mult plainz et
Odo the Champenois of Champlitte and was much lamented and
plorez de Guillaume son frere et de ses autres amis. Et
wept by William his brother and by his other friends And
fu enterrez al mostier des Apostres, à grant honor.
he-was buried at-the minster of-the Apostles with great honor
Li termes del coronement aprocha; et fu coronez à grant 263
The term of-the coronation drew-near and was crowned with great
joie et à grant honor l'empereres Baudoins al mostier
joy and with great honor the-emperor Baldwin at-the minster
Sainte-Sophie, en l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus
Saint-Sophia in the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two
cens anz et quatre. De la joie ne de la feste ne convient
hundred years and four Of the joy nor of the feast not behooves

mie à parler, que tant en fisent li baron et li chevalier
at-all to speak for so-much thereof made the barons and the knights
cum il plus porent; et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat,
as they most could and the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
et li cuens Loeys de Blois et de Chartain l'onorerent cum
and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres him-honored as
lor seignor. Après la grant joie del coronement, en fu
their lord After the great joy of-the coronation thence he-was
menez à grant feste et à grant procession el riche
led with great feast and with great procession into-the rich
palais de Bochelyon, que onques plus riches ne fu veuz. Et
palace of Bucoleon for ever more rich not was seen And
quant la feste fu passée, si parla li empereres de ses afaires.
when the feast was passed so spoke the emperor of his affairs
264 Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat li resquit ses convenances:
Boniface the marquis of Montferrat of-him required his covenants
que il li rendist, si con il li devoit doner, la terre
that he to-him should-render so as he to-him ought to-give the land
d'oltre le Bras devers la Turquie, et l'isle de Grece. Et
of-beyond the Arm toward the Turkey and the-isle of Greece And
l'empereres li conut bien que il li devoit faire, et
the-emperor to-him acknowledged well that he to-him ought to-do and
que il le li feroit mult volentiers. Et quant ce vit li
that he it to-him would-do very willingly And when this saw the
marchis de Monferrat que l'empereres li voloit atendre ses
marquis of Montferrat that the-emperor to-him wished to-keep his
convenances si debonairement, si le requist que, en eschange
covenants so graciously so him he-besought that in exchange
de cele terre, li donast le roialme de Salonique, porce
of that land to-him he-should-give the kingdom of Salonika because
qu'il ere devers le roi de Hungrie, cui seror il avoit à fame.
that-it was toward the king of Hungary whose sister he had to wife

Assez en fu parlé en maintes manieres; mais totes voies 265
Much thereof was spoken in many manners but all the-same
fu la chose menée à tant que li empereres li otroia, et
was the thing brought to so-far that the emperor to-him granted and
cil en fist homage. Et fu mult granz joie par
that-one thereof made homage And there-was very great joy through
tot l'ost, porce que li marchis ere uns des plus proissiez
all the-host because that the marquis was one of-the most esteemed
chevaliers dou monde, et des plus amez des chevaliers;
knights of-the world and of-the most loved of-the knights
que nus plus largement ne lor donoit. Ensi fu remés
for anyone more largely not to-them gave Thus was remained
en la terre li marchis de Monferrat con vos avez oï.
in the land the marquis of Montferrat as you have heard
Li empereres Morchuflés n'ere mie eslongniez encor de 266
The emperor Murzuphlus not-was at-all gone-far yet from
Costantinoble quatre jornées; et si en avoit amené avec
Constantinople four days and so thence had led with
lui l'empereris qui ere fame l'emperor Alexi, qui devant
him the-empress who was wife (of-)the-emperor Alexius who before
s'en ere fuis, et sa file. Et cil empereres Alexis ert
himself-thence was fled and his daughter And that emperor Alexius was
à une cité que on apele Messinople, à tote la soe gent,
at a city that one calls Mosynopolis with all the his people
et tenoit encore grant partie de la terre. Et lors se
and held still great part of the land And then themselves
departirent li halt home de Grece, et granz partie en
departed the high men of Greece and great part thence
passa oltre le Braz par devers la Turquie; et chascuns saisi
crossed over the Arm on toward the Turkey and each seized

de la terre endroit soi tant con il pot, et par les
of the land near himself as-much as he could and through the
autres contrées de l'empire autresi, chascuns vers son païs.
other countries of the-empire likewise each toward his country
267 Et l'empereres Morchuflés ne tarda gaires qu'il prist une
And the-emperor Murzuphlus not delayed much that-he took a
cité qui ere à la merci de monseignor l'empereor Baudoin
city which was to the mercy of my-lord the-emperor Baldwin
venue, que on apele le Churlot; si la prist et roba,
come which one calls the Tzurulum so it took and robbed
et i prist quanqu'il i trova. Quant la novele vint à
and there took whatever-he there found When the news came to
l'empereor Baudoin, si prist conseil as barons et al
the-emperor Baldwin so he-took counsel with-the barons and with-the
duc de Venise. Li consels si fu tels qu'il s'accorderent
doge of Venice The counsel so was such that-they themselves-agreed
qu'il issist fors à tote s'ost, por conquerre la terre, et
that-he should-go out with all his-host for to-conquer the land and
laissast Costantinoble garnie (qui ere novelement conquise
should-leave Constantinople garrisoned which was newly conquered
et ere poplée de Grex) que ele fust seure.
and was peopled with Greeks that it might-be secure
268 Ensi fu li consels acordez, et l'os semoute, et devisé cil
Thus was the counsel agreed and the-host summoned and devised those
qui demorroient en Constantinople, et liquel iroient en l'ost
who would-remain in Constantinople and which would-go in the-host
avec l'empereor Baudoin. En Constantinople remest li cuens
with the-emperor Baldwin In Constantinople remained the count
Loeys de Blois et de Chartein, qui malades ere et n'ere mie
Louis of Blois and of Chartres who sick was and not-was at-all
encor gariz, et li dux de Venise. Et Coenes de Betune remest
yet cured and the doge of Venice And Conon of Béthune remained

el palais de Blaquerne et de Bochelion por garder la vile; et
in-the palace of Blachernae and of Bucoleon for to-guard the town and
Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, et Miles li Braibanz
Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon
de Provins, et Manessiers de l'Isle, à totes lor gens. Et
of Provins and Manasses of the-Isle with all their people And
li tuit autre s'atornerent por aler en l'ost avec l'empereor.
the all others themselves-prepared for to-go in the-host with the-emperor
Ançois que l'empereres Baudoins partist de Costantinoble, 269
Before that the-emperor Baldwin should-depart from Constantinople
s'en parti Henris ses freres, par son comandement,
himself-thence departed Henry his brother by his command
bien atot cent chevaliers de mult bone gent; et chevaucha
well with hundred knights of very good people and rode
de cité en cité; et en chascune vile là où il venoit,
from city to city and in each town there where he came
les genz fasoient la fealté l'empereor. Ensi ala trosque
the people did the fealty (to-)the-emperor Thus he-went as-far
à Andrenople, qui ere mult bone citez et riche; et cil
to Adrianople which was very good city and rich and those
de la cité le reçurent mult volentiers, et firent fealté
of the city him received very willingly and did fealty
l'empereor. Lors se herbeja en la vile, il et sa gens,
(to-)the-emperor Then himself lodged in the town he and his people
et enqui sejorna tant que l'empereres Baudoins vint.
and there sojourned until that the-emperor Baldwin came

Murzuphlus Blinded

xxx

Murzuphlus flees to Mosynopolis and allies himself with the elder Alexius, who gives him his daughter, then invites him to dine and bathe and has him blinded, and his army scatters. Baldwin rides to Adrianople, leaves Eustace of Saubruic there against Johanitsa, and goes on to Mosynopolis, which surrenders as Alexius flees. Boniface arrives with his empress and asks leave to take Salonika alone as Baldwin's man, and then to march with him against Johanitsa.

L'enpereres Morchuflés, con il oï qu'il venoient issi, si nes
The-emperor Murzuphlus when he heard that-they came thus so not-them
ossa atendre, ainz fui toz jorz deus jornées ou trois devant.
dared await but fled all days two days or three before
Et ensi s'en ala trosque vers Messinople, o l'enperere
And thus himself-thence went as-far toward Mosynopolis where the-emperor
Alexis ere; et li envoia ses messages, et li manda que
Alexius was and to-him sent his envoys and to-him sent-word that
il li aideroit, et feroit tot son comandement. Et l'empereres
he him would-help and would-do all his command And the-emperor
Alexis respondi que bien fust-il venuz come ses fils, que il voloit
Alexius answered that well were-he come as his son for he wished
que il aust sa file à fame, et feroit de lui son fil. Ensi
that he should-have his daughter to wife and would-make of him his son Thus
se herberja l'empereres Morchuflex devant Messinople, et
himself lodged the-emperor Murzuphlus before Mosynopolis and
tendi ses trés et ses paveillons; et cil fu herbergiez dedenz
pitched his tents and his pavilions and that-one was lodged within
la cité. Et lors parlerent ensemble, et li dona sa fille; et
the city And then they-spoke together and to-him he-gave his daughter and
s'alierent ensemble, et distrent que il seroient tot une chose.
themselves-allied together and said that they would-be all one thing

Ensi sejornerent, ne sai quanz jorz, cil en l'ost et cil en 271
Thus sojourned not I-know how-many days those in the-host and those in
la vile; et lors semonst l'emperere Alexis l'empereor Morchuflés
the town and then summoned the-emperor Alexius the-emperor Murzuphlus
que il venist à lui mengier, et iroient ensemble as bainz.
that he should-come to him to-eat and they-would-go together to-the baths
Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait. L'empereres Morchuflés
Thus as it was devised so was-it done The-emperor Murzuphlus
i vint privéement et à poi de gent; et con il fu dedenz
there came privately and with few of people and when he was within
sa maison, l'empereres Alexis l'apela en une chambre, et lo
his house the-emperor Alexius him-called into a chamber and him
fist jeter à terre, et traire les oels de la teste, en tel traïson
had cast to earth and drawn the eyes from the head in such treason
con vos avez oï. Or oïez se ceste genz devoient terre tenir
as you have heard Now hear if these people ought land to-hold
ou perdre, qui si granz crualtez faisoient li un des autres.
or to-lose who so great cruelties did the ones to-the others
Et quant ce oïrent cil de l'ost l'empereor Morchuflés,
And when this heard those of the-host (of-)the-emperor Murzuphlus
si se desconfissent et tornent en fuie, li un çà et li
so themselves rout and turn in flight the ones here and the
altre là; et de tels i ot qui alerent à l'empereor Alexi,
others there and of such there were who went to the-emperor Alexius
et li obéirent comme à seignor, et remestrent entor lui.
and to-him obeyed as to lord and remained about him
Lors s'esmut l'empereres Baudoins à tote s'ost de 272
Then himself-set-out the-emperor Baldwin with all his-host from
Costantinoble; et chevaucha tant que il vint à Andrenople.
Constantinople and rode so-far that he came to Adrianople
Enqui trova Henri son frere, et les autres genz qui avec
There he-found Henry his brother and the other people who with

lui furent. Totes les genz parmi là où il passa vindrent
him were All the people through there where he passed came
à lui, à sa merci et à son comandement. Et lors lor
to him to his mercy and to his command And then to-them
vint la novele que l'empereres Alexis avoit traiz les oels à
came the news that the-emperor Alexius had drawn the eyes from
l'empereor Morchuflés. Mult en fu granz parole entr'aus;
the-emperor Murzuphlus Much thereof was great talk among-them
et bien distrent que il n'avoient droit en tere tenir, qui
and well they-said that they not-had right in land to-hold who
si desloialment traïssoient li uns l'autre.
so disloyally betrayed the ones the-other

273 Lors fu li consels l'empereor Baudoin qu'il chevaucheroit
Then was the counsel (of-)the-emperor Baldwin that-he would-ride
droit à Messinople, où l'empereres Alexis ere. Et li Gré
straight to Mosynopolis where the-emperor Alexius was And the Greeks
d'Andrenople li requistrent cum à seignor qu'il lor
of-Adrianople of-him besought as of lord that-he to-them
laissast la ville garnie, por Johan, le roi de Blaquie et
should-leave the town garrisoned for John the king of Wallachia and
de Bougrie, qui guerre lor fassoit sovent. Et l'empereres
of Bulgaria who war on-them made often And the-emperor
Baudoins i lassa Eustaice de Saubruic, qui ere uns chevaliers
Baldwin there left Eustace of Saubruic who was a knight
de Flandres mult preuz et mult vaillanz, atot quarante
of Flanders very worthy and very valiant with forty
chevaliers de mult bone gent, et cent serjanz à cheval.
knights of very good people and hundred sergeants on horse

274 Ensi s'en parti l'enperere Baudoins d'Andrenople; et
Thus himself-thence departed the-emperor Baldwin from-Adrianople and
chevaucha vers Messinople, où il cuida l'empereor Alexi
rode toward Mosynopolis where he thought the-emperor Alexius

trover. Totes les terres par là où il passa vindrent à son
to-find All the lands through there where he passed came to his
comandement et à sa merci; et quant ce vit l'empereres
command and to his mercy and when this saw the-emperor
Alexis, si vuida Messinople et s'enfui. Et l'empereres Baudoins
Alexius so emptied Mosynopolis and himself-fled And the-emperor Baldwin
chevalcha tant que il vint devant Messinople. Et cil de la vile
rode so-far that he came before Mosynopolis And those of the town
vont encontre lui, et li rendent la vile à son comandement.
go to-meet him and to-him render the town to his command
Et lors dist l'empereres Baudoins que il sejorneroit por atendre 275
And then said the-emperor Baldwin that he would-sojourn for to-await
Boniface le marchis de Monferrat, qui n'ere mie encor venuz en
Boniface the marquis of Montferrat who not-was at-all yet come in
l'ost, porce que il ne pot mie si tost venir con l'emperere; qu'il
the-host because that he not could at-all so soon come as the-emperor for-he
en amenoit avec lui l'empereris sa fame. Et chevaucha tant que
thence led with him the-empress his wife And he-rode so-far that
il vint vers Messinople, sor le flum; et enqui se herberja, et
he came toward Mosynopolis on the river and there himself lodged and
fist tendre ses trés et ses paveillons. Et l'endemain ala parler
had pitched his tents and his pavilions And the-next-day he-went to-speak
à l'empereor Baldoin et lui veoir, et li requist sa convenance.
to the-emperor Baldwin and him to-see and of-him required his covenant
«Sire, fait il, noveles me sunt venues de Salenique, que la 276
Lord says he news to-me are come from Salonika that the
gens del païs me mandent que il me recevront volentiers
people of-the country to-me send-word that they me will-receive willingly
à seignor. Et je en sui vostre hom, et la tieng de vos:
for lord And I thereof am your man and it hold of you
si vos vuel proier que voz me laissiez aler; et quant je
so you I-wish to-pray that you me let go and when I

serai saisiz de ma terre et de ma cité, je vos amenrai les
shall-be seized of my land and of my city I to-you will-bring the
viandes encontre vos, et venrai appareilliez de faire vostre
victuals to-meet you and will-come prepared to do your
comandement. Et ne me destruiez mie ma terre; et alomes,
command And not me destroy at-all my land and let-us-go
se vostre plaisirs est, sor Johan, qui est rois de Blaquie
if your pleasure is upon John who is king of Wallachia
et de Bogrie, qui tient grant partie de la terre à tort.»
and of Bulgaria who holds great part of the land with wrong

The Quarrel of Baldwin and Boniface

XXXI

Baldwin insists on going to Salonika, and Boniface parts from him in anger, taking James of Avesnes and most of the Germans back to Demotika, which a Greek surrenders to him; through his wife the empress, the Greeks of the country around begin to come over to him. Christopolis, La Blanche, Serres, and Salonika submit to Baldwin, while Boniface besieges Eustace of Saubruic in Adrianople. From Constantinople the doge and Count Louis send Villehardouin, who persuades Boniface to submit the quarrel to arbitration, and the siege is raised.

277 Ne sai par cui conseil l'empereres respondi qu'il voloit aler
Not I-know by whose counsel the-emperor answered that-he wished to-go
totes voies vers Salenique, et feroit ses autres afaires en la
all the-same toward Salonika and would-do his other affairs in the
terre. «Sire, fait Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, je te proi,
land Lord says Boniface the marquis of Montferrat I thee pray
dès que je puis ma terre conquerre sanz toi, que tu n'i
since that I can my land conquer without thee that thou not-there
entres; et se tu i entres, ne me semble mie que tu le faces
enter and if thou there enter not to-me seems at-all that thou it do

por mon bien. Et sachiez vos de voir, je n'irai mie avec vos,
for my good And know you of truth I not-will-go at-all with you
ainz me partirai de vos.» Et l'empereres Baudoins respondi
but myself will-part from you And the-emperor Baldwin answered
que il ne lairoit mie por ce qui il n'i alast tote voie.
that he not would-leave at-all for this that he there should-go all the-same
Halas con malvais conseil orent et li uns et li autres, et cum 278
Alas what bad counsel had both the one and the other and how
firent grant pechié cil qui ceste mellée fisent! quar, se Diex
did great sin those who this brawl made for if God
n'en preist pitié, con aussent perdue tote la conqueste
not-thereof had-taken pity how they-would-have lost all the conquest
que il avoient faite, et la crestienté mise en aventure de perir!
that they had made and the Christendom put in hazard to perish
Ensi partirent par mal l'empereres Baudoins de Constantinople
Thus parted by ill the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople
et Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, et par malvais conseil.
and Boniface the marquis of Montferrat and by bad counsel
L'empereres Baudoins chevaucha vers Salenique, si con il ot 279
The-emperor Baldwin rode toward Salonika so as he had
enpris, à totes ses gens et à tote sa force. Et Bonifaces
undertaken with all his people and with all his force And Boniface
li marchis de Monferrat retorna arriere; que il ot une grant
the marquis of Montferrat turned back for he had a great
partie de bone gent avec lui. Avec lui s'en torna Jaques
part of good people with him With him himself-thence turned James
d'Avesnes, Guillaumes de Chanlite, Hues de Colemi, li cuens
of-Avesnes William of Champlitte Hugh of Colemi the count
Bertous de Chessenele-en-Bouche, et la graindre partie de toz
Berthold of Katzenelnbogen and the greater part of all
cels de l'empire d'Alemaigne, qui se tenoient al marchis.
those of the-empire of-Germany who themselves held to-the marquis

Ensi chevaucha li marchis arriere trosque à un chastel qui
Thus rode the marquis back as-far to a castle which
li Dimos ere apelez, mult bel, et mult fort, et mult riche;
the Demotika was called very fair and very strong and very rich
et cil li fu renduz par un Greu de la vile; et cum il
and it to-him was rendered by a Greek of the town and when he
fu dedenz, si le garni. Et lors comencent li Grieu à lui
was within so it he-garrisoned And then begin the Greeks to him
à torner par l'acointement de l'empereriz, et de tote la terre
to turn by the-acquaintance of the-empress and of all the land
de là entor, à une jornée ou à deus, venir à sa merci.
of there around at a day or at two to-come to his mercy
280 L'empereres Baudoins chevaucha adès droit à Salenique, et
The-emperor Baldwin rode ever straight to Salonika and
vint à un chastel qui ot à nom Cristople, qui ere uns des
came to a castle which had as name Christopolis which was one of-the
plus forz del munde; et li fu renduz, et li firent
most strong of-the world and to-him was rendered and to-him did
fealté cil de la vile. Et après vint à un altre que on apeloit
fealty those of the town And after he-came to an other that one called
la Blanche, qui ere mult fors, et mult riches; et li fu
the White which was very strong and very rich and to-him was
renduz altressi, et li firent fealté. Et d'enqui chevaucha
rendered likewise and to-him did fealty And from-there he-rode
à la Serre, qui ere une citez forz et riche; et vint à
to the Serres which was a city strong and rich and came to
son comandement et à sa volanté, et li firent fealté. Et
his command and to his will and to-him did fealty And
d'enqui chevaucha à Salenique, et se herbeja devant la
from-there he-rode to Salonika and himself lodged before the
ville, et i fu par trois jors. Et cil li rendirent la vile
town and there was for three days And those to-him rendered the town

(qui ere une des meillors et des plus riches de la crestienté
which was one of-the best and of-the most rich of the Christendom
à cel jor), par tel convent que il les tendroit as us et
at that day by such covenant that he them would-hold at-the usages and
as costumes que li empereeur Grieu les avoient tenuz.
at-the customs that the emperors Greek them had held
Endementiers que l'empereres Baudoins ere vers Salenique, 281
While that the-emperor Baldwin was toward Salonika
et la terre venoit à son plaisir et à son comandement, li
and the land came at his pleasure and at his command the
marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, à tote la soe gent et la
marquis Boniface of Montferrat with all the his people and the
grant plenté des Grex qui à lui se tenoient, chevaucha
great plenty of-the Greeks who to him themselves held rode
devant Andrenople, et l'asist; et tendi ses trés et ses
before Adrianople and it-besieged and pitched his tents and his
paveillons entor. Et Eustaiches de Saubruit fu dedenz, et
pavilions around And Eustace of Saubruic was within and
les genz que l'empereres i avoit laissié; et monterent as
the people that the-emperor there had left and they-mounted to-the
murs et as tors, et s'atornerent d'els defendre.
walls and to-the towers and themselves-prepared themselves to-defend
Et lors prist Eustaices de Saubruit deus messaiges, et les 282
And then took Eustace of Saubruic two envoys and them
envoia, par jor et par nuit, en Constantinople. Et vindrent al
sent by day and by night to Constantinople And they-came to-the
duc de Venise et al conte Loeys, et à cels qui estoient dedenz
doge of Venice and to-the count Louis and to those who were within
la vile remés de par l'empereor Baudoin; et lor distrent
the town remained on behalf-of the-emperor Baldwin and to-them said
qu'Eustaices de Saubruic lor mandoit que l'empereres et li
that-Eustace of Saubruic to-them sent-word that the-emperor and the

marchis estoient mellé ensemble; et li marchis ere saisiz del
marquis were embroiled together and the marquis was seized of-the
Dimot, qui ere uns des plus fors chastiaus de Romenie et uns
Demotika which was one of-the most strong castles of Romania and one
des plus riches, et els avoit asis à Andrenople. Et quant il
of-the most rich and them had besieged in Adrianople And when they
oïrent ce, s'en furent mult irié; que lors cuiderent-il
heard this themselves-thereof were very angered for then thought-they
bien que tote la conqueste que il avoient faite fust perdue.
well that all the conquest that they had made would-be lost
283 Lors assemblerent el palais de Blaquerne li dux de Venise
Then assembled in-the palace of Blachernae the doge of Venice
et li cuens Loeys de Bloys et de Chartein, et li autre
and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the other
baron qui estoient en Costantinople; et furent mult destroit
barons who were in Constantinople and were very distressed
et mult irié, et mult se plainstrent de cels qui avoient
and very angered and much themselves complained of those who had
faite la mellée entre l'empereor et le marchis. Par la proiere
made the brawl between the-emperor and the marquis By the prayer
le duc de Venise et del conte Loeys, fu requis Joffrois
(of-)the doge of Venice and of-the count Louis was requested Geoffrey
de Vile-Hardoin, li mareschaus de Champaigne, qu'il alast
of Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne that-he should-go
al siege d'Andrenople, et que il meist conseil à cele
to-the siege of-Adrianople and that he should-put counsel to that
guerre, se il pooit, porce qu'il ere bien del marchis; et
war if he could because that-he was well with-the marquis and
cuiderent qu'i aust plus grant pooir que nus autres hom. Et
they-thought that-he had more great power than any other man And
cil, por lor proiere et por lor besoing, dist qu'il iroit
that-one for their prayer and for their need said that-he would-go

mult volentiers; et mena avec lui Manassier de l'Isle, qui
very willingly and led with him Manasses of the-Isle who
ere uns des bons chevaliers de l'ost et des plus honorez.
was one of-the good knights of the-host and of-the most honored
Ensi se partirent de Costantinople, et chevauchierent par 284
Thus themselves departed from Constantinople and rode by
lor jornées tant que il vindrent à Andrenople, où li sieges
their day-stages so-far that they came to Adrianople where the siege
ere. Et quant li marchis l'oï, si issi de l'ost et ala
was And when the marquis it-heard so came-out of the-host and went
encontre als. Avec lui en ala Jaques d'Avesnes, et Guillaumes
to-meet them With him thence went James of-Avesnes and William
de Chanlite, et Hues de Colemi, et Othes de la Roche, qui
of Champlitte and Hugh of Colemi and Otto of the Roche who
plus alt estoient del conseil del marchis. Et quant il vit
most high were of-the council of-the marquis And when he saw
les messaiges, si les honora mult et fist mult bel semblant.
the envoys so them honored much and made very fair semblance
Joffrois li mareschaus, qui mult ere bien de lui, li coisona 285
Geoffrey the marshal who very was well with him him reproached
mult durement: coment ne en quel guise il avoit prise la
very hard how or in what guise he had taken the
terre l'empereor ne assigie sa gent dedenz Andrenople, tant
land (of-)the-emperor nor besieged his people within Adrianople before
que il l'eust fait assavoir à cels de Costantinoble, qui bien
that he it-had made known to those of Constantinople who well
li feissent adrecier se li empereres li eust nul tort
to-him would-have-had redressed if the emperor to-him had any wrong
fait. Et li marchis se descolpa mult, et dist que por
done And the marquis himself excused much and said that for
le tort que l'empereres li avoit fait, avoit-il issi esploitié.
the wrong that the-emperor to-him had done had-he thus acted

286 Tant travailla Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, à l'aïe
So-much labored Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne with the-help
de Dieu et des barons qui estoient del conseil le marchis,
of God and of-the barons who were of-the council (of-)the marquis
de cui il ere mult amez, que li marchis li asseura que il
by whom he was much loved that the marquis to-him assured that he
s'en metroit el duc de Venise, et el conte Loeys de
himself-thereof would-put on-the doge of Venice and on-the count Louis of
Blois et de Chartein, et en Coenon de Betune, et en Joffroi de
Blois and of Chartres and on Conon of Béthune and on Geoffrey of
Vile-Hardoin le mareschal, qui bien savoient la convenance d'aus
Villehardouin the marshal who well knew the covenant of-them
deus. Ensi fu la trive prise de cels de l'ost et de cels de la cité.
two Thus was the truce taken by those of the-host and by those of the city
287 Et sachiez que mult fu volentiers veuz Joffrois li mareschaus,
And know that very was willingly seen Geoffrey the marshal
au retourner, et Maneisiers de l'Isle, de cels de l'ost et de
at-the returning and Manasses of the-Isle by those of the-host and by
cels de la cité, qui mult voloient la pais d'ambedeus parz. Et
those of the city who much wished the peace on-both sides And
ausi lié cum li Franc en furent, en furent li Grieu dolant;
as glad as the Franks thereof were thereof were the Greeks sorrowful
qu'il volsissent mult volentiers la guerre et la mellée. Ensi
for-they would-have-wished very willingly the war and the brawl Thus
fu dessiegie Andrenople; et torna s'en li marchis arriere
was unbesieged Adrianople and turned himself-thence the marquis back
al Dimot à tote sa gent, là où l'empereris sa fame ere.
to-the Demotika with all his people there where the-empress his wife was

The Barons' Messages

XXXII

The barons in Constantinople write asking Baldwin to accept arbitration as Boniface has. Baldwin, hurrying to relieve Adrianople, loses his chancellor John of Noyon, Peter of Amiens, and forty knights to sickness. Bègue of Fransures delivers the barons' message that they will suffer no war. His council calls it an outrage, but Baldwin, unwilling to lose the doge and Louis, promises only to come to Constantinople without harming Boniface, and is received there as lord.

Li message s'en revindrent en Constantinoble, et 288
The envoys themselves-thence came-back into Constantinople and
conterent les noveles si con il avoient esploitié. Mult orent
told the news so as they had fared Very had
grant joie li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys de Blois et
great joy the doge of Venice and the count Louis of Blois and
tuit li autre, de ce qu'il s'ere mis sor als de la pais. Lors
all the others of this that-he himself-was put on them for the peace Then
pristrent bons messages, et escristrent letres, et envoierent
they-took good envoys and wrote letters and sent
à l'empereor Baudoin; et li manderent que li marchis
to the-emperor Baldwin and to-him sent-word that the marquis
s'ere mis sor als, et bien l'avoit asseuré; et il s'i
himself-was put on them and well it-had assured and he himself-thereto
devoit encor mielz metre. Si li prioient qu'il le feist (que
ought still better to-put So him they-prayed that-he it should-do for
il ne souffriroient mie la guerre en nule fin), et qu'il
they not would-suffer at-all the war in any end and that-he
asseurast ce que il diroient, alsi con li marchis avoit fait.
should-assure this that they would-say just as the marquis had done

289 Endementres que ce fu, l'empereres Baudoins ot fait ses afaires
While that this was the-emperor Baldwin had done his affairs
vers Salenique; si s'en parti et la laissa garnie de sa
toward Salonika so himself-thence departed and it left garrisoned with his
gent, et il laissa chevetaine Regnier de Monz, qui ere mult
people and he left captain Renier of Mons who was very
preuz et vaillanz. Et les nouvelles li furent venues que li
worthy and valiant And the news to-him were come that the
marchis avoit pris le Dimot, et que il ere dedenz, et que il
marquis had taken the Demotika and that he was within and that he
avoit grant partie de la terre entor conquise, et assise sa gent
had great part of the land around conquered and besieged his people
dedens Andrenople. Mult fu iriez l'empereres Baudoins quant la
within Adrianople Very was angered the-emperor Baldwin when the
novele li fu venue, et mult s'enhasti que il iroit dessegier
news to-him was come and much himself-hastened that he would-go to-unbesiege
Andrenople, et feroit tot le mal qu'il porroit al marchis.
Adrianople and would-do all the ill that-he could to-the marquis
Ha Diex! quels domages dut estre par cele discorde; que se
Ah God what damage ought to-be by that discord for if
Diex n'i eust mis conseil, destruite fust la crestientez.
God not-there had put counsel destroyed would-be the Christendom
290 Ensi s'en repaira l'empereres Baudoins par ses jornées.
Thus himself-thence returned the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages
Et une mesaventure lor fu avenue devant Salenique mult
And a mischance to-them was happened before Salonika very
granz; que d'enfermeté furent acolchié mult de sa gent.
great for of-sickness were brought-to-bed many of his people
Assez en remanoit par les chastials où l'empereres
Plenty thereof remained through the castles where the-emperor
passoit, qui ne pooient mais venir; et assez en aportoit-on
passed who not could more come and plenty thereof carried-one

en littieres qui à grant mesaise venoient; et mult en
in litters who in great discomfort came and many thereof
ot de mors à la Serre. Lors fu morz maistre Johans de
there-were of dead at the Serres Then was dead master John of
Noion à la Serre, qui ere chanceliers l'empereor Baudoin; et
Noyon at the Serres who was chancellor (of-)the-emperor Baldwin and
mult fu bons clers et mult sages, et mult avoit conforté
very was-he good clerk and very wise and much had comforted
l'ost par la parole de Dieu, qu'il savoit mult bien dire. Et
the-host by the word of God which-he knew-how very well to-say And
sachiez que mult en furent li prodome de l'ost desconforté.
know that much thereof were the worthy-men of the-host discomforted
Ne tarda gaires après que il lor avint une mult granz 291
Not delayed much after that it to-them happened a very great
mesaventure; que morz fu Pierres d'Amiens, qui mult ere
mischance that dead was Peter of-Amiens who very was
riches et halz hom, et bons chevaliers et proz; et s'en
rich and high man and good knight and valiant and himself-thereof
fist mult grant duel li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, cui cosins
made very great mourning the count Hugh of Saint-Pol whose cousin
germains il ere; et mult en pesa à toz cels de l'ost. Lors
german he was and much thereof weighed on all those of the-host Then
fu après Girars de Manchicort morz, qui ere mult proisiez
was after Gerard of Mancicourt dead who was very esteemed
chevaliers; et Giles d'Aunoi, et mult de bone gent. En cele
knight and Giles of-Aunoy and many of good people On that
voie demourerent quarante chevalier, dont l'oz fu mult afeblie.
road remained forty knights whereof the-host was much weakened
Tant chevaucha l'empereres Baudoins par ses jornées qu'il 292
So-far rode the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages that-he
encontra les messages qui venoient encontre lui, que cil
met the envoys who came to-meet him whom those

de Costantinoble li envéoient. Li uns des messages fu
of Constantinople to-him sent The one of-the envoys was
uns chevaliers de la terre le conte Loeys de Blois et
a knight of the land (of-)the count Louis of Blois and
ses hom liges; et fu apelez Beghes de Fransures, sages et
his man liege and was called Bègue of Fransures wise and
enparlez; et dist le message son seignor et les autres
well-spoken and said the message (of-)his lord and (of-)the other
barons mult vivement, et dist:
barons very vividly and said
293 «Sire, li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys mis sires, et li
Lord the doge of Venice and the count Louis my lord and the
autre baron qui sunt dedenz Constantinoble, vos mandent
other barons who are within Constantinople to-you send
salut comme à lor seignor; et se plaignent à Dieu et à
greeting as to their lord and themselves complain to God and to
vos de cels qui ont mise la mellée entre vos et le marchis de
you of those who have put the brawl between you and the marquis of
Monferrat; que par poi qu'il n'ont destruite la crestienté, et
Montferrat for by little that-they have destroyed the Christendom and
vos feistes mult mal quant vos les en créistes. Or si vos
you did very ill when you them thereof believed Now so to-you
mandent que li marchis s'est mis sor als del contenz
they-send-word that the marquis himself-is put on them of-the dispute
qui est entre vos et lui; si vos proient comme à seignor
which is between you and him so you they-pray as to lord
que vos vos i metez alsi, et que vos l'aseurez à tenir.
that you yourself thereto put likewise and that you it-assure to hold
Et sachiez que il ne souffriroient la guerre en nule fin.»
And know that they not would-suffer the war in any end

L'empereres Baudoins ala, si prist son conseil, et dist qu'il 294
The-emperor Baldwin went so took his counsel and said that-he
lor en respondroit. Mult i ot de cels del conseil de
to-them thereof would-answer Many there were of those of-the council of
l'empereor, qui avoient aidié la mellée à faire, qui tindrent
the-emperor who had helped the brawl to make who held
à grant oltrage le mandement que cil de Costantinoble
for great outrage the message that those of Constantinople
li avoient fait, et li distrent: «Sire, vos oez que il
to-him had made and to-him said Lord you hear that they
vos mandent, que il ne souffriroient mie que vos vos
to-you send-word that they not would-suffer at-all that you yourself
vengissiez de vostre anemi. Il est avis que se vos ne faisiez
should-avenge on your enemy It is opinion that if you not did
ce qu'il vos mandent, que il seroient encontre vos.»
this that-they to-you send-word that they would-be against you
Assez i ot grosses paroles dites; mais la fins del conseil 295
Plenty there were gross words said but the end of-the council
si fu tels que l'empereres ne voloit mie perdre le duc de
so was such that the-emperor not wished at-all to-lose the doge of
Venise, ne le conte Loeys, ne les autres qui erent dedenz
Venice nor the count Louis nor the others who were within
Costantinoble; et respondi al message: «Je n'aseurerai que je
Constantinople and answered to-the envoy I not-will-assure that I
me mete sor als; mais je m'en irai en Constantinoble
myself may-put on them but I myself-thence will-go into Constantinople
sanz forfaire al marchis noient.» Ensi s'en vint
without doing-wrong to-the marquis anything Thus himself-thence came
l'empereres Baudoins par ses jornées tant qu'il vint en
the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages so-far that-he came into

Constantinoble; et li baron et les autres gens alerent
Constantinople and the barons and the other people went
encontre lui, et le reçurent à grant honor come lor seignor.
to-meet him and him received with great honor as their lord

Reconciliation and the Division of the Lands

XXXIII

Baldwin sees he was ill advised and submits. Villehardouin and others bring Boniface to Constantinople, where he receives Salonika and gives Demotika into Villehardouin's keeping until he holds it. Much of the land submits, but Leo Sgouros of Corinth and Nauplia wars on him, and Michael deserts him for Arta. The lands are divided, and the new lords' greed turns the Greeks against them. Baldwin grants Nicaea to Count Louis and Philippopolis to Renier of Trith, and Louis's knights cross to the Espigal and begin the war.

296 Dedenz lo quart jor, conut l'empereres clerement que il avoit
Within the fourth day knew the-emperor clearly that he had
esté mal conseilliez de mesler soi al marchis; et lors
been ill counseled to embroil himself with-the marquis and then
parla à lui li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys, et distrent:
spoke to him the doge of Venice and the count Louis and said
«Syre, nos vos volons proier que vos vos metez sor nos, alsi
Lord we you wish to-pray that you yourself put on us just
cum li marchis s'i est mis.» Et l'empereres dist que
as the marquis himself-thereto is put And the-emperor said that
il le feroit mult volentiers. Et lors furent eslit li message
he it would-do very willingly And then were chosen the envoys
qui iroient querre le marchis, et le conduiroient. De ces
who would-go to-fetch the marquis and him would-conduct Of these
messages fu li uns Gervaises del Chastel, et Reniers de
envoys was the one Gervase of-the Châtel and Renier of

Trit li autres, et Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne
Trith the other and Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
li tierz; et li dux de Venise i envoia deus des suens.
the third and the doge of Venice there sent two of his-own
Ensi chevauchierent li message par lor jornées, tant que il 297
Thus rode the envoys by their day-stages so-far that they
vindrent al Dimot; et troverent le marchis et l'empereris sa
came to-the Demotika and found the marquis and the-empress his
feme à grant plenté de bone gent, et li distrent si cum il
wife with great plenty of good people and to-him said so as they
l'estoient venu querre. Lors li requist Joffrois li mareschaus,
him-were come to-fetch Then of-him required Geoffrey the marshal
si con il li avoit asseuré, que il venist en Costantinoble por
so as he to-him had assured that he should-come into Constantinople for
tenir la pais tel cum cil la deviseroient sor cui il s'ert mis,
to-keep the peace such as those it would-devise on whom he himself-was put
et il le conduiroient salvement et toz cels qui avec lui iroient.
and they him would-conduct safely and all those who with him would-go
Conseil prist li marchis à ses homes. Si i ot de cels 298
Counsel took the marquis with his men So there were of those
qui li otroierent que il i alast, et de cels qui li
who to-him granted that he there should-go and of those who to-him
loerent qu'il n'i alast mie. Mais la fins del conseil
advised that-he not-there should-go at-all But the end of-the counsel
si fu tels qu'il ala avec als en Costantinoble, et mena
so was such that-he went with them into Constantinople and led
bien cent chevaliers avec lui; et chevauchierent tant par
well hundred knights with him and they-rode so-far by
lor jornées que il vindrent en Costantinoble. Mult fu
their day-stages that they came into Constantinople Very was-he
volentiers veuz en la vile; et alerent encontre lui li cuens
willingly seen in the town and went to-meet him the count

Loeys de Blois et de Chartein, et li dux de Venise, et
Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the doge of Venice and
mult d'autre bone gent; que il ere mult amez en l'ost.
many of-other good people for he was very loved in the-host
299 Et lors assemblerent à un parlement; et la convenance fu
And then they-assembled at a parliament and the covenant was
retraite de l'empereor Baudoin et del marchis Boniface; et
related of the-emperor Baldwin and of-the marquis Boniface and
li fu Salenique rendue et la terre, en tel maniere que
to-him was Salonika rendered and the land in such manner that
il meist en la main Joffroi le mareschal de Champaigne
he should-put in the hand (of-)Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
le Dimot, dont il ere saisiz; et cil li creanta que il
the Demotika whereof he was seized and that-one to-him promised that he
le garderoit en sa main trosque adonc que il aroit creant
it would-guard in his hand until then that he would-have trusty
message ou ses letres pendanz, que il ert saisiz de Salenique;
envoy or his letters sealed that he was seized of Salonika
et adonc le rendroit à l'empereor ou à son comandement.
and then it would-render to the-emperor or to his command
Et ensi fu faite la pais de l'empereor et del marchis
And thus was made the peace of the-emperor and of-the marquis
com vos avez oï. Et mult en orent grant joie par
as you have heard And much thereof they-had great joy through
l'ost; que ce ert la chose dont granz domages pooit avenir.
the-host for this was the thing whence great damages could befall
300 Lors prist li marchis congié, et s'en ala vers Salenique
Then took the marquis leave and himself-thence went toward Salonika
à totes ses genz et à tote sa fame; et avec lui chevauchierent
with all his people and with all his wife and with him rode
li message l'empereor; et si com il venoit de chastel en chastel,
the envoys (of-)the-emperor and so as he came from castle to castle

si li furent rendu de par l'empereor, et la seigneurie tote.
so to-him were rendered on behalf-of the-emperor and the lordship all
Et vint à Salenique; et cil qui la gardoient la rendirent
And he-came to Salonika and those who it guarded it rendered
de par l'empereor. Et li chevetaines que li empereres i
on behalf-of the-emperor And the captain whom the emperor there
avoit laissié, qui ere apelez Reniers de Mons, si fu morz,
had left who was called Renier of Mons so was dead
qui mult ere prodom; dont granz domages fu de sa mort.
who very was worthy-man whereof great damage was of his death
Lors se commença la terre et li païs à rendre al 301
Then itself began the land and the country to render to-the
marchis, et granz partie à venir à son comandement, fors
marquis and great part to come to his command except
que uns Griex, halz hom, qui ere apelez Lasgur. Et cil
that a Greek high man who was called Leo-Sgouros And that-one
ne volt mie venir à son comandement; que il ere saisiz
not wished at-all to-come to his command for he was seized
de Corinthe et de Naples, deus citez qui sor mer sient,
of Corinth and of Nauplia two cities which on sea sit
des plus forz desoz ciel. Et cil ne volt mie venir à
of-the most strong beneath heaven And that-one not wished at-all to-come to
la merci del marchis; ainz le commença à guerroier, et
the mercy of-the marquis but him began to war-against and
granz pars des Grieux se tindrent à lui. Et uns autres
great parts of-the Greeks themselves held to him And an other
Grieux qui ere apelez Michalis, et ere venuz avec le marchis
Greek who was called Michael and was come with the marquis
de Costantinoble, et cuidoit estre mult bien de lui; mais
from Constantinople and thought to-be very well with him but
il se departi de lui qu'il n'en sot mot, et s'en
he himself departed from him that-he not-thereof knew word and himself-thence

ala à une cité que on apeloit l'Arthe; et prist la file à
went to a city that one called the-Arta and took the daughter of
un riche Grieu qui tenoit la terre de par l'empereor, et
a rich Greek who held the land on behalf-of the-emperor and
se saisi de la terre, et comença le marchis à guerroier.
himself seized of the land and began the marquis to war-against
302 Et la terre de Costantinoble trosque Salonique ere en si
And the land from Constantinople as-far-as Salonika was in so
bone pais; que li chemin erent si seur que il i pooient
good peace that the roads were so safe that they there could
bien aler qui aler i voloient; et si avoit d'une cité à
well go who to-go there wished and so there-was from-one city to
autre bien doze jornées granz. Et fu jà tant del tens
other well twelve days great And was already so-much of-the time
passé, que il ere à l'issue de septembre. Et l'empereres
passed that it was at the-end of September And the-emperor
Baudoins fu en Constantinoble, et la terre fu en paiz
Baldwin was in Constantinople and the land was in peace
et à sa volenté. Lors furent dui mult bon chevalier mort
and at his will Then were two very good knights dead
en Constantinoble, Eustaices de Canteleu et Hainmeris de
in Constantinople Eustace of Canteleux and Aimery of
Vileroy; dont granz domages fu à lor amis.
Villeroi whereof great damage was to their friends
303 Lors comença l'en les terres à departir; li Venisien orent la lor
Then began one the lands to divide the Venetians had the their
part, et l'oz des pelerins l'autre. Et quant chascuns sot
part and the-host of-the pilgrims the-other And when each knew-how-to
assener à sa terre, la convoitise del monde, qui tant aura
get to his land the covetousness of-the world which so-much will-have
mal fait, nes laissa estre en paix; ainz comença chascuns
ill done not-them let be in peace but began each

à faire mal en sa terre, li uns plus et li autre mains; et
to do ill in his land the one more and the other less and
li Grieu les comencierent à haïr et à porter malvais cuer.
the Greeks them began to hate and to bear bad heart
Lors dona l'emperere Baudoins au conte Loeys la duchée 304
Then gave the-emperor Baldwin to-the count Louis the duchy
de Niqué, qui ere une des plus haltes honors de la terre
of Nicaea which was one of-the most high honors of the land
de Romenie, et séoit d'autre part del Braiz, devers la
of Romania and sat on-other side of-the Arm toward the
Turquie. Et tote la terre d'autre part del Braz n'ere mie
Turkey And all the land on-other side of-the Arm not-was at-all
venue à la merci l'empereor, ainz ere contre lui. Lors après
come to the mercy (of-)the-emperor but was against him Then after
dona la duchée de Finepople à Renier de Trit.
he-gave the duchy of Philippopolis to Renier of Trith
Et lors envoia li cuens Loeys de ses homes por sa 305
And then sent the count Louis of his men for his
terre conquerre, bien six vins chevaliers; de cels si fu
land to-conquer well six score knights of those so was
chevetaines Pierres de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens. Et cil
captain Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans And those
s'en partirent à la feste Toz sainz de Costantinoble,
themselves-thence departed at the feast (of-)All Saints from Constantinople
et passerent le Braz Saint-George à navie; et vindrent à
and crossed the Arm Saint-George by navy and came to
l'Espigal, une cité qui sor mer siet, et ere poplée de
the-Espigal a city which on sea sits and was peopled with
Latins. Et lors comencierent la guerre contre les Grex.
Latins And then they-began the war against the Greeks

The Death of Murzuphlus

XXXIV

Thierry of Loos captures the blinded Murzuphlus fleeing across the Arm, and he is thrown from a high marble column before the whole city, as an old prophecy and a figure carved on it foretold. Boniface sends the elder Alexius and his wife prisoner to Montferrat. Henry of Flanders crosses to Abydos, where the Armenians join him; Renier of Trith holds Philippopolis against Johanitsa; Macaire of Sainte-Menehould occupies Nicomedia. Theodore Lascaris, the elder Alexius' son-in-law, wars on the Franks beyond the Arm, while Baldwin stays in Constantinople with few men.

306 En cel termine, si avint que l'empereres Morchuflés, qui avoit
In that time so happened that the-emperor Murzuphlus who had
les oels traiz (cil qui avoit murtri son seignor l'empereor Alexi,
the eyes drawn he who had murdered his lord the-emperor Alexius
le fil l'empereor Sursac, celui que li pelerin avoient amené en
the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac him whom the pilgrims had brought into
la terre), s'enfuioit oltre le Braz coiement et à poi de gent.
the land himself-was-fleeing beyond the Arm secretly and with few of people
Et Tieris de Los le sot, cui il fu enseigniez; si le prist et
And Thierry of Loos it knew to-whom he was pointed-out so him took and
l'amena l'empereor Baudoin en Constantinople. Et l'empereres
him-brought (to-)the-emperor Baldwin into Constantinople And the-emperor
Baudoins en fu mult liez, et em prist conseil à ses homes,
Baldwin thereof was very glad and thereof took counsel with his men
qu'il en feroit d'ome qui tel murtre avoit fait de son seignor.
what-he thereof should-do of-a-man who such murder had done of his lord
307 A ce fu acordez li conseils, que il avoit une colonne en
To this was agreed the counsel that there was a column in
Costantinoble enmi la vile auques, qui ere une des plus
Constantinople amid the town somewhat which was one of-the most
haltes et des mielz ovrées de marbre qui onques fust veue
high and of-the best wrought of marble which ever might-be seen

d'oil; et enqui le feist mener et lo feist saillir
by-eye and there him he-should-have led and him should-have leap
aval, voiant tote la gent; que si halte justise devoit bien
down seeing all the people for so high justice ought well
toz li monz veoir. Ensi fu menez à la colonne l'empereres
all the world to-see Thus was led to the column the-emperor
Morchuflés, et fu menez sus; et toz li pueples de la cité
Murzuphlus and was led up and all the people of the city
acorrut por veoir la merveille. Lor fu botez aval, et chaï
ran-up for to-see the marvel Then was-he pushed down and fell
de si halt que quant il vint à terre que il fu toz esmiez.
from so high that when he came to earth that he was all shattered
Or oïez une grant merveille; que en cele colonne dont 308
Now hear a great marvel that on that column from-which
il chaï aval, avoit ymages de maintes manieres, ovrées
he fell down there-were images of many manners wrought
el marbre. Et entre celes ymaiges, si en avoit une
in-the marble And among those images so thereof there-was one
qui ere laborée en forme d'empereor, et cele si chaoit
which was wrought in form of-emperor and that-one so was-falling
contreval; car de lonc tens ere profeticié qu'il auroit un
down for from long time it-was prophesied that-there would-be an
empereor en Constantinople qui devoit estre gitez aval cele
emperor in Constantinople who ought to-be cast down that
colonne. Et ensi fu cele semblance et cele prophecie averée.
column And thus was that likeness and that prophecy verified
En icel termine, ravint altressi que li marchis Bonifaces de 309
In that time happened likewise that the marquis Boniface of
Monferrat, qui ere vers Salenique, prist l'empereor Alexi (qui ere
Montferrat who was toward Salonika took the-emperor Alexius who was
cil qui avoit à l'empereor Sursac traiz les ialz), et l'empereris
he who had from the-emperor Sursac drawn the eyes and the-empress

sa fame avec. Et envoia les hueses vermeilles et les dras
his wife with-him And he-sent the boots red and the cloths
emperials l'empereor Baudoin son seignor, en Costantinoble,
imperial (to-)the-emperor Baldwin his lord into Constantinople
qui mult bon gré l'en sot; et il envoia puis après
who very good will to-him-thereof knew and he sent then after
l'empereor Alexi et l'empereriz sa fame, en prison en Monferrat.
the-emperor Alexius and the-empress his wife into prison in Montferrat
310 A la feste saint-Martin après, s'en issi Henris, li freres
At the feast (of-)Saint-Martin after himself-thence came-out Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin, de Constantinoble, et s'en ala
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin from Constantinople and himself-thence went
contreval le Braz trosque à Boche d'Avie; et mena bien six vins
down the Arm as-far to Mouth of-Abydos and led well six score
chevaliers avec lui de mult bone gent. Et passa le Braz à la
knights with him of very good people And he-crossed the Arm to the
cité que l'on appele Avie, et la trova mult bien garnie de toz
city that one calls Abydos and it found very well furnished with all
biens, de blez et de viandes, et de totes choses qui mestier
goods with wheats and with victuals and with all things which need
ont à cors d'ome. Et il se saisi de la cité, et se herberja
have for body of-man And he himself seized of the city and himself lodged
dedenz; et lors comença la guerre contre les Grex endroit lui.
within and then began the war against the Greeks about him
Et li Hermin de la terre, dont il en i avoit mult, se
And the Armenians of the land of-whom it thereof there had many themselves
comencierent à torner devers lui; qu'i haoient mult les Grex.
began to turn toward him for-they hated much the Greeks
311 A cel termine, se parti Reniers de Trit de Costantinoble,
At that time himself departed Renier of Trith from Constantinople
et s'en ala vers Finepople, que l'empereres Baudoins
and himself-thence went toward Philippopolis which the-emperor Baldwin

li avoit donée. Et enmena bien avec lui six vins chevaliers
to-him had given And he-led well with him six score knights
de mult bone gent; et chevaucha tant par ses jornées que
of very good people and rode so-far by his day-stages that
trespassa Andrenople, et vint à Phinepople. Et la gens de la
he-passed Adrianople and came to Philippopolis And the people of the
terre le reçurent, et li obéirent come à seignor; qu'i le
land him received and to-him obeyed as to lord for-they him
virent mult volentiers. Et il avoient mult grant mestier de
saw very willingly And they had very great need of
secors; que Johans li rois de Blaquie les avoit mult appressez
succor for John the king of Wallachia them had much pressed
de guerre. Et il lor aida mult bien, et tint grant partie de
with war And he them helped very well and held great part of
la terre; et la granz partie qui s'ere tenue devers Johan, se
the land and the great part which itself-was held toward John itself
torna devers lui. Enqui endroit refu la guerre granz entr'als.
turned toward him There right was-in-turn the war great between-them
L'empereres rot bien envoié cent chevaliers passer le Braz 312
The-emperor had-also well sent hundred knights to-cross the Arm
Saint-George endroit Costantinoble. De cels si fu chevetaines
Saint-George opposite Constantinople Of those so was captain
Machaires de Sainte Manehalt; avec lui ala Mahius de
Macaire of Sainte Menehould with him went Matthew of
Vaslaincort et Roberz del Ronçoi. Et chevauchierent à une cité
Walincourt and Robert of-the Ronsoy And they-rode to a city
qui ere apelée Nichomie, et siet sor un gofre de mer; et ere
which was called Nicomedia and sits on a gulf of sea and was
bien deus jornées loing de Costantinoble. Et quant li Grieu
well two days away from Constantinople And when the Greeks
les oïrent venir, si vuidierent la cité et s'en alerent; et
them heard come so emptied the city and themselves-thence went and

il se hebergierent dedenz, si la garnirent et refermerent;
they themselves lodged within so it furnished and re-fortified
et recomencierent à guerroier de cele marche endroit als.
and began-again to war from that march about them
313 La terre d'autre part del Braz si avoit seignor un Grieu
The land on-other side of-the Arm so had lord a Greek
que on apeloit Toldres li Ascres. Et avoit la file
whom one called Theodore the Lascaris And he-had the daughter
l'empereor Alexi à fame, dont il clamoit la terre (celui
(of-)the-emperor Alexius to wife whereby he claimed the land (of-)him
cui li Franc avoient chacié de Costantinoble, et qui avoit
whom the Franks had chased from Constantinople and who had
son frere traiz les ialz). Icil si tenoit la guerre contre
his brother drawn the eyes That-one so held the war against
les Franz outre le Braz, partot là où il estoient.
the Franks beyond the Arm everywhere there where they were
314 Et l'empereres Baudoins fu remés en Costantinoble, et li
And the-emperor Baldwin was remained in Constantinople and the
cuens Loeys, à poi de gent; et li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol,
count Louis with few of people and the count Hugh of Saint-Pol
qui malades ere d'une grant maladie de gote qui le tenoit es
who sick was of-a great sickness of gout which him held in-the
genols et es piez; et li dus de Venisse, qui goute ne veoit.
knees and in-the feet and the doge of Venice who a-drop not saw

Reinforcements from Syria

XXXV

Stephen of the Perche, Renaud of Montmirail, and many from Syria arrive, and Stephen receives Philadelphia. The Empress Marie, following her husband overseas, dies at Acre soon after hearing of his triumph. Peter of Bracieux and Payen of Orléans rout Lascaris at Poemanenum and take Lopadium and other strong places. Henry moves to Adramyttium, and when Constantine Lascaris attacks with a great army before mid-Lent, Henry sallies, routs him, and wins great booty.

En icel termine après, vint uns granz passages de cels de 315
In that term after came a great passage of those of
la terre de Surie, et de cels qui l'ost avoient laissie et
the land of Syria and of those who the-host had left and
estoient alé passer as autres passages. A cel passage vint
were gone to-cross at-the other passages At that passage came
Estenes del Perche et Regnaus de Monmirail, qui cosin
Stephen of-the Perche and Renaud of Montmirail who cousins
estoient le conte Loeys qui mult les honora et fu mult
were (of-)the count Louis who much them honored and was very
liez de lor venue. Et l'empereres Baudoins et les autres genz
glad of their coming And the-emperor Baldwin and the other people
les virent mult volentiers; qu'il estoient mult halt home
them saw very willingly for-they were very high men
et mult riche, et amenerent grant plenté de bone gent.
and very rich and brought great plenty of good people
De la terre de Surie vint Hue de Tabarie, et Raols ses 316
From the land of Syria came Hugh of Tiberias and Raoul his
freres, et Tierris de Tendremonde, et granz plentés de la
brother and Thierry of Termonde and great plenty of the
gent del païs, de chevaliers, de Turchoples et de serjanz.
people of-the country of knights of Turcopoles and of sergeants

Et lors après si dona l'empereres Baudoins à Estene del
And then after so gave the-emperor Baldwin to Stephen of-the
Perche la duchée de Philadelphie.
Perche the duchy of Philadelphia

317 Entre les autres fu venue une novele à l'empereor Baudoin,
Among the others was come a news to the-emperor Baldwin
dont il fu mult dolenz; que la contesse Marie sa fame,
whereof he was very sorrowful that the countess Marie his wife
qu'il avoit laissie en Flandresençainte, por ce qu'ele ne pot
whom-he had left in Flanders pregnant for this that-she not could
avec lui movoir (qui adonc ere cuens), la dame si ajut
with him set-out who then was count the lady so was-delivered
d'une file; et après, quant ele fu relevée, si s'esmut
of-a daughter and after when she was risen so herself-set-out
et ala oltre-mer après son seignor, et passa al port de
and went overseas after her lord and crossed at-the port of
Marseille. Et quant ele vint à Acre, si n'i ot gaires esté
Marseilles And when she came to Acre so not-there had much been
que la novele li vint de Costantinoble (que li message
that the news to-her came from Constantinople that the envoys
son signour li conterent) que Costantinoble ere conquise,
(of-)her lord to-her told that Constantinople was conquered
et ses sires ere empereres; dont grans joie fu à la crestienté.
and her lord was emperor whereof great joy was to the Christendom

318 Après cele novele, ot la dame en proposement de venir à lui.
After that news had the lady in purpose to come to him
Si li prist une maladie, si fina et morut; dont granz duels
So her took a sickness so she-ended and died whereof great mourning
fu à tote la crestienté, car ele ere mult bone dame et mult
was to all the Christendom for she was very good lady and very
honorée. Et cil qui vindrent à cel passage en aporterent les
honored And those who came at that passage thence brought the

noveles; dont granz diels fu à l'empereor Baudouin et à toz
news whereof great mourning was to the-emperor Baldwin and to all
les barons de la terre, car il la desiroient mult avoir à dame.
the barons of the land for they her desired much to-have for lady
En cel termine, cil qui estoient alé à la cité de l'Espigal, 319
In that term those who were gone to the city of the-Espigal
dont Pierres de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens erent chevetaine,
whereof Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans were captains
fermerent un chastel que on apela Palorme; si le garnirent de
fortified a castle that one called Palormo so it furnished with
lor gent, et puis chevauchierent oltre por conquerre la terre.
their people and then rode beyond for to-conquer the land
Toldres li Ascres se fu porchaciez de tote la gent que il
Theodore the Lascaris himself was provided with all the people that he
pot avoir: le jor de la feste monseignor saint Nicholas, qui
could have the day of the feast (of-)my-lord saint Nicholas which
est devant la Nativité, si s'entrecontrerent es plains d'un
is before the Nativity so each-other-met in-the plains of-a
chastel que on apelle Pumenienor. Et si en fu bataile à
castle that one calls Poemanenum And so thereof was battle at
mult grant meschief à la nostre gent; que cil avoient tant
very great disadvantage to the our people for those had so-many
de gent que n'ere se merveile non, et li nostre n'avoient
of people that it-not-was except marvel not and the ours not-had
mie plus de sept vins chevaliers, sans les serjanz à cheval.
at-all more than seven score knights without the sergeants on horse
Et Nostre Sire done les aventures ensi come lui plaist. 320
And Our Lord gives the chances thus as to-him pleases
Par la soe grace et par la soe volonté li Franc vanquirent
By the his grace and by the his will the Franks vanquished
les Grejois et les desconfirent, et cil i reçurent grant
the Greeks and them routed and those there received great

domage. Dedenz la semaine lor rendi-on de la terre grant
damage Within the week to-them rendered-one of the land great
part: on lor rendi le Pumenienor qui ere mult forz
part one to-them rendered the Poemanenum which was very strong
chastiaus, et le Lupaire qui ere une des meillors citez de
castle and the Lopadium which was one of-the best cities of
la terre, et lou Pulinach qui séoit sor un lac d'aigue dolce,
the land and the Poulinach which sat on a lake of-water sweet
un des plus forz chastiaus et des meillors que il esteust
one of-the most strong castles and of-the best that it would-behoove
querre. Et sachiez que mult fu bien pris à cele gent; et
to-seek And know that very was well befallen to that people and
mult fissent bien en la terre lor volenté par l'aïe de Dieu.
very did well in the land their will by the-help of God
321 En icel termine après, par le conseil des Hermins, Henris, li
In that term after by the counsel of-the Armenians Henry the
freres l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, parti de la cité
brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople departed from the city
d'Avie et la laissa garnie de sa gent; et chevalcha à une cité
of-Abydos and it left furnished with his people and rode to a city
que l'en apele l'Andremite, qui siet sor mer à deus jornées
that one calls the-Adramyttium which sits on sea at two days
de la cité d'Avie. Et ele li fu rendue, et il se herberja
from the city of-Abydos And it to-him was rendered and he himself lodged
dedenz; et lor se rendi granz partie de la terre à lui; car
within and then itself rendered great part of the land to him for
la citez ere mult bien garnie de blez et de viandes et
the city was very well furnished with grain and with victuals and
d'autres biens. Et lors si tint la guerre iqui envers les Griés.
with-other goods And then so he-held the war there against the Greeks

Toldres li Ascres, qui ot esté desconfiz vers le Pumenienor, 322
Theodore the Lascaris who had been routed toward the Poemanenum
porchaça de gent quanque il en pot avoir; et ot mult grant
gathered of people whatever he thereof could have and had very great
ost ensemble, et le charja Costentin son frere, qui ere uns
host together and it charged-to Constantine his brother who was one
des meillors Griex de Romanie; et chevalcha vers l'Andremite
of-the best Greeks of Romania and he-rode toward the-Adramyttium
droit. Et Henris, li freres l'empereor Baudoin, le sot par les
straight And Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin it knew by the
Hermines que mult granz oz venoit sor lui; si atorna son
Armenians that very great host came upon him so he-arrayed his
afaire, et ordena ses batailles; et il avoit avec lui de mult bone
business and ordered his battalions and he had with him of very good
gent. Avec lui estoient Baudoins de Belveoir, Nicholes de Mailli,
people With him were Baldwin of Beauvoir Nicholas of Mailly
Ansials de Kaeu, et Tieris de Los, et Tieris de Tendremonde.
Anseau of Cayeux and Thierry of Loos and Thierry of Termonde
Et ensi avint que le semadi devant mi-quaresme, vint 323
And thus it-happened that the Saturday before mid-Lent came
Costentins li Ascres à sa grant ost devant l'Andremite. Et
Constantine the Lascaris with his great host before the-Adramyttium And
Henris, con il sot sa venue, si prist conseil et dist que il ne
Henry when he knew his coming so took counsel and said that he not
se lairoit jà laienz enfermer, ainz dist que il istroit fors.
himself would-let ever therein shut-up but said that he would-go out
Et cil vint à tote s'ost et à granz batailes à pié et à
And that-one came with all his-host and with great battalions on foot and on
cheval; et cil s'en issirent et comencierent la bataille.
horse and those themselves-thence came-out and began the battle
Et i ot grant estor et grant mellée; mais par l'aïe de
And there was great fight and great brawl but by the-help of

Dieu, les venquirent li Franc et desconfirent; et en i
God them vanquished the Franks and routed and of-them there
ot mult de morz et de pris, et mult fu granz li gaienz. Et
were many of dead and of taken and very was great the gain And
lors furent mult à aise et mult riche; que les genz del païs
then they-were very at ease and very rich for the people of-the country
se tornerent à aus, et comencierent à aporter lor rentes.
themselves turned to them and began to bring their rents

Villehardouin the Nephew in the Morea

XXXVI

Villehardouin's nephew Geoffrey, driven by storm to Modon, allies with a Greek lord and conquers much of the land, but on the lord's death his son turns against him. Geoffrey rides six days to Boniface, who is besieging Leo Sgouros in Nauplia and Corinth, and persuades William of Champlitte to conquer the Morea. With a hundred knights they rout Michael's five thousand near Modon and take Coron, which William gives to Geoffrey, and Kalamata, and more Greeks submit.

324 Or vos lairons de cels devers Costantinople, et revendrons
Now to-you we-will-leave of those toward Constantinople and we-will-come-back
al marchis Boniface de Monferrat qui ert vers Salenique, et
to-the marquis Boniface of Montferrat who was toward Salonika and
s'en fu alez sor Lasgur, qui tenoit Naples et Corinthe,
himself-thence was gone upon Leo-Sgouros who held Nauplia and Corinth
deus des plus forz citez dou monde. Si les asseja andeus
two of-the most strong cities of-the world So them be-besieged both
ensemble: Jacques d'Avesnes remest devant Corinthe, et autre
together James of-Avesnes remained before Corinth and other
bone gens assez; et li autre alerent devant Naples, si l'asistrent.
good people plenty and the others went before Nauplia so it-besieged

Lors avint une aventure el païs; que Joffrois de 325
Then happened an adventure in-the country that Geoffrey of
Vile-Hardoin, qui ere niés Joffroi le mareschal de Romenie
Villehardouin who was nephew (of-)Geoffrey the marshal of Romania
et de Champaigne, fils son frere, fu meuz de la terre de
and of Champagne son (of-)his brother was set-out from the land of
Surie, avec celui passage qui ere venuz en Constantinoble.
Syria with that passage which was come to Constantinople
Si l'enmena venz et aventure au port de Mouçon; et
So him-drove wind and chance to-the port of Modon and
enqui fu sa nés empirie, et par estovoir le convint sejorner
there was his ship damaged and by necessity him behooved to-sojourn
l'iver el païs. Et uns Griex, qui mult ere sire del païs,
the-winter in-the country And a Greek who very was lord of-the country
le sot; si vint à lui et li fist mult grant honor, et li
it knew so came to him and to-him did very great honor and to-him
dist: «Biax sire, li Franc ont conquis Constantinoble, et
said Fair lord the Franks have conquered Constantinople and
fait empereor. Se tu te voloies à moi acompaingnier, je
made emperor If thou thyself wouldst-wish to me to-join I
te porteroie mult bone foi, et conquerriens assez de ceste
to-thee would-bear very good faith and we-would-conquer much of this
terre.» Ensi se jurerent ensemble li Griex et Joffrois de
land Thus themselves swore together the Greek and Geoffrey of
Vile-Hardoin; et conquistrent ensemble grant part de la terre:
Villehardouin and conquered together great part of the land
et trova Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin ou Grieu mult bone foi.
and found Geoffrey of Villehardouin in-the Greek very good faith
Ensi con les aventures vienent si cum Diex volt, si prist al 326
Thus as the chances come so as God wishes so took to-the
Grieu maladie; si fina et morut. Et li fils al Grieu se
Greek sickness so he-ended and died And the son of-the Greek himself

revela contre Joffroi de Vile-Hardoin et le traï; et se
rebelled against Geoffrey of Villehardouin and him betrayed and themselves
tornerent li chastel qu'il avoit garniz contre lui. Et il oït
turned the castles which-he had garrisoned against him And he heard
dire que li marchis séoit devant Naples: à tant de gent com
say that the marquis sat before Nauplia with as-many of people as
il pot avoir, si s'en vait contre lui. Et chevaucha par
he could have so himself-thence goes toward him And he-rode through
mult grant peril bien six jornées parmi la terre; et vint à
very great peril well six days through the land and came to
l'ost, où il fu mult volentiers veuz, et fu mult honorez del
the-host where he was very willingly seen and was very honored by-the
marchis et des autres qui i estoient; et il ere bien droiz;
marquis and by-the others who there were and it was well right
quar il ere mult preuz et mult vailanz, et bons chevaliers.
for he was very worthy and very valiant and good knight
327 Li marchis li volt assez doner terre et avoir por ce qu'il
The marquis to-him wished plenty to-give land and wealth for this that-he
remansist avec lui: il n'en volt point prandre; ainz parla à
should-remain with him he not-thereof wished at-all to-take but spoke to
Guillaume de Chanlite qui mult ere ses amis, et li dist:
William of Champlitte who very was his friend and to-him said
«Sire, je vieng d'une terre qui mult est riche, que on apele
Lord I come from-a land which very is rich that one calls
la Morée. Prenez de gent ce que vos em porroiz avoir,
the Morea Take of people this that you thereof can have
et partez de ceste ost, et alons par l'aïe de Dieu et
and depart from this host and let-us-go by the-help of God and
la conquerons; et ce que vos m'en volroiz doner de la
it let-us-conquer and this that you to-me-thereof will-wish to-give of the
conqueste, je le tendrai de vos, si en serai vos hom liges.»
conquest I it will-hold of you so thereof I-will-be your man liege

Et cil qui mult le crut et ama, ala al marchis, si li
And he who much him believed and loved went to-the marquis so to-him
dist ceste chose; et li marchis li abandona qu'il i alast.
said this thing and the marquis to-him granted that-he there should-go
Ensi se partirent de l'ost Guillaumes de Chanlite et 328
Thus themselves departed from the-host William of Champlitte and
Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin, et enmenerent bien cent chevaliers
Geoffrey of Villehardouin and led well hundred knights
avec als, et de serjanz à cheval grant part; et entrerent
with them and of sergeants on horse great part and entered
en la terre de la Morée, et chevalchierent trosque à la
into the land of the Morea and rode as-far to the
cité de Monçon. Michalis oï qu'il estoient à si pou
city of Modon Michael heard that-they were with so few
de gent en la terre; si amassa grant gent, et ce fu une
of people in the land so he-gathered great people and this was a
mervoille de gent, et chevaucha après als, si cum cil qui
marvel of people and rode after them so as he who
les cuidoit avoir toz pris et avoir en sa main.
them thought to-have all taken and to-have in his hand
Et quant cil oïrent dire que il venoit, si horderent Monçon, qui 329
And when those heard say that he came so they-timbered Modon which
de lonc tens iert abatue, et i laissierent lor hernois et lor
from long time was thrown-down and there left their harness and their
menue gent. Et chevauchierent par un jor, et ordenerent lor
lesser people And they-rode for a day and ordered their
bataille de tant de gent cum il avoient: et fu à trop grant
battalion of as-many of people as they had and it-was at too great
meschief; que il n'avoient mie plus de cinq cens homes à
disadvantage for they not-had at-all more than five hundred men on
cheval, et cil en avoient bien plus de cinc mil. Ensi cum
horse and those thereof had well more than five thousand Thus as

les aventures avienent si con Dieu plaist, se combatirent
the chances happen so as (to-)God pleases themselves fought
as Grieux, et les desconfirent et vainquirent. Et i
with-the Greeks and them routed and vanquished And there
perdirent mult li Grieu; et cil gaaignierent assez chevaus et
lost much the Greeks and those won many horses and
armes, et autres avoirs à mult grant plenté. Et lors s'en
arms and other goods in very great plenty And then themselves-thence
tornerent mult lié et mult joiant à la cité de Moçon.
turned very glad and very joyful to the city of Modon
330 Après chevauchierent à une cité que on apele Corone, qui sor
After they-rode to a city that one calls Coron which on
mer estoit; si l'asistrent. Et n'i sistrent gaires longuement,
sea was so it-besieged And not-there they-sat much long
quant la citez lor fu rendue; et Guillaumes la dona
when the city to-them was rendered and William it gave
Joffroi de Vile-Hardoin, et cil en devint ses hom,
(to-)Geoffrey of Villehardouin and that-one thereof became his man
et la garni de sa gent. Après alerent à un chastel que on
and it furnished with his people After they-went to a castle that one
apele la Chalemate, qui mult ere fors et bials; si l'asistrent.
calls the Kalamata which very was strong and fair so it-besieged
Icil chastials les travailla mult longuement; et tant i
That castle them troubled very long and so-long there
sistrent que renduz lor fu. Adont se rendirent plus
they-sat that rendered to-them it-was Then themselves rendered more
des Grex à als del païs que il n'avoient fait devant.
of-the Greeks to them of-the country than they had done before

The Greeks Allied with Johanitsa

XXXVII

Leo Sgouros sallies from Corinth at dawn; Dreux of Estruen is killed and James of Avesnes wounded before the Greeks are driven back. Seeing the Franks scattered, the Greek cities secretly offer Johanitsa the empire and swear to kill the Franks. Hugh of Saint-Pol dies of gout, his garrison at Demotika is betrayed and slaughtered, Adrianople rebels, and Franks are murdered everywhere. The fugitives, heartened by William of Blanvel at Tzurulum, occupy Arcadiopolis and rout the Greeks there with a sally, but they dare not hold it.

Li marchis Bonifaces sist à Naples, où il ne pot rien faire; 331
The marquis Boniface sat at Nauplia where he not could anything do
quar trop ere forz, et il i greva mult sa gent. Jaques
for too it-was strong and he there burdened much his people James
d'Avesnes retenoit le siege devant Corinthe, si con li marchis
of-Avesnes kept the siege before Corinth so as the marquis
l'i avoit laissié. Lasgur qui ere dedenz Corinthe, et ere
him-there had left Leo-Sgouros who was within Corinth and was
mult sages et engignieus, vit que Jaques n'avoit mie granz genz,
very wise and crafty saw that James not-had at-all great people
et que il ne se gaitoit mie bien. A un maitin, à l'ajornée,
and that he not himself watched at-all well At a morning at the-dawn
fist une saillie mult grant, et ala trosque enz es paveillons;
he-made a sally very great and went as-far into in-the pavilions
et ainz que il peussent estre armé, en ocistrent assez.
and before that they could be armed of-them they-killed plenty
Là si fu morz Drues d'Estruen qui fu mult preuz et 332
There so was dead Dreux of-Estruen who was very worthy and
vaillanz, dont granz dials fu. Et Jaques d'Avesnes, qui
valiant whereof great mourning was And James of-Avesnes who
ere cheveteines, fu mult corrouciés de son chevalier; et ne
was captain was much angered for his knight and not

demora gaires que il fu navrez en la jambe mult durement.
delayed much that he was wounded in the leg very hard
Et bien li porterent tesmoing cil qui là furent, que
And well to-him bore witness those who there were that
par son bien faire furent rescous; et sachiez bien que
by his well doing they-were rescued and know well that
mult furent près d'estre tuit perdu. Et par l'aïe de Dieu,
very they-were near to-be all lost And by the-help of God
les remistrent el chastel à force. Mais li Grieu n'orent
them they-put-back into-the castle by force But the Greeks not-had
mie la felonie fors de lor cuers, qui mult estoient desloial.
at-all the felony out of their hearts which very were disloyal
333 A icel tens, si virent que li François estoient si espandu par
At that time so they-saw that the French were so spread through
les terres; que chascuns avoit afaire endroit lui: si se
the lands that each had business for himself so themselves
penserent que ore les pooient-il traïr. Et pristrent lor message
bethought that now them could-they betray And they-took their envoy
privéement de totes les citez de la terre, et les envoieront
privately from all the cities of the land and them sent
à Johan qui ere rois de Blaquie et de Bogrie, qui les avoit
to John who was king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria who them had
guerroiez et guerreoit tot adès. Et li manderent que il le
warred and warred all ever And to-him sent-word that they him
feroient empereor, et qu'il se rendroient tuit à lui, et
would-make emperor and that-they themselves would-render all to him and
que il ociroient toz les Franz; et si li jureroient que il
that they would-kill all the Franks and so to-him would-swear that they
li obéiroient comme à seignor, et il lor jurast que il
to-him would-obey as to lord and he to-them should-swear that he
les maintendroit comme les suens. Ensi fu faiz li sairemenz.
them would-maintain as the his-own Thus was made the oath

En cel termine, si avint uns granz domages en Costantinoble; 334
In that time so happened a great damage in Constantinople
que li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, qui avoit longuement geu
that the count Hugh of Saint Pol who had long lain
d'une maladie de gote, fina et morut; dont il fu mult granz
of-a sickness of gout ended and died whereof it was very great
diels et mult granz domages; et fu mult plorez de
mourning and very great damage and he-was much wept by
ses homes et de ses amis. Et fu enterrez à mult grant
his men and by his friends And he-was buried with very great
honor au mostier monseignor Saint George de la Mange.
honor at-the minster (of-)my-lord Saint George of the Mangana
Et li cuens Hues si tenoit un chastel en sa vie, qui 335
And the count Hugh so held a castle in his life which
avoit nom li Dimos, et ere mult fors et mult riches;
had name the Demotika and was very strong and very rich
si i avoit de ses chevaliers et de ses serjanz dedenz. Li
so there had of his knights and of his sergeants within The
Grieu qui avoient les sairemenz faiz al roi de Blaquie por
Greeks who had the oaths made to-the king of Wallachia for
les Frans occire et traïr, si les traïrent en cel chastel; si
the Franks to-kill and to-betray so them betrayed in that castle so
en ocistrent et pristrent grant part. Et eschaperent pou;
of-them they-killed and took great part And escaped few
et cil qui eschaperent s'en alerent fuiant à une cité
and those who escaped themselves-thence went fleeing to a city
qu'on apele Andrenople, que li Venicien tenoient à cel jor.
that-one calls Adrianople which the Venetians held at that day
Ne tarda gaires après cum cil d'Andrenople se revelerent; 336
Not delayed much after when those of-Adrianople themselves rebelled
et cil qui estoient dedenz et la gardoient, s'en
and those who were within and it guarded themselves-thence

issirent à grant peril et guerpirent la cité. Et les noveles
came-out with great peril and forsook the city And the news
vindrent à l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, qui mult
came to the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople who very
ere à pou de gent, il et li cuens Loeis de Blois. De ces
was with few of people he and the count Louis of Blois By these
noveles furent il mult troblé et mult esmaié. Et ensi lor
news were they much troubled and much dismayed And thus to-them
comencierent noveles à venir de jor en jor malvaises; que
began news to come from day to day bad for
par tot se reveloient li Grieu, et là où il trovoient
through all themselves rebelled the Greeks and there where they found
les Frans qui estoient bailli des terres, si les ocioient.
the Franks who were bailiffs of-the lands so them they-killed
337 Et cil qui avoient Andrenople guerpie, li Venicien et li
And those who had Adrianople forsaken the Venetians and the
autre qui avec erent, s'en vindrent à une cité que on
others who with-them were themselves-thence came to a city that one
apeloit le Churlot, qui ere l'enpereor Baudoin. Enqui troverent
called the Tzurulum which was (of-)the-emperor Baldwin There they-found
Guillaume de Blanvel, qui de par l'enpereor la gardoit. Par
William of Blanvel who on behalf-of the-emperor it guarded By
le confort que il lor fist, et par ce que il ala avec als à
the comfort that he to-them gave and by this that he went with them with
tant de gent con il pot, si tornerent arieres à une cité bien
as-many of people as he could so they-turned back to a city well
à doze lieues près, qui Archadiople ere apelée, qui ere as
at twelve leagues near which Arcadiopolis was called which was of-the
Venisiens, et la troverent vuide; si entrerent enz, si la garnirent.
Venetians and it they-found empty so they-entered in so it they-garrisoned

Dedenz le tierz jor, li Grieu del païs s'asenblerent, si 338
Within the third day the Greeks of-the country themselves-assembled so
vindrent à une ajornée devant Archadiople; si commencierent
came at a dawn before Arcadiopolis so began
l'asaut grant et merveillos tot entor. Et il se
the-assault great and marvelous all around And they themselves
defendirent mult bien; si ovrirent lor portes, si fistrent
defended very well so opened their gates so made
une assaillie mult grant. Si con Diex le volt, si se
a sally very great So as God it wished so themselves
desconfissent li Grieu; et cil les commencierent à abatre
rout the Greeks and those them began to cut-down
et à ocire. Ensi les chacierent une liue, et en ocistrent
and to kill Thus them they-chased a league and of-them killed
mult, et gaaignierent assez chevax et autres avoirs mult.
many and won many horses and other goods many
Ensi s'en revindrent à grant joie en la cité 339
Thus themselves-thence came-back with great joy into the city
d'Archadiople, et cele victoire si manderent l'empereor Baudoin
of-Arcadiopolis and that victory so sent-word-to the-emperor Baldwin
en Constantinoble, qui mult en fu liez. Et neporquant
in Constantinople who much thereof was glad And nevertheless
n'oserent retenir la cité d'Archadiople, ainz s'en
not-they-dared to-retain the city of-Arcadiopolis but themselves-thence
issirent l'endemain et la guerpirent, et s'en revindrent
came-out the-next-day and it forsook and themselves-thence came-back
en la cité del Curlot. Enqui s'aresterent à grant dote; que
into the city of-the Tzurulum There themselves-stopped in great dread for
il dotoient autant cels de la vile cum il faissoient cels de
they feared as-much those of the town as they did those of
hors; que il estoient dou sairement devers le roi de Blaquie,
outside for they were of-the oath toward the king of Wallachia

et devoient les Frans traïr. Et maint en i ot qui n'i
and were-to the Franks betray And many of-them there were who not-there
oserent arester, ainz s'en vindrent en Constantinoble.
dared stop but themselves-thence came into Constantinople

The Recall from Beyond the Straits

XXXVIII

Baldwin recalls Henry from Adramyttium and the garrison of Nicomedia, and Louis recalls his knights from Lopadium. Villehardouin and Manasses of the Isle ride out with the few they have, gather eighty knights at Tzurulum, and advance through towns the Greeks have emptied to Nikitza, nine leagues from Adrianople, to await the emperor. At Philippopolis Renier of Trith's son, brother, nephew, and son-in-law desert him and are beheaded by Johanitsa; eighty more knights leave, and Renier is left with fifteen at Philippopolis and Stenimaka.

340 Lors pristrent l'empereres Baudoins conseil, et li dux de
Then took the-emperor Baldwin counsel and the doge of
Venise, et li cuens Loeys, et virent que il perdoient tote
Venice and the count Louis and saw that they were-losing all
la terre. Et fu telx lor consels que l'empereres manda
the land And was such their counsel that the-emperor sent-word-to
Henri son frere, qui ere à l'Andremite, que il guerpist
Henry his brother who was at the-Adramyttium that he should-forsake
quanque il i avoit conquis, et le venist secore.
whatever he there had conquered and him should-come to-succor
341 Li cuens Loeys en renvoia à Paien d'Orliens et à Perron de
The count Louis thereof sent-word to Payen of-Orléans and to Peter of
Braiecuel qui erent à Lupaire, et à totes les gens que il avoient
Bracieux who were at Lopadium and to all the people that they had
avec els, que il guerpissent tote la conqueste, fors seulement
with them that they should-forsake all the conquest except only

l'Espigal, qui séoit sor mer; et la garnissent à mains
the-Espigal which sat on sea and it they-should-garrison with least
que il porroient de gent, et li autre le venissent secoure.
that they could of people and the others him should-come to-succor
L'empereres manda Machaire de Sainte Manehaut et 342
The-emperor sent-word-to Macaire of Sainte Menehould and
Mahui de Vaslencort et Robert del Rançoi, qui bien
Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of-the Ronsoy who well
avoient cent chevaliers avec als et estoient à Nichomie,
had hundred knights with them and were at Nicomedia
que il la guerpissent et le venissent secoure.
that they it should-forsake and him should-come to-succor
Par le comandement l'empereor Baudoin, issi Joffrois de 343
By the command (of-)the-emperor Baldwin came-out Geoffrey of
Vile-Hardoin, li mareschaus de Romenie et de Champaigne,
Villehardouin the marshal of Romania and of Champagne
de Costantinoble, et Manassiers de l'Isle, à tant de
from Constantinople and Manasses of the-Isle with as-many of
gent con il porent avoir; et ce fu mult poi, car la terre
people as they could have and this was very few for the land
se perdoit tote. Et chevauchierent trosque à la cité del
itself was-losing all And they-rode as-far to the city of-the
Churlot, qui ere à trois jornées de Constantinoble. Illuec
Tzurulum which was at three days from Constantinople There
troverent Guillaume de Blanvel, et cels qui avec lui estoient,
they-found William of Blanvel and those who with him were
qui mult erent à grant paor; et lors furent mult asseuré.
who very were in great fear and then were much reassured
Enqui sejornerent par quatre jorz. L'empereres Baudoins
There they-sojourned for four days The-emperor Baldwin
renvoia, après Joffroi le mareschal, quanque il pooit avoir
sent after Geoffrey the marshal whatever he could have

de gent tout ensi com il venoient, tant que vint al
of people all just as they came until that it-came to-the
quart jor que il orent quatre vins chevaliers al Churlot.
fourth day that they had four score knights at-the Tzurulum
344 Et dont s'esmut Joffrois li mareschaus, et Manassiers de
And then himself-set-out Geoffrey the marshal and Manasses of
l'Isle et lor genz; et chevauchierent avant, et vindrent à la
the-Isle and their people and rode forward and came to the
cité d'Archadiople; si se hebergierent enz. Enqui sejornerent
city of-Arcadiopolis so themselves lodged in There they-sojourned
un jor et d'enqui murent; si s'en alerent à une altre
one day and from-there set-out so themselves-thence went to an other
cité que on apele Burgarofle. Et li Grieu l'orent vuidie; si
city that one calls Bulgarophygon And the Greeks it-had emptied so
se hebergierent dedenz. L'endemain chevauchierent à une
themselves lodged within The-next-day they-rode to a
cité que on apele Nequise, qui ere mult bele et mult ferme,
city that one calls Nikitza which was very fair and very strong
et mult bien garnie de toz biens. Et troverent que li Grieu
and very well furnished with all goods And they-found that the Greeks
l'orent guerpie, et s'en erent tuit alé à Andrenople.
it-had forsaken and themselves-thence were all gone to Adrianople
Et cele citez ere à neuf liues françoises près d'Andrenople,
And that city was at nine leagues French near to-Adrianople
et tote la grans plentez des Grex ere à Andrenople. Et fu
and all the great plenty of-the Greeks was at Adrianople And was
tels lor consels qu'il attendroient iqui l'empereor Baudoin.
such their counsel that-they would-await there the-emperor Baldwin
345 Or conte li livres une grant mervoille: que Reniers de Trit
Now tells the book a great marvel that Renier of Trith
qui ere à Finepople, bien neuf jornées loing de Costantinoble,
who was at Philippopolis well nine days away from Constantinople

et avoit bien six vins chevaliers avec lui, que Reniers ses fils
and had well six score knights with him that Renier his son
le guerpi, et Giles ses freres, et Jaques de Bondies qui ere
him forsook and Giles his brother and James of Bondies who was
ses niés, et Achars de Verdun qui avoit sa file. Et li
his nephew and Achard of Verdun who had his daughter And from-him
tolirent bien trente de ses chevaliers; et s'en cuidoient
took well thirty of his knights and themselves-thence thought
venir en Constantinoble; et l'avoient laissié en si grant peril,
to-come into Constantinople and him-had left in so great peril
com vos oez. Si troverent la terre revelée encontre els, et furent
as you hear So they-found the land risen against them and were
desconfit; si les pristrent li Grieu qui puis les rendirent le
routed so them took the Greeks who then them rendered (to-)the
roi de Blaquie, qui puis après lor fist les testes trenchier. Et
king of Wallachia who then after to-them had the heads cut-off And
sachiez que mult furent petit plaint de la gent, porce qu'il
know that very were little pitied by the people because that-they
avoient si mespris vers celui cui il ne le deussent mie faire.
had so misdone toward him whom they not it ought at-all to-do
Et quant li autre chevalier Renier de Trit virent ce, qui 346
And when the other knights (of-)Renier of Trith saw this who
si près ne lui estoient mie cum cil qui alé s'en
so near not to-him were at-all as those who gone themselves-thence
estoient, si en doterent mains la honte; si le guerpirent
were so thereof feared less the shame so him forsook
bien quatre vins chevalier tuit ensemble, et s'en alerent
well four score knights all together and themselves-thence went
par une autre voie. Et Reniers de Trit remest entre les Griex
by an other road And Renier of Trith remained among the Greeks
à pou de gent; que il n'avoit mie plus de quinze chevaliers
with few of people for he not-had at-all more than fifteen knights

à Phinepople et à l'Estanemac, qui ere uns chastiaus mult
at Philippopolis and at the-Stenimaka which was a castle very
forz que il tenoit, où il fu puis longuement assis.
strong that he held where he was then long besieged

Before Adrianople

XXXIX

Without waiting for Henry, Baldwin and Count Louis ride out with seven score knights, join Villehardouin at Nikitza, and before Palm Sunday besiege Adrianople, which flies Johanitsa's banners. The blind doge brings as many men again. Short of victuals and unable to forage, they wait as Johanitsa comes with Vlachs, Bulgars, and fourteen thousand heathen Cumans. Louis's assault on Peutaces fails, and they keep Easter before the city, mining its wall.

347 Or vos lairons de Renier de Trit, si revendrons à
Now to-you we-will-leave of Renier of Trith so we-will-come-back to
l'empereour Baudoin, qui est en Costantinoble à mult pou
the-emperor Baldwin who is in Constantinople with very few
de gent, mult iriez et mult destroiz. Et attendoit Henri
of people very angered and very distressed And be-awaited Henry
son frère, et totes les autres genz qui erent oltre le Braz.
his brother and all the other people who were beyond the Arm
Et li premier qui vindrent à lui d'oltre le Braz, ce
And the first who came to him from-beyond the Arm these
furent cil de Nichomie, Machaires de Sainte Manehalt et
were those of Nicomedia Macaire of Sainte Menehould and
Mahuis de Vaslencort et Roberz de Ronçoi; et vindrent
Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of Ronsoy and came
bien en cele route cent chevalier.
well in that company hundred knights

Et quant l'empereres les vit, si en fu multz liez, et parla 348
And when the-emperor them saw so thereof he-was very glad and spoke
al conte Loeys, qui cuens ere de Blois et de Chartain;
to-the count Louis who count was of Blois and of Chartres
et fu tels lor consels, que il distrent que il s'en
and was such their counsel that they said that they themselves-thence
istroient à tant de gent cum il avoient, et sivroient
would-go-out with as-many of people as they had and would-follow
Joffroi le mareschal de Champaigne qui devant s'en
Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne who before himself-thence
estoit alez. Halas! quel domage qu'il n'atendirent tant que
was gone Alas what damage that-they not-waited until that
tuit li autre fussient venu, qui d'autre part del Braz estoient;
all the others should-be come who on-other side of-the Arm were
que poi avoient gent à si perileus leu où il aloient.
for few they-had people for so perilous place where they went
Ensi issirent de Costantinoble bien à sept vins chevaliers; 349
Thus they-came-out from Constantinople well with seven score knights
et chevauchierent de jornée en jornée, tant que il
and rode from day's-journey to day's-journey so-long that they
vindrent al chastel de Nequise, où Joffrois li mareschaus
came to-the castle of Nikitza where Geoffrey the marshal
estoit herbergiez. La nuit pristrent conseil ensemble; la summe
was lodged The night they-took counsel together the sum
de lor conseil fu telx, que il iroient al maitin devant
of their counsel was such that they would-go at-the morning before
Andrenople, et que il l'aserroient. Et ordenerent lor batailles,
Adrianople and that they it-would-besiege And they-ordered their battalions
et deviserent mult bien de tant de gent cum il avoient.
and devised very well of as-many of people as they had

350 Et quant vint al maitin, à cler jor, il chevauchierent si
And when it-came to-the morning at clear day they rode so
con devisé ere, et vindrent devant Andrenople. Et la troverent
as devised it-was and came before Adrianople And it they-found
mult bien garnie, et virent les confanons Jaenisse, le roi
very well garrisoned and saw the pennons (of-)Johanitsa the king
de Blaquie et de Bougrie, sor les murs et sor les tors; et
of Wallachia and of Bulgaria on the walls and on the towers and
la vile fu mult fors et mult riche, et mult plaine de gent.
the town was very strong and very rich and very full of people
Et il les assirent à mult poi de gent devant deus des
And they them besieged with very few of people before two of-the
portes; et ce fu li mardis de Pasque florie. Ensi furent par
gates and this was the Tuesday of Easter flowered Thus they-were for
trois jorz devant la ville à grant mesaise et à pou de gent.
three days before the town in great discomfort and with few of people
351 Lors vint Henris Dandole qui ere dux de Venise; mais vielz
Then came Henry Dandolo who was doge of Venice but old
hom ere, et gote ne véoit. Et amena de tel gent cum
man he-was and a-drop not saw And he-brought of such people as
il ot, et bien altant cum l'empereres Baudoins et li cuens
he had and well as-many as the-emperor Baldwin and the count
Loeys en avoient amené; et se loja devant une des
Louis thereof had brought and himself lodged before one of-the
portes. L'endemain, recrurent d'une rote de serjanz à cheval;
gates The-next-day they-grew with-a company of sergeants on horse
mais bien fust mestiers que il valsissent plus que il ne
but well would-be need that they were-worth more than they —
valoient. Et si avoient pou de viande, que marchiés nes
were-worth And so they-had few of victuals for market not-them

pooit sevre; ne il ne pooient aler forer, que tant avoit
could follow nor they not could go to-forage for so-many there-were
des Griex par le païs que il n'i pooient mie aler.
of-the Greeks through the country that they not-there could at-all go
Johannis li rois de Blaquie venoit secoure cels d'Andrenople 352
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia came to-succor those of-Adrianople
à mult grant ost; que il amenoit Blas et Bogres, et bien
with very great host for he led Vlachs and Bulgars and well
quatorze mil Cumains, qui n'estoient mie baptezié. Por la
fourteen thousand Cumans who not-were at-all baptized For the
destrece de la viande, ala forrer li cuens Loeys de Blois et
distress of the victuals went to-forage the count Louis of Blois and
de Chartein le jor de la Pasque florie. Avec lui ala Estenes
of Chartres the day of the Easter flowered With him went Stephen
del Perche li freres le conte Joffroi del Perche, et Renaus
of-the Perche the brother (of-)the count Geoffrey of-the Perche and Renaud
de Monmirail, qui ere freres le conte Hervi de Nevers, et
of Montmirail who was brother (of-)the count Hervé of Nevers and
Gervaises del Chastel, et plus de la moitié de tote l'ost.
Gervase of-the Châtel and more than the half of all the-host
Si alerent à un chastel que on apele Peutaces, et le 353
So they-went to a castle that one calls Peutaces and it
troverent mult bien garni de Grex; et i assaillirent mult
they-found very well garrisoned with Greeks and there assailed very
grant assalt et mult fort, ne n'i porent rien faire, ains
great assault and very strong nor not-there could anything do but
s'en revindrent arriers sanz nule conqueste. Ensi furent
themselves-thence came-back back without any conquest Thus they-were
la semaine des deus Pasques; et fisent engins chapuisier
the week of-the two Easters and had engines built
de mainte mainiere, et mistrent mineors qu'il avoient par
of many-a manner and put miners whom-they had by

desoz terre, por le mur trenchier. Et ensi fisent la Pasque
below earth for the wall to-cut And thus they-kept the Easter
devant Andrenople à pou de gent et à pou de viande.
before Adrianople with few of people and with few of victuals

The Defeat at Adrianople

XL

Johanitsa's Cumans raid the camp and draw the Franks into a foolish chase, so the barons order that no one leave the line. On the Thursday after Easter the Cumans come again; Count Louis breaks the order and pursues for two leagues, calling Baldwin after him. The Cumans turn, the untried troops panic, and Louis, twice wounded, refuses to flee and leave the emperor. Baldwin fights to the end and is taken alive; Louis is killed, with the Bishop of Bethlehem, Stephen of the Perche, and many more.

354 Lors vint novelle que Johans li rois de Blaquie venoit sor
Then came news that John the king of Wallachia came upon
als por seccorre la vile. Si ordenerent lor afaire; et fu
them for to-succor the town So they-ordered their business and was
devisé que Joffrois li mareschaus et Manessiers de l'Isle
devised that Geoffrey the marshal and Manasses of the-Isle
garderoient l'ost, et l'empereres Baudoins et tuit li autre
would-guard the-host and the-emperor Baldwin and all the others
istroient fors, se Johannis venoit à bataille.
would-go out if Johanitsa came to battle
355 Ensi demorerent trosque al maicresdi des foiries des
Thus they-remained until to-the Wednesday of-the holidays of-the
Pasques; et Johanis fu jà si aproichiez qu'il fu logiez
Easter and Johanitsa was already so approached that-he was lodged
bien à cinq lieues d'als. Et envoia core devant lor ost
well at five leagues from-them And he-sent to-run before their host

ses Commains; et li criz lieve en l'ost, et s'en
his Cumans and the cry rises in the-host and themselves-thence
issent à desroi. Et chacierent les Commains une mult
come-out in disorder And they-chased the Cumans a very
bone lieue mult folement; et quant il s'en voldrent
good league very foolishly and when they themselves-thence wished
venir, li Commain commencierent à traire sor als mult
to-come the Cumans began to shoot upon them very
durement, si lor navrerent de lor chevals assez.
hard so to-them wounded of their horses plenty
Ensi s'en revindrent en l'ost, et furent mandé li baron 356
Thus themselves-thence came-back into the-host and were summoned the barons
en l'ostel l'empereor Baudoin. Et pristrent conseil, et distrent
into the-lodging (of-)the-emperor Baldwin And they-took counsel and said
que mult avoient fait grant folie, qu'il avoient tant chacié tel
that very they-had done great folly for-they had so-far chased such
gent qui estoient si ligierement armé. La somme del conseil
people who were so lightly armed The sum of-the counsel
fu tels que se Johannis venoit mais, que il istroient fors et
was such that if Johanitsa came more that they would-go out and
se rengeroient devant lor ost, et que enqui l'atendroient,
themselves would-range before their host and that there him-would-await
et d'enqui ne se movroient. Et i fisent crier par tote
and from-there not themselves would-move And there they-had cried through all
l'ost que nus ne fust si hardiz qu'il passast cel ordenement
the-host that anyone not might-be so bold that-he should-pass that order
por cri ne por noise que il oïst. Et fu devisé que Joffrois
for cry nor for noise that he might-hear And was devised that Geoffrey
li mareschaus garderoit devers la cité, et Manassiers de l'Isle.
the marshal would-guard toward the city and Manasses of the-Isle

357 Ensi trespasserent cele nuit trosque al joesdi matin des foiries
Thus they-passed that night until to-the Thursday morning of-the holidays
des Pasques; et oïrent la messe, et mengierent al disner.
of-the Easter and heard the mass and ate at-the dinner
Et li Commain corent trosque à lor paveillons; et li criz
And the Cumans run as-far to their pavilions and the cry
lieve, et il corent as armes, et s'en issent de l'ost
rises and they run to-the arms and themselves-thence come-out from the-host
totes lor batailles ordenées, si con il avoient devisé devant.
all their battalions ordered so as they had devised before
358 Li cuens Loeys s'en issi premiers à la soe bataille;
The count Louis himself-thence came-out first with the his battalion
et commence les Commains à porsevre, et mande
and begins the Cumans to pursue and sends-word-to
l'empereor Baudoin que il le sivist. Halas! con malement
the-emperor Baldwin that he him should-follow Alas how badly
il tindrent ce qu'il avoient devant devisé le soir! que
they kept this that-they had before devised the evening for
ensi porsuirent les Commains bien près de deus lieues loing,
thus they-pursued the Cumans well near of two leagues away
et assemblerent à als, et les chacierent grant piece. Et li
and joined to them and them chased great while And the
Commain recuerent sor als, et commencent à huer et à traire.
Cumans turned-back upon them and begin to shout and to shoot
359 Et li no orent bataile d'autre gent que de chevaliers, qui
And the ours had battalion of-other people than of knights who
ne savoient mie assez d'armes; si s'escomencent à esfreer et
not knew at-all enough of-arms so themselves-begin to take-fright and
à desconfire. Et li cuens Loeys, qui fu assemblés premiers,
to be-routed And the count Louis who was joined first
fu navré en deus leus mult durement; et li Comain et li
was wounded in two places very hard and the Cumans and the

Blac les comencierent à envaïr; et li cuens ot esté chaüs,
Vlachs them began to assail and the count had been fallen
et uns suens chevaliers, qui ot non Johans de Friaise, fu
and a his-own knight who had name John of Friaize was
descendus, si lo mist sor son cheval. Assez fu de la
dismounted so him put on his horse Plenty there-were of the
gent le conte Loeys qui li distrent: «Sire, alez vos
people (of-)the count Louis who to-him said Lord go you
en, quar trop malement navrez estes en deus leus.» Et
thence for too badly wounded you-are in two places And
il dist: «Ne place dam le Dieu que jamais me soit
he said Not may-it-please Lord the God that ever to-me be
reprové que je fuie de champ, et laise l'empereor.»
reproached that I flee from field and leave the-emperor
L'emperere, qui mult ere chargiez endroit lui, rapeloit sa 360
The-emperor who very was pressed in-place himself called-back his
gent; si lor disoit que il ne fuiroit jà, et qu'il ne
people so to-them said that he not would-flee ever and that-they not
le laissassent mie: et bien tesmoignent cil qui là furent
him should-leave at-all and well testify those who there were
que onques mais cors de chevalier mielz ne se defendi de
that ever before body of knight better not itself defended than
lui. Ensi dura cil estors longuement: telx i ot qui bien
him Thus lasted that fight long such there were who well
le firent, et telx i ot qui le guerpirent. A la parfin,
it did and such there were who him forsook At the end
si cum Diex sueffre les mesaventures, si furent desconfit.
so as God suffers the mischances so they-were routed
Iqui remest el champ l'empereres Baudoins qui onques
There remained on-the field the-emperor Baldwin who ever

ne volt fuir, et li cuens Loeys: l'empereres Baudoins fu
not wished to-flee and the count Louis the-emperor Baldwin was
pris vis, et li cuens Loeys fu ocis.
taken alive and the count Louis was killed
361 Halas! com dolereuse perte fu là faite! Là fu perduz li
Alas how sorrowful loss was there made There was lost the
evesques Pierres de Bethleem, et Estenes del Perche li freres
bishop Peter of Bethlehem and Stephen of-the Perche the brother
le conte Joffroi, et Renaus de Monmirail li freres le conte
(of-)the count Geoffrey and Renaud of Montmirail the brother (of-)the count
de Nevers, et Mahius de Vaslencort, et Roberz de Rançoi,
of Nevers and Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of Ronsoy
Johans de Friaise, Gautiers de Nuilli, Ferris d'Ierre, Johans ses
John of Friaize Walter of Neuilly Ferri of-Yerres John his
freres, Eustaices de Heumont, Johans ses freres, Baudoins de
brother Eustace of Heumont John his brother Baldwin of
Nuevile, et mult des autres dont li livres ne parole mie ci. Et
Neuville and many of-the others of-whom the book not speaks at-all here And
li autre qui porent eschamper, s'en vinrent fuiant à l'ost.
the others who could escape themselves-thence came fleeing to the-host

The Retreat

XLI

Villehardouin rides out from his gate, gathers the fugitives into his battalion, and with Manasses of the Isle holds the enemy off until evening. He and the blind doge agree to keep the camp still until night and then withdraw, the doge leading and Villehardouin in the rear, leaving no one behind, toward Rodosto. The year is 1205. A company with Count Gerard of Lombardy takes a quicker road to Constantinople, to its blame, and its news makes the cardinal and Conon of Béthune fear the rest are lost.

Et quant ce vit Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, 362
And when this saw Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
qui gardoit devant une des portes de la cité, si s'en
who guarded before one of-the gates of the city so himself-thence
issi plus tost que il pot à la gent que il ot; et
came-out most soon that he could with the people that he had and
manda Manassier de l'Isle, qui gardoit l'autre porte, que il
sent-word-to Manasses of the-Isle who guarded the-other gate that he
le suist isnellement. Et chevaucha à tote sa bataille,
him should-follow swiftly And he-rode with all his battalion
encontre les fuianz, grant aleure; et li fuiant se
to-meet the fleeing great pace and the fleeing themselves
recueillirent tuit à lui. Et Manassiers de l'Isle, qui vint au
gathered all to him And Manasses of the-Isle who came at-the
plus tot que il pot à la sue gent, si se joinst à lui; et
most soon that he could with the his people so himself joined to him and
lors orent plus grant bataille; et tuit cil qui vindrent en la
then they-had more great battalion and all those who came in the
chace, qu'il porent retenir, si les mistrent en lor bataille.
chase that-they could retain so them they-put in their battalion

363 Et ceste chace si fu entre none et vespres ensinques retenue.
And this chase so was between nones and vespers thus held
Li plusor furent si esfreé que il fuioient par devant als
The most were so frightened that they fled in front-of them
trosque enz es paveillons et enz es hostiels. Et ensi cele
as-far in into-the pavilions and in into-the lodgings And thus that
chace fu recovrée con vos avez oï; et li Comain s'aresterent,
chase was recovered as you have heard and the Cumans themselves-stopped
et li Blac et li Grieu qui chaçoient. Et hardierent à cele
and the Vlachs and the Greeks who chased And they-harried at that
bataille as ars et as sajettes; et cil de la bataile se
battalion with-the bows and with-the arrows and those of the battalion themselves
tindrent quoi, les vis devers als. Ensi furent trosque à vespre
held quiet the faces toward them Thus they-were until to evening
bas, et li Comain et li Blac se recomencierent à retraire.
low and the Cumans and the Vlachs themselves began-again to withdraw
364 Lors manda Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin, li mareschaus de
Then sent-for Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of
Champaigne et de Romenie, le duc de Venise en l'ost, qui
Champagne and of Romania the doge of Venice in the-host who
viels hom ere et gote ne véoit, mais mult ere sages et
old man was and a-drop not saw but very he-was wise and
preuz et vigueros; et li manda que il venist à lui en sa
worthy and vigorous and to-him sent-word that he should-come to him in his
bataille, où il se tenoit el champ; et il si fist. Et quant
battalion where he himself held on-the field and he so did And when
li mareschaus le vit, si l'apele à conseil d'une part tot seul, et
the marshal him saw so him-calls to counsel on-one side all alone and
si li dist: «Sire, vos véez la mesaventure qui nos est avenue:
so to-him said Lord you see the mischance which to-us is happened
perdu avons l'empereor Baudoin et le conte Loeys, et lo plus
lost we-have the-emperor Baldwin and the count Louis and the most

de nostre gent, et de la meillor. Or pensons del remanant
of our people and of the best Now let-us-think of-the remnant
garir; que se Dieu n'en prent pitiez, nos sommes pardu.»
to-save for if God not-thereof takes pity we are lost
Ensi fu la fins de lor conseil: que li dux de Venise 365
Thus was the end of their counsel that the doge of Venice
s'en riroit en l'ost, et conforteroit la gent; et que
himself-thence would-go-back into the-host and would-comfort the people and that
chascuns fust armez de ses armes, et se tenist coi
each should-be armed with his arms and himself should-hold quiet
en sa heberge et en son paveillon; et Joffrois li mareschaus
in his lodging and in his pavilion and Geoffrey the marshal
remanroit en sa bataille et defors l'ost toz ordenez tant que
would-remain in his battalion and outside the-host all ordered until that
il seroit nuiz, porce que lor anemi ne les veissent esmovoir;
it would-be night for-this that their enemies not them should-see move
et quant il seroit nuiz, si se movroient de devant la
and when it would-be night so themselves would-move from before the
vile; li dux de Venise s'en iroit devant, et Joffrois li
town the doge of Venice himself-thence would-go before and Geoffrey the
marechaus feroit l'ariere garde, et cil qui avec lui estoient.
marshal would-make the-rear guard and those who with him were
Ensique attendirent trosqu'à la nuit; et quant il fu nuiz, li dux 366
Thus-so they-waited until-to the night and when it was night the doge
de Venise se parti de l'ost, si con devisé ere, et Joffrois li
of Venice himself departed from the-host so as devised it-was and Geoffrey the
mareschaus fist l'ariere garde. Et s'en partirent le petit
marshal made the-rear guard And themselves-thence departed the little
pas, et enmenerent tote lor gent à pié et à cheval, et navrez
pace and led all their people on foot and on horse both wounded
et altres; que onques ne laissierent nelui. Et chevauchierent
and others for ever not they-left anyone And they-rode

vers une cité qui siet sor mer, que l'on appelle Rodestoc,
toward a city which sits on sea which one calls Rodosto
qui bien ere trois jornées loing d'iqui. Ensi se partirent
which well was three days away from-there Thus themselves departed
d'Andrenople con vos avez oï; et ceste aventure si avint en
from-Adrianople as you have heard and this adventure so happened in
l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus cens cinq anz.
the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred five years
367 Et cele nuit que l'oz se parti d'Andrenople, si avint
And that night that the-host itself departed from-Adrianople so happened
que une compaignie s'en parti, pour aler plus tost en
that a company itself-thence departed for to-go more soon to
Costantinoble et plus droit; et en reçurent grant blasme.
Constantinople and more straight and thereof received great blame
En cele compaignie fu un cuens de Lombardie qui avoit
In that company was a count of Lombardy who had
non li cuens Girarz, de la terre del marchis; et Huedes
name the count Gerard of the land of-the marquis and Odo
de Ham, qui sires ert d'un chastel que on apele Ham en
of Ham who lord was of-a castle that one calls Ham in
Vermendois; et Jehans de Maseroles, et bien autre, trosques
Vermandois and John of Mazeroles and well others as-far
à vint cinq chevaliers, que li livres ne raconte mie.
to twenty five knights whom the book not recounts at-all
368 Et ensi en vinrent puis la desconfiture qui ot esté le
And thus thence they-came after the defeat which had been the
joiedi à soir; si vindrent en Costantinople le semadi à soir;
Thursday at evening so they-came into Constantinople the Saturday at evening
si i avoit cinq jornées granz. Et conterent ceste novelle
so there had five days great And they-told this news
le cardonal Perron de Chappes, qui ere de par l'apostoile
(to-)the cardinal Peter of Capua who was on behalf-of the-pope

de Rome Innocent, et Cuenon de Betune qui gardoit
of Rome Innocent and (to-)Conon of Béthune who guarded
Costantinoble, et Milon le Braibant, et les autres bones
Constantinople and (to-)Miles the Brabançon and the other good
genz. Et sachiez qu'il en furent mult esfreé, et cuiderent
people And know that-they thereof were very frightened and thought
bien que li remananz fust toz perduz, que il avoient
well that the remnant were all lost which they had
devant Andrenople laissié; que il n'en savoient novelle.
before Adrianople left for they not-thereof knew news

The March to Rodosto

XLII

At dawn at Pamphilon the retreating host meets Peter of Bracieux and Payen of Orléans with a hundred knights from beyond the Arm, who weep at the news that the emperor and their lord Count Louis are lost and take the rearguard. Johanitsa, finding the camp at Adrianople gone, follows but does not catch them. They rest at Chariopolis, ride through the night to Rodosto, which does not resist, and send word by sea to Constantinople that they are safe.

Or lairons de cels de Costantinoble, qui en grant dolor 369
Now we-will-leave of those of Constantinople who in great sorrow
sont, si revenrons al duc de Venise et à Joffroi le
are so we-will-come-back to-the doge of Venice and to Geoffrey the
mareschal, qui chevauchierent tote la nuit que il repairerent
marshal who rode all the night that they returned
d'Andrenople trosque à l'ajornée; et lors vinrent à une cité
from-Adrianople until to the-dawn and then they-came to a city
que on appele Panfile. Or oiez des aventures queles eles
that one calls Pamphilon Now hear of-the chances what they

sunt, si con Diex volt: qu'en cele cité avoient la nuit geu
are so as God wished that-in that city had the night lain
Pierres de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens, et totes les genz de
Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans and all the people of
la terre le conte Loeys; et estoient bien cent chevalier
the land (of-)the count Louis and were well hundred knights
de mult bone gent, et sept vins serjant à cheval, qui
of very good people and seven score sergeants on horse who
venoient d'oltre le Braz, et aloient à l'ost à Andrenople.
came from-beyond the Arm and went to the-host at Adrianople
370 Et quant il virent la route venir, si corurent as armes
And when they saw the company come so they-ran to-the arms
mult isnelement; que il cuidoient que ce fussent li Grieu.
very swiftly for they thought that these were the Greeks
Si s'armerent, et envoierent savoir quex genz ce estoient;
So themselves-armed and sent to-know what people these were
et cil troverent que ce estoient cil qui retornoient de la
and those found that these were those who returned from the
desconfiture. Si retornerent à als, et lor distrent que perduz
defeat So they-returned to them and to-them said that lost
ert li empereres Baudoins, et lor sires li cuens Loeys, de
was the emperor Baldwin and their lord the count Louis of
cui terre et de cui païs il estoient, et de cui maisnie.
whose land and of whose country they were and of whose household
371 Plus dolorose novele ne lor peust-on conter. Là veissiez
More sorrowful news not to-them could-one tell There you-might-see
mainte lerme plorer, et mainte palme battre de duel et
many-a tear weep and many-a palm beat from grief and
de pitié. Et alerent encontre als tuit armé si cum il
from pity And they-went to-meet them all armed so as they
estoient, et tant que il vinrent à Joffroi le mareschal de
were and so-far that they came to Geoffrey the marshal of

Champaigne, qui l'ariere garde faisoit à mult grant mesaise.
Champagne who the-rear guard made in very great discomfort
Que Johannis, li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie, ere venuz
For Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria was come
à l'enjornée devant Andrenople à tote s'ost; et trova que
at the-dawn before Adrianople with all his-host and found that
cil s'en furent alé; et chevalcha après lor rote tant
those themselves-thence were gone and rode after their company until
qu'il fu grans jors; et quant il ne les trova, si en fu
that-it was full day and when he not them found so thereof he-was
mult dolanz; et ce fu granz joie que il nes i trova;
very sorrowful and this was great joy that he not-them there found
que perdu fussent sanz nul recovrer, se il les eust trovez.
for lost they-would-be without any recovery if he them had found
«Sire, font-il à Joffroi le mareschal, que volez que nos faciens? 372
Lord say-they to Geoffrey the marshal what you-wish that we should-do
Nos ferons quanque il vous plaira.» Et cil lor respont:
We will-do whatever it you will-please And that-one to-them answers
«Vos véez bien coment il nos est; vos iestes frois et novel, et
You see well how it to-us is you are fresh and new and
vostre cheval; si ferez l'ariere garde, et je m'en irai
your horses so you-will-make the-rear guard and I myself-thence will-go
devant, tenir nostre gent qui sont mult esfreé, qui grant mestier
before to-hold our people who are very frightened who great need
en ont.» Issi cum il le devisa, il le firent mult volentiers.
thereof have Thus as he it devised they it did very willingly
Si firent l'ariere garde mult bien et mult biel, come cil qui
So they-made the-rear guard very well and very fair as those who
bien le sorent faire; car il estoient bon chevalier et honoré.
well it knew-how to-do for they were good knights and honored

373 Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne chevaucha devant
Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne rode before
et les conduist; et chevaucha trosques à une cité qui
and them led and rode as-far to a city which
Cariople ert apelée. Si vit que lor cheval estoient lassé
Chariopolis was called So he-saw that their horses were weary
de ce que il avoient tote nuit chevauchié; et entra en la
from this that they had all night ridden and entered into the
cité, et les fist herbergier bien endroit hore de midi. Et
city and them had lodged well about hour of noon And
donerent lor chevals à mengier; et il méismes mengierent
they-gave their horses to eat and they themselves ate
ce que il porent trover, et ce fu pou.
this that they could find and this was little
374 Ensique furent tot le jor trosque à la nuit en cele cité. Et
Thus-so they-were all the day until to the night in that city And
Johanis li rois de Blaquie les ot tote jor suiz à tote
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia them had all day followed with all
sa route, et se herberja bien à deus liues d'als. Et
his company and himself lodged well at two leagues from-them And
quant il fu nuiz, cil qui estoient en la cité si s'armerent
when it was night those who were in the city so themselves-armed
tuit et s'en issirent fors. Joffrois li mareschaus fist
all and themselves-thence came-out out Geoffrey the marshal made
l'avant-garde, et cil firent l'ariere-garde qui le jor l'avoient
the-vanguard and those made the-rearguard who the day it-had
faite. Ensi chevauchierent tote nuit et l'endemain à grant
made Thus they-rode all night and the-next-day in great
dote et à grant paine, tant que il vindrent à la cité
dread and with great pain until that they came to the city
de Rodestoc, qui ere poplée de Grex, mult riche et mult
of Rodosto which was peopled with Greeks very rich and very

forz. Et cil ne s'oserent desfendre; et nos gens entrerent
strong And those not themselves-dared defend and our people entered
enz, si se herbergierent; et lors si furent asseur.
in so themselves lodged and then so they-were secure
Ensi s'eschamperent cil de l'ost d'Andrenople con vos avez 375
Thus themselves-escaped those of the-host of-Adrianople as you have
oï. Lors pristrent conseil en la cité de Rodestoc, et distrent
heard Then they-took counsel in the city of Rodosto and said
que il avoient plus grant paor de Costantinoble que d'als
that they had more great fear for Constantinople than for-them
méismes. Si pristrent bons messages, et les envoierent par
themselves So they-took good envoys and them sent by
mer et par jor et par nuit, et manderent à cels de la vile
sea both by day and by night and sent-word to those of the town
que il ne s'esmaïassent mie (que il estoient eschampé),
that they not themselves-should-dismay at-all for they were escaped
et que il repareroient à els au plus tost que il poroient.
and that they would-return to them at-the most soon that they could

Seven Thousand Pilgrims Desert

XLIII

Five Venetian ships with seven thousand men aboard, William of Béthune among them, are leaving Constantinople for home. The cardinal and Conon of Béthune beg them in tears to stay, and at Rodosto Villehardouin begs again, but they sail at dawn, Peter of Frouville stealing aboard by night, to lasting shame. Henry, hurrying from Adramyttium, leaves his twenty thousand Armenians behind, and at Cortacople he and Anseau of Courcelles each take the other for Greeks. At Rodosto Henry is made regent, and the country people kill or take all the Armenians.

376 En cel point que li message vindrent, estoient cinq nés chargies
In that point that the messengers came were five ships laden
de pelerins et de chevaliers et de serjanz en Constantinoble
with pilgrims and with knights and with sergeants in Constantinople
(des nés de Veniciens, mult granz et mult beles), qui voidoient
of-the ships of Venetians very great and very fine which emptied
la terre et s'en aloient en lor païs. Et avoit bien
the land and themselves-thence went into their country And there-had well
es cinq nés sept mille homes à armes; et iere Guillaume li
in-the five ships seven thousand men at arms and was William the
avoez de Betune li uns, et Baudoins d'Aubeigni, et Johans de
advocate of Béthune the one and Baldwin of-Aubigny and John of
Virsin, qui ere de la terre le conte Loeys et ses hom liges,
Virsin who was of the land (of-)the count Louis and his man liege
et bien cent autre chevalier que li livres ne raconte mie.
and well hundred other knights that the book not recounts at-all
377 Maistre Pierres de Chappes, qui ere cardonialx de par
Master Peter of Capua who was cardinal on behalf-of
l'apostoile de Rome Innocent, et Cuenes de Betune, qui gardoit
the-pope of Rome Innocent and Conon of Béthune who guarded
Costantinople, et Miles li Braibanz, et des autres bones genz
Constantinople and Miles the Brabançon and of-the other good people

granz parz, alerent as cinq nés; et lor prioient o plaintes
great parts went to-the five ships and them prayed with laments
et o plors, que il aussent merci et pitié de la crestienté
and with tears that they should-have mercy and pity of the Christendom
et de lor seignors liges, qui estoient perdu en la bataille, et
and of their lords liege who were lost in the battle and
que il demorassent por Dieu. Il n'en vorrent oïr nule
that they should-remain for God They not-thereof wished to-hear any
parole, ainz s'en partirent del port: si collerent lor
word but themselves-thence departed from-the port so hoisted their
voiles et s'en alerent, si con Diex volt, si que uns venz
sails and themselves-thence went so as God wished so that a wind
les mena el port de Rodestoc; et ce fu l'endemain que
them led into-the port of Rodosto and this was the-next-day that
cil i furent venu qui estoient repairié de la desconfiture.
those there were come who were returned from the defeat
Autel proiere con cil avoient fait de Costantinoble à 378
Such prayer as those had made of Constantinople with
lermes et à plors, autel priere lor firent cil de Rodestoc;
tears and with weeping such prayer them made those of Rodosto
et lor dist Joffrois li mareschaus (et cil qui avec lui
and them told Geoffrey the marshal and those who with him
estoient) que il aussent merci et pitié de la terre, et que
were that they should-have mercy and pity of the land and that
il remansissent; que jamais à si grant besoing ne porroient
they should-remain for ever at so great need not they-could
seccorre nulle terre. Icil respondirent que il s'en
succor any land Those answered that they themselves-thereof
conseilleroient, et qu'il lor respondroient l'endemain. Or
would-take-counsel and that-they them would-answer the-next-day Now
oiez l'aventure qui la nuit avint en cele vile.
hear the-adventure which the night happened in that town

379 Il i avoit un chevalier de la terre le conte Loeys, qui
It there had a knight of the land (of-)the count Louis who
Pierres de Froeville avoit non, qui ere prisiés et de grant non.
Peter of Frouville had name who was esteemed and of great name
Et s'en embla la nuit, et laissa tot son hernois et sa
And himself-thence stole the night and left all his baggage and his
gent, et se mist en la nef Johan de Virsin, qui est en la terre
people and himself put in the ship (of-)John of Virsin who is in the land
le conte Loeys de Blois et de Chartein. Et cil des cinq
(of-)the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres And those of-the five
nés qui respondre devoient al maitin à Joffroi le mareschal
ships who to-answer were-to at-the morning to Geoffrey the marshal
et al duc de Venise, si tost con il virent le jor, si collerent
and to-the doge of Venice so soon as they saw the day so hoisted
lor voiles, et s'en alerent sanz parler à nullui. Mult
their sails and themselves-thence went without speaking to anyone Much
en reçurent grant blasme en celui païs où il alerent et
thereof they-received great blame in that country where they went and
en celui dont il partirent, et Pierres de Froeville plus grant
in that whence they departed and Peter of Frouville more great
que tuit li autre. Et por ce dit hom que mult fait mal, qui
than all the others And for this says one that much does ill who
por paor de mort fait chose qui li est reprovée à toz jorz.
for fear of death does thing which to-him is reproached at all days
380 Or vos lairons de cels, si dirons de Henri le frere
Now to-you we-will-leave of those so we-will-tell of Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, qui avoit l'Andremite
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople who had the-Adramyttium
guerpie que il avoit conquise, et iert passez à la cité
forsaken which he had conquered and was crossed to the city
d'Avie et s'en venoit vers Andrenople por l'empereor
of-Abydos and himself-thence came toward Adrianople for the-emperor

Baudoin son frere seccoure. Et avec lui s'en estoient
Baldwin his brother to-succor And with him themselves-thence were
passé li Hermin de la terre, qui li avoient aidié vers
crossed the Armenians of the land who him had helped against
les Grieux, bien vint mil à totes lor fames et à
the Greeks well twenty thousand with all their wives and with
toz lor enfanz; qu'il n'osoient remanoir el païs.
all their children for-they not-dared to-remain in-the country
Et lors li vint la novele, des Grex qui estoient eschapé de 381
And then him came the news from-the Greeks who were escaped from
la desconfiture, que ses freres l'empereres Baudoins ere perduz,
the defeat that his brother the-emperor Baldwin was lost
et li cuens Loeys, et li autre baron. Et puis revint novele
and the count Louis and the other barons And then came-again news
de cels de Rodestoc qui estoient eschapé; et li mandoient
from those of Rodosto who were escaped and him sent-word
que il se hastast plus tost de venir à als. Et porce que
that he himself should-hasten more soon to come to them And because that
il se volt haster por plus tost venir, si laissa les Hermins,
he himself wished to-hasten for more soon to-come so he-left the Armenians
qui estoient genz à pié, et avoient lor chars et lor fames et
who were people on foot and had their carts and their wives and
lor anfanz; et porce que il ne porent si tost venir, et que
their children and because that they not could so soon come and that
il cuida que il venissent bien seurement et que il n'eussent
he believed that they would-come well surely and that they not-had
garde, si se herberja à un casal qui Cortacople ert apelez.
fear so himself lodged at a village which Cortacople was called
En icel jor méismes i vint Ansials de Corceles, li niés 382
On that day same there came Anseau of Courcelles the nephew
Joffroi le mareschal, cui il avoit envoié es parties de
(of-)Geoffrey the marshal whom he had sent into-the parts of

Macré et de Traïnople et de la Baie, devers une terre qui
Makri and of Trajanopolis and of the Bay toward a land which
li estoit otroiée à avoir; et les gens qui estoient parti de
to-him was granted to have and the people who were departed from
Finepople, de Renier de Trit, estoient ensemble o lui. En
Philippopolis of Renier of Trith were together with him In
cele compaignie, avoit bien cent chevaliers de mult bone
that company there-had well hundred knights of very good
gent, et bien cinq cens serjanz à cheval, qui tuit s'en
people and well five hundred sergeants on horse who all themselves-thence
aloient à Andrenople por l'empereor Baudoin secore.
went to Adrianople for the-emperor Baldwin to-succor
383 Or lor vint une novele autressi cum à l'autre gent, que
Now them came a news likewise as to the-other people that
l'emperieres ere desconfiz et sa compaignie; et tornerent
the-emperor was routed and his company and they-turned
altressi con por venir à Rodestoc, et vindrent por herbergier
likewise as for to-come to Rodosto and came for to-lodge
à Cortacople, un casal où Henris li freres l'empereor
at Cortacople a village where Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor
Baudoin ere herbergiez. Et quant cil les virent venir, si
Baldwin was lodged And when those them saw come so
corurent à lor armes; que il cuiderent que cil fuissient
they-ran to their arms for they believed that those were
Grieu, et cil recuiderent altressi d'aus. Et aprocha tant
Greeks and those believed-in-turn likewise of-them And approached so-far
la chose que il s'entreconurent; si virent mult volentiers
the thing that they each-other-knew so saw very gladly
li uns l'autre, et furent plus seur, et hebergierent la nuit
the one the-other and were more safe and lodged the night
el casal trosque à l'endemain.
in-the village until to the-next-day

Et l'andemain murent et chevauchierent droit vers Rodestoc, 384
And the-next-day they-set-out and rode straight toward Rodosto
et vinrent le soir en la vile; et troverent le duc de Venise
and came the evening into the town and found the doge of Venice
et Joffroi le mareschal, et les autres qui de la desconfiture
and Geoffrey the marshal and the others who from the defeat
erent eschapé, qui mult volentiers les virent; et i ot mainte
were escaped who very gladly them saw and there had many-a
lerme plorée de pitié de lor amis. Ha! Diex, quex damages
tear wept from pity of their friends Ah God what harm
fu que ceste assemblée de ceste force qui estoit iqui ne fu
was that this gathering of this force which was there not was
avec les autres à Andrenople, quant l'empereres Baudoins i
with the others at Adrianople when the-emperor Baldwin there
fu! quar il n'i aussent riens perdu. Mais ne plot à Dieu.
was for they not-there would-have anything lost But not pleased to God
Ensi sejornerent l'endemain et l'autre jor après, et atornerent 385
Thus they-sojourned the-next-day and the-other day after and arranged
lor afaire. Et fu receuz Henris li freres l'empereor Baudoin
their affairs And was received Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin
en la seigneurie come baus de l'empire, en leu de son
into the lordship as regent of the-empire in place of his
frere. Et lors avint une mesaventure des Hermines qui
brother And then happened a mischance of-the Armenians who
venoient après Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin; que les
came after Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin for the
gens del païs s'assemblerent, si desconfirent les Hermines;
people of-the country themselves-assembled so routed the Armenians
et furent pris et mort et perdu tuit.
and were taken and dead and lost all

The Death of the Doge

XLIV

Johanitsa holds almost everything outside Constantinople, and beyond the Arm, Theodore Lascaris holds all but the Espigal. The regent garrisons Selymbria, and the barons send Bishop Nivelon and others to seek help from Rome, France, and Flanders. Henry Dandolo dies and is buried in Saint Sophia. When his Cumans go home, Johanitsa marches on Boniface, who has left the siege of Nauplia for Salonika. Henry takes Tzurulum, Arcadiopolis, and Vizye, his men storm Apros while it is still bargaining, and the terrified Greeks flee into Adrianople and Demotika.

386 Johans li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie fu à totes ses
John the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria was with all his
hoz, et ot tote porprise la terre; et li païs et les citez et
hosts and had all overrun the land and the country and the cities and
li chastel se tenoient à lui; et si Commain orent coru
the castles themselves held to him and his Cumans had run
trosque devant Costantinople. Henris li bauz de l'empire, et
as-far-as before Constantinople Henry the regent of the-empire and
li dux de Venise et Joffrois li mareschaus, erent encor en
the doge of Venice and Geoffrey the marshal were still in
Rodestoc, qui ere à trois jornées loing de Costantinoble. Et
Rodosto which was at three days far from Constantinople And
pristrent lor conseil; et garni li dux de Venise Rodestoc
they-took their counsel and garrisoned the doge of Venice Rodosto
de Veniciens, qu'il ere leur. Et l'endemain ordenerent lor
with Venetians for-it was theirs And the-next-day they-ordered their
batailles, et chevaucherent vers Constantinoble par lor jornées.
battalions and rode toward Constantinople by their day-stages
387 Et quant il vindrent à Salembrie, une cité qui ere à deus
And when they came to Selymbria a city which was at two
jornées de Costantinoble qui ere l'empereor Baudoin, Henri ses
days from Constantinople which was (of-)the-emperor Baldwin Henry his

freres la garni de sa gent; et chevalcherent al remanant
brother it garrisoned with his people and they-rode with-the remnant
trosque en Constantinoble, où il furent mult volentiers veu;
as-far into Constantinople where they were very gladly seen
que la gens del païs erent mult esfreé. Et n'ere mie de
for the people of-the country were very frightened And not-was at-all of
mervoile; que il avoient la terre si tote perdue, que il ne
marvel for they had the land so all lost that they not
tenoient, defors Costantinoble, fors que Rodestoc et Salembrie;
held outside Constantinople save that Rodosto and Selymbria
et tote la terre si tenoit Johans li rois de Blaquie et de
and all the land so held John the king of Wallachia and of
Bougrie. D'autre part le Bras de Saint-George, ne tenoient que
Bulgaria On-the-other side the Arm of Saint-George not they-held but
le cors de l'Espigal; et tote la terre si tenoit Toldres li Ascres.
the body of the-Espigal and all the land so held Theodore the Lascaris
Lors pristrent li baron un conseil, que il envoieroient à 388
Then took the barons a counsel that they would-send to
l'apostoile de Rome Innocent, et en France et en Flandres,
the-pope of Rome Innocent and into France and into Flanders
et par les autres terres, por querre secors. Por ce secors
and through the other lands for to-seek succor For this succor
fu envoiez Neveles li evesques de Soissons, et Nicholes
was sent Nivelon the bishop of Soissons and Nicholas
de Mailli, et Johans Bliaus; et li autre remestrent en
of Mailly and John Bliaud and the others remained in
Costantinoble à grant mesaie, com cil qui cremoient pardre
Constantinople at great distress as those who feared to-lose
la terre. Ensi furent trosque à la Pentecoste. Dedenz cel
the land Thus they-were until to the Pentecost Within that
sejor, avint un mult granz damages en l'ost; que Henris
sojourn happened a very great harm in the-host for Henry

Dandole prist une maladie; si fina et moru, et fu enterrez
Dandolo took a sickness so ended and died and was buried
à grant honor al mostier Sainte-Sophie.
with great honor at-the minster Saint-Sophia
389 Et quant vint la Pentecoste, Johans li rois de Blaquie et
And when came the Pentecost John the king of Wallachia and
de Bougrie ot fait mult de sa volenté en la terre; si ne
of Bulgaria had done much of his will in the land so not
pot plus ses Comainz tenir en la terre; que il ne porent
could more his Cumans hold in the land for they not could
plus soufrir l'ostoier por l'esté, ainz reparierent en
more endure the-campaigning for the-summer but returned into
lor païs. Et il, à tote s'ost de Bogres et de Grifons,
their country And he with all his-host of Bulgars and of Griffons
s'en ala sor le marchis vers Salenique. Et li marchis,
himself-thence went upon the marquis toward Salonika And the marquis
qui ot oï noveles de la desconfiture l'empereor Baudoin,
who had heard news of the defeat (of-)the-emperor Baldwin
guerpi le siege de Naples; si s'en ala à Salenique
forsook the siege of Nauplia so himself-thence went to Salonika
à tant con il pot avoir de gent, si la garni.
with so-many as he could have of people so it garrisoned
390 Henris li freres l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, à
Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople with
tant de gent con il mener pot, chevaucha sor les Griex
so-many of people as he to-lead could rode upon the Greeks
trosque à une cité que l'on apele le Churlot, qui est à
as-far to a city which one calls the Tzurulum which is at
trois jornées de Costantinople. Cele li fu rendue; et
three days from Constantinople That-one to-him was surrendered and
li jurerent li Grieu la fealté, qui malvaisement ere tenue
him swore the Greeks the fealty which badly was kept

à cel tens. Et chevaucha à la cité d'Archadiople, si la trova
at that time And he-rode to the city of-Arcadiopolis so it found
vuoide; que li Grieu ne l'i oserent atendre. Et d'iqui
empty for the Greeks not him-there dared to-await And from-there
chevaucha à la cité de Visoi, qui mult ere forz et bien
he-rode to the city of Vizye which very was strong and well
garnie de Griex; si li fu rendue. Et d'iqui chevaucha
garrisoned with Greeks so to-him was surrendered And from-there he-rode
à la cité de Naples, qui mult restoit bien garnie de Griex.
to the city of Apros which very was-also well garrisoned with Greeks
Cum il les voltrent assaillir, si quisent plait qu'il se 391
When they them wished to-assail so they-sought bargain that-they themselves
rendroient. Endementiers que il queroient plait d'une part,
would-surrender While that they sought bargain on-one side
cil de l'ost entroient de l'autre part en la cité, si que
those of the-host entered on the-other side into the city so that
Henris li balz de l'empire, et cil qui parloient del plait,
Henry the regent of the-empire and those who spoke of-the bargain
n'en sorent mot; ainz lor en pesa mult. Et li Franc
not-thereof knew word but them thereof grieved much And the Franks
commencent à ocire les Griex, et à gaignier les avoirs
begin to kill the Greeks and to win the goods
de la vile, et à prendre tot; si en i ot mult de morz
of the town and to take all so thereof there had many of dead
et de pris. Et en ceste maniere fu prise Naples; et enqui
and of taken And in this manner was taken Apros and there
sejorna l'os par trois jors. Et li Grieu furent si esfreé
sojourned the-host for three days And the Greeks were so frightened
de ceste occision, que il vuiderent totes les citez et les
of this slaughter that they emptied all the cities and the

chastiaux de la terre, et fuirent tuit dedenz Andrenople
castles of the land and fled all within Adrianople
et dedenz le Dimot, qui mult erent forz citez et bones.
and within the Demotika which very were strong cities and good

The Surrender of Serres

XLV

Johanitsa besieges Serres, where Hugh of Colemi is killed. The garrison yields for a safe-conduct sworn by twenty-five of his nobles, but after three days of courtesy he strips them, sends the poor to Hungary and the worthy to the headsman, and razes the castle. Henry besieges Adrianople behind palisades but cannot take it, and Peter of Bracieux is struck on the forehead by a mangonel stone. Harried, the host withdraws to Pamphilon for two months and raids toward Demotika.

392 En icel termine, avint que Johannis, li rois de Blaquie
In that time happened that Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
et de Bougrie, chevaucha sor le marchis à totes ses hoz,
and of Bulgaria rode upon the marquis with all his hosts
à une cité que on appelle la Serre. Et li marchis l'avoit
to a city which one calls the Serres And the marquis it-had
mult bien garnie de sa gent; qu'il avoit mis dedenz Hugon
very well garrisoned with his people for-he had put within Hugh
de Colemi, qui mult ere bons chevaliers et als hom, et
of Colemi who very was good knight and high man and
Guillaume d'Arle qui ere ses mareschals, et grant part de
William of-Arles who was his marshal and great part of
sa bone gent. Et Johannis li rois de Blaquie les assist;
his good people And Johanitsa the king of Wallachia them besieged
n'i ot gaires sis quant il ot pris le borc par force.
not-there had much sat when he had taken the borough by force

Et al borc prendre, lor avint mult granz domages; que
And at-the borough to-take them happened very great harm for
Hugues de Colemi i fu morz; si fu feruz parmi l'oil.
Hugh of Colemi there was dead so was struck through the-eye
Et quant cil fu morz, qui fu li mialdres d'aus toz, si furent 393
And when he was dead who was the best of-them all so were
li autre mult esfreé. Si se traistrent el chastel, qui
the others very frightened So themselves drew into-the castle which
mult ere forz; et Johannis les assist, et dreça ses perrieres
very was strong and Johanitsa them besieged and raised his petraries
et ses mangonniax. N'i sist mie longuement, quant cil
and his mangonels Not-there he-sat at-all long when those
de dedenz parlerent de plait faire; dont il furent blasmé, et
of within spoke of bargain to-make whereof they were blamed and
reprochié lor fu. Et li plais si fu tels que il rendirent
reproached to-them was And the bargain so was such that they surrendered
le chastel à Johannis; et Johannis lor fist jurer à vingt-cinq
the castle to Johanitsa and Johanitsa them had sworn by twenty-five
des plus halz homes que il avoit, que il les conduiroit
of-the most high men that he had that he them would-conduct
salvement, à toz lor chevaus et à totes lor armes et
safely with all their horses and with all their arms and
à tot lor harnois, à Salenique ou en Costantinoble ou
with all their baggage to Salonika or into Constantinople or
en Hongrie, lequel que il voldroient des trois.
into Hungary which that they would-wish of-the three
En ceste maniere fu rendue la Serre; et Johannis les fist 394
In this manner was surrendered the Serres and Johanitsa them had
issir fors, et logier lez lui as champs; et lor fist mult
come-out outside and lodged beside him in-the fields and them made very
bel semblant, et lor envoia ses presenz. Et si les tint par
fair semblance and them sent his presents And so them he-held for

trois jors, puis lor menti de quanque il lor ot convent; ainz
three days then them lied of whatever he them had covenanted but
les fist prendre, et tolir tot lor avoir, et mener en Blaquie,
them had taken and stripped all their goods and led into Wallachia
nuz et deschauz et à pié. Les povres et les menus qui ne
naked and unshod and on foot The poor and the small who not
valoient gaires, fist mener en Hungrie; et les autres qui
were-worth much he-had led into Hungary and the others who
auques valoient, fist les testes colper. Ensi mortel traïson fist
somewhat were-worth he-had the heads cut Thus mortal treason did
li rois de Blaquie con vos oez. Ici reçut l'oz une des plus
the king of Wallachia as you hear Here received the-host one of-the most
doloreuses pertes que onques feist. Et Johannis fist abatre
grievous losses that ever it-made And Johanitsa had cast-down
le chastel et la cité, et s'en rala vers le marchis.
the castle and the city and himself-thence went-back toward the marquis
395 Henris, li bals de l'empire, à tote la soe gent chevaucha vers
Henry the regent of the-empire with all the his people rode toward
Andrenople, si l'asist à mult grant peril; que il i avoit mult
Adrianople so it-besieged at very great peril for it there had very
grant gent dedenz et deforz, qui les tenoient si près que il
great people within and without who them held so close that they
ne pooient nul marchié avoir, ne forer, se pou non. Et lors si
not could any market have nor forage except little not And then so
se closent par defors de lices et de barres; et deviserent
themselves they-close by outside with palisades and with barriers and appointed
une partie de lor gent porce que il gardassent par defors lor
a part of their people for-this that they should-guard by outside their
lices et lor barres; et li autre assaudroient devers la vile.
palisades and their barriers and the others would-assail toward the town

Et firent engins de maintes manieres, et eschieles et mains 396
And they-made engines of many manners and ladders and many
autres engins; et mistrent grant paine à la vile prendre, mais ne
other engines and put great pain at the town to-take but not
pot estre; que la vile ere mult forz et mult bien garnie. Ainz
could be for the town was very strong and very well garrisoned But
lor mesavint, que de lor gent i ot bleciez assez; et uns de
them mischanced that of their people there had wounded plenty and one of
lor bons chevaliers, qui ot nom Pierres de Braieceul, fu feruz
their good knights who had name Peter of Bracieux was struck
d'une piere de mangonel el front, et dut estre morz; mais
with-a stone of mangonel in-the forehead and ought to-be dead but
il gari par la volenté de Dieu, et en fu portez en litiere.
he recovered by the will of God and thence was carried in litter
Et quant il virent que il ne poroient rien faire à 397
And when they saw that they not could anything do at
la vile, si s'en parti Henris li bals de l'empire et
the town so himself-thence departed Henry the regent of the-empire and
l'oz des François. Et furent mult hardoié de la gent de
the-host of-the French And they-were much harried by the people of
la terre et des Grex; et chevauchierent par lor jornées
the land and by-the Greeks and rode by their day-stages
trosque à une cité que on apele la Panphile, et se
as-far to a city which one calls the Pamphilon and themselves
herbergierent dedenz, et sejornerent par deus mois iqui. Et
lodged within and sojourned for two months there And
firent chevauchiées vers le Dimot, et en mains leus où
made forays toward the Demotika and in many places where
il gaaignoient assez proies et autres avoirs. Et tindrent
they won much booty and other goods And they-held

l'ost en icele partie trosque à l'entrée de l'iver; et lor
the-host in that part until to the-entry of the-winter and them
venoit marcheandise de Rodestoc et de la marine.
came merchandise from Rodosto and from the shore

The Ruin of Philippopolis

XLVI

At Salonika Boniface grieves for Baldwin and for Serres. The Paulicians of Philippopolis, seeing Renier of Trith abandoned, offer the city to Johanitsa; Renier burns their quarter and shuts himself in Stenimaka for thirteen months. Johanitsa takes Philippopolis, kills the archbishop, flays or burns its nobles, and levels it. Henry garrisons Rusion under the two Thierrys and Vizye under Anseau of Cayeux, and leaves Apros to the Greek Branas. Three weeks after Christmas Johanitsa sends Cumans and Vlachs into Romania to aid Adrianople and Demotika.

398 Or lairons ici de Henri le bal de l'empire, si dirons de
Now we-will-leave here of Henry the regent of the-empire so we-will-tell of
Johannisse le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie, cui la Serre
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria to-whom the Serres
fu rendue, si con vos l'avez oï retraire ariere, et qui
was surrendered so as you it-have heard related before and who
ot ocis cels en traïson qui s'erent rendu à lui. Et ot
had killed those in treason who themselves-were surrendered to him And had
chevauchié vers Salenique, et ot sejorné longuement, et gasté
ridden toward Salonika and had sojourned long and wasted
grant partie de la terre. Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat
great part of the land The marquis Boniface of Montferrat
fu à Salenique mult iriez et mult dolenz de son seignor
was at Salonika very angered and very sorrowful for his lord

l'empereor Baudoin qui perduz ere, et des autres barons, et
the-emperor Baldwin who lost was and for-the other barons and
de son chastel de la Serre qu'il ot perdu, et de ses homes.
for his castle of the Serres that-he had lost and for his men
Et quant Johannis vit qu'il n'i porroit plus faire, si retorna
And when Johanitsa saw that-he not-there could more do so turned
arriers vers son païs à tote sa gent. Et cil de Phinepople
back toward his country with all his people And those of Philippopolis
(qui ere Renier de Trit, cui l'empereres Baudoins l'ot
which was (of-)Renier of Trith to-whom the-emperor Baldwin it-had
donée) orent oï que l'empereres Baudoins ere perduz et mult
given had heard that the-emperor Baldwin was lost and many
des barons, et li marchis la Serre avoit perdue; et virent
of-the barons and the marquis the Serres had lost and saw
que li parent Renier de Trit, et ses fils et ses niés l'avoient
that the kinsmen (of-)Renier of Trith and his sons and his nephews him-had
guerpi, et que il iert à pou de gent; et cuiderent que
forsaken and that he was with few of people and believed that
jamais li Franc n'aussent force. Une granz partie des gens,
ever the Franks not-would-have force A great part of-the people
qui estoient Popelican, s'en alerent à Johannise, et
who were Paulicians themselves-thence went to Johanitsa and
se rendirent à lui, et li distrent: «Sire, chevauche devant
themselves surrendered to him and him said Lord ride before
Phynepople ou envoie t'ost; nos te rendrons la vile tote.»
Philippopolis or send thy-host we thee will-surrender the town all
Quant Reniers de Trit le sot qui estoit en la vile, si dota que
When Renier of Trith it knew who was in the town so feared that
il ne le rendissent à Johannisse. Ensique s'en issi
they — it should-surrender to Johanitsa Thus-so himself-thence went-out
à tant de gent com il ot, et s'esmut à une ajornée, et
with so-many of people as he had and himself-set-out at a dawn and

vint par un des bors de la vile où li Popelican erent
came through one of-the boroughs of the town where the Paulicians were
à estage, qui erent rendu à Johannise; si mist le feu ou
at dwelling who were surrendered to Johanitsa so put the fire in-the
borc, et en art grant part. Et s'en ala au chastel
borough and thereof burned great part And himself-thence went to-the castle
d'Estanemac, qui ere à trois lieues d'iqui et ere garniz de
of-Stenimaka which was at three leagues from-there and was garrisoned with
sa gent, et entra dedenz. Et i fu puis longuement enserrez,
his people and entered within And there was after long shut-in
bien treize mois, à grant mesaise et à grant poverté; et menja
well thirteen months at great distress and at great poverty and ate
ses chevax par destresce. Et ere nuef jornées de Costantinoble
his horses by distress And was nine days from Constantinople
loing, que il ne pooient novelles oïr li un des autres.
far so-that they not could news hear the one of-the others
401 Lors envoia Johannis s'ost devant Phinepople; n'i sist
Then sent Johanitsa his-host before Philippopolis not-there it-sat
mie longuement quant cil de la vile se rendirent à
at-all long when those of the town themselves surrendered to
lui, et il les asseura. Et quant il les ot asseurez, si fist
him and he them assured And when he them had assured so had
occire tot avant l'archevesque de la vile, et les halz homes
killed very first the-archbishop of the town and the high men
fist escorchier toz viz, et tels i ot ardoir et tels i
he-had flayed all alive and such there he-had burned and such there
ot les testes colper; et tot le remanant en fist mener
he-had the heads cut and all the remnant thence he-had led
en chaene. Et la vile fist tote fondre et les tors et
in chain And the town he-had all collapsed and the towers and
les murs, et les halz palais et les riches maisons ardoir
the walls and the high palaces and the rich houses burned

et fondre. Ensi fu destruite la noble citez de Phynepople,
and collapsed Thus was destroyed the noble city of Philippopolis
qui ere des trois meillors de l'empire de Costantinoble.
which was of-the three best of the-empire of Constantinople
Or lairons de Phinepople et de Renier de Trit, qui est 402
Now we-will-leave of Philippopolis and of Renier of Trith who is
enserrez el chastel d'Estanemac; si revenrons à Henri, le
shut-in in-the castle of-Stenimaka so we-will-come-back to Henry the
frere l'empereor Baudoin, qui a sejorné à Panphyle trosque à
brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin who has sojourned at Pamphilon until to
l'entrée de l'iver. Et lors prist conseil à ses homes et à ses
the-entry of the-winter And then took counsel with his men and with his
barons; et li consels si fu telx, que il garniroit une cité que
barons and the counsel so was such that he would-garrison a city which
on apele la Rousse, qui ere en un mult plentereus leu, enmi la
one calls the Rusion which was in a very plentiful place amid the
terre. Et de cele garnison fu chevetaines Tierris de Los qui ere
land And of that garrison was captain Thierry of Loos who was
seneschaus, et Tyeris de Tendremonde qui ere conestables. Et
seneschal and Thierry of Termonde who was constable And
lor charja bien Henris li bals de l'empire sept vins chevaliers,
them entrusted well Henry the regent of the-empire seven score knights
et grant part de serjanz à cheval; et comanda que il
and great part of sergeants on horse and commanded that they
tenissent la guerre contre les Grex et maintenissent la marche.
should-hold the war against the Greeks and should-maintain the march
Et il s'en ala al remanant de sa gent trosque à la 403
And he himself-thence went with-the remnant of his people as-far to the
cité de Visoi, et la garni; et mist chevetaine Ansel de Kaeu,
city of Vizye and it garrisoned and put captain Anseau of Cayeux
et li charja bien six vins chevaliers, et de serjanz à cheval
and him entrusted well six score knights and of sergeants on horse

grant partie. Et une autre cité, qui Archadiople ert apelée,
great part And a other city which Arcadiopolis was called
garnirent li Venicien. Et la cité de Naples ot rendue li freres
garrisoned the Venetians And the city of Apros had rendered the brother
l'empereor Baudoin al Vernas, qui avoit la seror al roi
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin to-the Branas who had the sister to-the king
de France à fame, et ere uns Grieus qui se tenoit à als;
of France to wife and was a Greek who himself held to them
et nuls des Grieus ne se tenoit à als que cil. Et cil
and anyone of-the Greeks not himself held to them but that-one And those
de ces citez tindrent la guerre contre les Griex, et si firent
of these cities held the war against the Greeks and so made
mainte chevauchie; et on en fist mainte envers als. Henris
many-a foray and one thereof made many-a-one toward them Henry
se traist en Costantinoble al remainant de sa gent.
himself drew into Constantinople with-the remnant of his people
404 Et Johannis li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie ne s'oblia mie,
And Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria not himself-forgot at-all
qui mult fu riches et poestéis d'avoir; ainz porchaça grant
who very was rich and powerful of-goods but gathered great
gent de Commains et de Blas. Et quant vint à trois semaines
people of Cumans and of Vlachs And when came at three weeks
après Noël, si les envoia en la terre de Romenie, por aidier
after Christmas so them sent into the land of Romania for to-help
cels d'Andrenople et cels del Dimot; et quant cil furent plus
those of-Adrianople and those of-the Demotika and when those were more
creu, si s'esbaudirent et chevauchierent plus seurement.
increased so themselves-emboldened and rode more surely

The Defeat Near Rusion

XLVII

Thierry of Termonde raids a Cuman camp before Candlemas, but on his way back he meets seven thousand Cumans and Vlachs. His four battalions retreat at a walk, pressed one upon another, and within sight of Rusion they break; of six score knights barely ten escape, and Thierry is killed with most of his captains. The survivors abandon Rusion, and Henry hears the news at the Candlemas procession. Johanitsa gathers a vast host and storms Apros, executing Bègue of Fransures and razing the city.

Tierris de Tendremonde, qui chevetaines ere et conestables, 405
Thierry of Termonde who captain was and constable
fist une chevauchie al quart jor devant la feste sainte
made a foray at-the fourth day before the feast (of-)saint
Marie Chandelor; et chevaucha tote nuit bien à six vins
Mary Candlemas and rode all night well with six score
chevaliers, et la Rousse laissa garnie à pou de gent. Et
knights and the Rusion left garrisoned with few of people And
quant vint à l'enjornée, si vint à un casal où Commain
when came at the-dawn so came to a village where Cumans
et Blac estoient herbergié; et les sopristrent, si que cil
and Vlachs were lodged and them they-surprised so that those
n'en sorent mot qui estoient el casal. S'en ocistrent
not-thereof knew word who were in-the village So-thereof they-killed
assez, et gaignerent bien quarante de lor chevaus; et quant
plenty and won well forty of their horses and when
il orent fait cel forfait, si tornerent arriere vers la Rousse.
they had done that harm so turned back toward the Rusion
Et cele nuit méismes, li Commain et li Blac orent chevauchié 406
And that night same the Cumans and the Vlachs had ridden
por forfaire; et furent bien sept mil. Et vindrent à la matinée
for to-harm and were well seven thousand And came at the morning

devant la Rousse, et i furent grant piece; et la vile ere
before the Rusion and there were great while and the town was
garnie de pou de gent. Si fermerent lor portes, et monterent
garrisoned with few of people So they-shut their gates and mounted
sor les murs; et cil s'en tornerent arriere. N'orent mie
upon the walls and those themselves-thence turned back Not-they-had at-all
eslongie la vile plus d'une liue et demie, quant il encontrerent
distanced the town more of-a league and half when they met
la chevauchie des François dont Tierris de Tendremonde ere
the foray of-the French whereof Thierry of Termonde was
chevetaines. Quant li François les virent, si s'ordenerent en
captain When the French them saw so themselves-ordered in
quatre batailles qu'il avoient. Et fu lor conseils telx que
four battalions that-they had And was their counsel such that
il se trairoient à la Rosse tot le petit pas; et se Diex
they themselves would-draw to the Rusion all the little pace and if God
lor donoit que il i peussent venir, il seroient à sauveté.
them granted that they there could come they would-be at safety
407 Et li Commain et li Blac et li Grieu de la terre
And the Cumans and the Vlachs and the Greeks of the land
chevauchierent vers als; quar il avoient mult grant gent.
rode toward them for they had very great people
Et vienent à l'ariere garde; si les comencent à hardoier
And they-come to the-rear guard so them begin to harry
mult durement. L'ariere garde faisoit la masnie Tyerri de
very hard The-rear guard made the household (of-)Thierry of
Los, qui ere seneschaus et estoit repariez en Costantinoble;
Loos who was seneschal and was returned into Constantinople
et de cele gent ere chevetaines Vilains ses freres. Et li
and of that people was captain Vilain his brother And the
Commain et li Blac et li Grieu les tindrent mult près,
Cumans and the Vlachs and the Greeks them held very close

et navrerent mult de lor chevaus. Et fu li uz et la
and wounded many of their horses And was the shout and the
noise granz, si que par vive force et par destrece les
noise great so that by live force and by distress them
fisent hurter sor la bataile Andriu d'Urboise et Johan
made strike upon the battalion (of-)Andrew of-Urboise and John
de Choisi; et ensique alerent sofrant grant piece.
of Choisy and so they-went enduring great while
Et puis se resforcierent, si que il les fisent hurter sor 408
And then themselves they-redoubled so that they them made strike upon
la bataille Tierri de Tendremonde le conestable. Et ne
the battalion (of-)Thierry of Termonde the constable And not
tarda gaire grantment après qu'il les fisent hurter sor les
delayed much greatly after that-they them made strike upon the
batailles que Charles del Fraisnes faisoit. Et orent tant alé
battalions which Charles of-the Fresne made And they-had so-far gone
sofrant, que il virent la Rousse à mains de demie lieue.
enduring that they saw the Rusion at less than half league
Et cil adès les tindrent plus près; et fu la noise granz sor
And those ever them held more close and was the noise great upon
als, et mult i ot de bleciez d'alx et de lor chevax. Et si
them and many there had of wounded of-them and of their horses And so
com Diex volt souffrir les aventures, cil ne le porent plus
as God wished to-suffer the chances those not it could more
soufrir, ainz furent desconfit; car il furent pesament armé,
endure but were routed for they were heavily armed
et lor anemi legierement; et les commencent à occirre.
and their enemies lightly and them they-begin to kill
Halas! com dolorous jor ci ot à la crestienté; que de toz 409
Alas how grievous day here there-was to the Christendom for of all
les six vins chevaliers, n'en eschamperent mie plus de dix
the six score knights not-thereof escaped at-all more than ten

que tuit ne fussent mort ou pris. Et cil qui en eschamperent
that all not were dead or taken And those who thence escaped
s'en vindrent fuiant à la Rousse, et se recoillirent
themselves-thence came fleeing to the Rusion and themselves gathered
avec lor genz qui là dedenz estoient. Là fu morz Tierris
with their people who there within were There was dead Thierry
de Tendremonde li conestables, Oris de l'Isle qui mult ere
of Termonde the constable Orry of the-Isle who very was
bons chevaliers et proisiez, et Johans de Pompone, Andrius
good knight and esteemed and John of Pomponne Andrew
d'Urboise, Johans de Choisi, Guis de Covlans, Charles de
of-Urboise John of Choisy Guy of Conflans Charles of
Fraisne, Vilains li freres Tierri le seneschal. De toz
Fresne Vilain the brother (of-)Thierry the seneschal Of all
çaus qui là furent mort ou pris ne vos puet toz les
those who there were dead or taken not you can all the
noms raconter li livres. Une des graignors dolors et des
names recount the book One of-the greatest sorrows and of-the
graignors domages avint à cel jor, et des graignors pitiez
greatest harms happened at that day and of-the greatest pities
qui onques avenist à la crestienté de la terre de Romenie.
which ever happened to the Christendom of the land of Romania
410 Li Commain et li Grieu et li Blac retornerent ariere,
The Cumans and the Greeks and the Vlachs turned back
qui mult orent fait lor volenté en la terre, et mult
who much had done their will in the land and much
gaignié de bons chevals et de bons haubers. Et ceste
won of good horses and of good hauberks And this
mesaventure si avint le jor devant la veille madame sainte
mischance so happened the day before the eve (of-)my-lady saint
Marie Chandelor. Et li remananz qui fu eschapez de la
Mary Candlemas And the remnant which was escaped from the

desconfiture, et cil qui estoient à la Rousse, si tost cum
defeat and those who were at the Rusion so soon as
il fu nuiz, si guerpirent la vile; et s'en alerent tote
it was night so forsook the town and themselves-thence went all
nuit fuiant, et vindrent al maitin à la cité de Rodestoc.
night fleeing and came at-the morning to the city of Rodosto
Iceste dolorouse novele si vint à Henri le bal de l'empire, si 411
This grievous news so came to Henry the regent of the-empire so
com il aloit à la procession à Nostre-Damme de Blaquerne,
as he went to the procession to Our-Lady of Blachernae
le jor de la feste madame sainte Marie Chandelor. Sachiez
the day of the feast (of-)my-lady saint Mary Candlemas Know
que mult furent esfreé en Constantinoble, et cuiderent por
that much they-were frightened in Constantinople and believed for
voir qu'ils aussent la terre perdue. Lors prist conseil Henris
true that-they had the land lost Then took counsel Henry
li bals de l'empire que il garniroit Salembrie, qui ere à
the regent of the-empire that he would-garrison Selymbria which was at
deus jornées de Costantinoble; et i envoia Machaire de
two days from Constantinople and there sent Macaire of
Sainte Manehalt atot cinquante chevaliers por garder la vile.
Sainte Menehould with fifty knights for to-guard the town
Et lors, quant la novele vint à Johannis le roi de Blaquie 412
And then when the news came to Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
que ce ere à sa gent avenu, si ot mult grant joie; que ce
that this was to his people happened so had very great joy for this
ere une granz partie de la bone gent que li François aussent,
was a great part of the good people that the French had
que il avoient morz et pris. Lors manda par tote sa
that they had killed and taken Then summoned through all his
terre quanque il pot avoir de gent, et porchaça grant ost de
land whatever he could have of people and gathered great host of

Comains et de Griex et de Blas, et entra en Romanie. Et
Cumans and of Greeks and of Vlachs and entered into Romania And
li plus des citez se tindrent à lui, et tuit li chastel;
the most of-the cities themselves held to him and all the castles
et ot si grant gent que ce ne fu se merveille non.
and he-had so great people that this not was except marvel not
413 Quant li Venicien oïrent dire que il venoit à si grant
When the Venetians heard say that he came with so great
gent, si guerpirent Archadiople. Et Johannisses chevaucha
people so forsook Arcadiopolis And Johanitsa rode
à totes ses oz tant que il vint à la cité de Naples, qui
with all his hosts so-far that he came to the city of Apros which
ere garnie de Griex et de Latins, et ere le Vernas,
was garrisoned with Greeks and with Latins and was (of-)the Branas
qui l'enpereris (la seror le roi de France) avoit à fame;
who the-empress the sister (of-)the king of France had to wife
et des Latins ere chevetaines Begues de Fransures, uns
and of-the Latins was captain Bègue of Fransures a
chevaliers de la terre de Belveisis. Et Johannis li rois de
knight of the land of Beauvaisis And Johanitsa the king of
Blaquie fist assaillir la cité et la prist par force.
Wallachia had assailed the city and it took by force
414 Là ot si grant mortalité de gent qui furent occis, que
There had so great mortality of people who were killed that
ce ne fu se merveille non. Et Begues de Fransures fu
this not was except marvel not And Bègue of Fransures was
amenez devant Johannis, et il le fist occirre maintenant, et
brought before Johanitsa and he him had killed forthwith and
toz les autres qui noient valurent des Grex et des Latins;
all the others who anything were-worth of-the Greeks and of-the Latins
et totes les menues gens, fames et anfanz, en fist mener
and all the small people women and children thence he-had led

en Blaquie en prison. Lor fist tote la cité fondre et
into Wallachia in prison Then he-had all the city collapsed and
abatre, qui ere mult bone et mult riche, et en bon païs.
cast-down which was very good and very rich and in good country
Ensi fu destruite la citez de Naples com vos avez oï.
Thus was destroyed the city of Apros as you have heard

The Ruin of Rodosto

XLVIII

At that news panic empties Rodosto, strong and well garrisoned: the Venetians crowd into their ships, nearly drowning one another, and the sergeants flee by land. Johanitsa takes it without a blow, carries its people to Wallachia, and razes it, then Panidos, Heraclea, Daonion, and Tzurulum, keeping no covenant with those who surrender. His Cumans raid to the gates of Constantinople and take Athyra with great slaughter, until within five days of the city only Vizye and Selymbria remain.

D'iqui après à doze lieues, séoit la citez de Rodestoc sor mer, 415
From-there after at twelve leagues sat the city of Rodosto upon sea
qui mult ere riche et forz et granz, et garnie de Veniciens
which very was rich and strong and great and garrisoned with Venetians
mult bien. Et avec tot ce, ere venue une rote de serjanz
very well And with all this was come a company of sergeants
à cheval; et estoient bien dui mil, et erent venu altressi
on horse and they-were well two thousand and were come likewise
à la cité por garnir. Quant il oïrent dire que Naples estoit
to the city for to-garrison When they heard say that Apros was
prise par force, et que Johannis avoit fait occirre les genz qui
taken by force and that Johanitsa had had killed the people who
estoient dedenz, si se mist uns si granz esfroiz en als que
were within so itself put a so great fright in them that

il se desconfissent par als meismes. Si com Diex sueffre
they themselves routed by them selves So as God suffers
les mesaventures avenir as genz, li Venicien se ferirent
the mischances to-happen to-the people the Venetians themselves struck
es vaisials, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz mielz; si que por poi que
into-the vessels who sooner sooner who better better so that for little that
li uns ne néoit l'autre. Et li serjant à cheval, qui estoient de
the one — drowned the-other And the sergeants on horse who were of
France et de Flandre et des autres terres, s'enfuioient par terre.
France and of Flanders and of-the other lands themselves-fled by land
416 Or oiez quels mesaventure ce fu, qui ne lor ere mestiers;
Now hear what mischance this was which not to-them was need
quar la citez ere si forz et si close de bons murs et de
for the city was so strong and so closed with good walls and with
bones tors, que il ne trovassent jà qui les assaillist, ne
good towers that they not would-have-found ever who them should-assail nor
Johannis ne tornast jà cele part. Et quant Johannis
Johanitsa not would-have-turned ever that way And when Johanitsa
oï dire que il s'en estoient fui, qui ere bien à
heard say that they themselves-thence were fled who was well at
demie jornée loing de qui, chevaucha cele part. Li Grieu
half day far from there rode that way The Greeks
qui estoient en la cité remés se rendirent à lui, et il
who were in the city remained themselves surrendered to him and he
maintenant les fist prendre, et petiz et granz, fors cels qui
forthwith them had taken and small and great save those who
en eschaperent, et les fist mener en Blaquie; et fist la
thence escaped and them had led into Wallachia and had the
cité fondre et abatre. Ha! cum ce fu granz damages; car ce
city collapsed and cast-down Ah how this was great harm for this
ere une des meillors citez de Romenie, et des mielz séanz.
was one of-the best cities of Romania and of-the best situated

Après d'iqui, en avoit une altre qui Panedor ert appelée, 417
After from-there thereof there-had an other which Panidos was called
qui se rendi à lui; et il la fist abatre et fondre, et les genz
which itself surrendered to him and he it had cast-down and collapsed and the people
fist mener en Blaquie ausi com de celi. Et après chevaucha à
had led into Wallachia also as of that-one And after rode to
la cité d'Arecloie, qui séoit sor un bon port de mer, et ere as
the city of-Heraclea which sat upon a good port of sea and was to-the
Veniciens, qui l'avoient feblement garnie; si l'assailli et la prist
Venetians who it-had feebly garrisoned so it-assailed and it took
par force. Enqui rot grant occision de gent; et le remanant
by force There had-again great slaughter of people and the remnant
le fist mener en Blaquie, et fist fondre la cité comme les autres.
it had led into Wallachia and had collapsed the city like the others
Et d'iqui chevaucha à la cité de Daïn, qui ere mult forz et 418
And from-there rode to the city of Daonion which was very strong and
bele; et la genz ne l'oserent tenir; si li fu rendue, et il la
fair and the people not it-dared hold so to-him was surrendered and he it
fist fondre et abatre. Après chevaucha à la cité del Churlot,
had collapsed and cast-down After rode to the city of-the Tzurulum
qui s'ere à lui rendue; et il la fist fondre et abatre, et
which itself-was to him surrendered and he it had collapsed and cast-down and
mener les genz en prison. Et ensi come aucuns chastiaus
led the people into prison And thus as any castle
ou aucune citez se rendoit à lui, et il les avoit asseurez,
or any city itself surrendered to him and he them had assured
il les fesoit abattre, et mener les homes et les fames en
he them had cast-down and led the men and the women into
prison; et nulle convenance que il lor fist ne lor tenoit.
prison and any covenant that he them made not them kept

419 Lors corrurent li Commain et li Blac devant les portes de
Then ran the Cumans and the Vlachs before the gates of
Costantinoble, où Henris li bals de l'empire ere à tant de
Constantinople where Henry the regent of the-empire was with so-many of
gent com il avoir pooit, mult dolenz et iriez por ce que il
people as he to-have could very sorrowful and angered for this that he
ne pooit avoir tant de gent qu'il peust sa terre desfendre. Et
not could have so-many of people that-he could his land defend And
ensi pristrent li Commain les proies de la terre, et homes et
thus took the Cumans the booty of the land and men and
fames et anfanz; et abatirent les citez et les chastiax, et fisent
women and children and cast-down the cities and the castles and made
si grant essil que onques nus hom n'oï parler de si grant.
so great waste that ever any man not-heard speak of so great
420 Lors vindrent à une cité à doze liues de Costantinoble,
Then they-came to a city at twelve leagues from Constantinople
qui Nature ert apelée; et Henris li freres l'empereor l'avoit
which Athyra was called and Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor it-had
donnée à Payen d'Orliens. En celle cité avoit mult grant
given to Payen of-Orléans In that city there-had very great
pueple de gens, car cil del païs i estoient tuit afui;
people of folk for those of-the country there were all fled
et il l'assaillirent, si la pristrent par force. Là i ot si
and they it-assailed so it took by force There there had so
grant occision de gent, que il n'avoit eu si grant en nule
great slaughter of people that it not-had had so great in any
vile où il eussent esté. Et sachiez que tuit li chastel et
town where they had been And know that all the castles and
totes les cités qui s'erent rendu à Johannis, et cui
all the cities which themselves-were surrendered to Johanitsa and whom

il avoit asseurez, erent tuit fondu et destruit, et menées
he had assured were all collapsed and destroyed and led
les gens en Blaquie, en tel maniere com vos avez oï.
the people into Wallachia in such manner as you have heard
Sachiez que dedenz cinc jornées de Costantinoble ne remest 421
Know that within five days of Constantinople not remained
nule riens à essillier, fors solement la cité de Visoi et
any thing to lay-waste save only the city of Vizye and
cele de Salembrie, qui estoient garnies de François. Et
that of Selymbria which were garrisoned with French And
en cele de Visoi ere Ansiaus de Kaeu, bien atot six vins
in that of Vizye was Anseau of Cayeux well with six score
chevaliers; et en cele de Salembrie ere Machaires de Sainte
knights and in that of Selymbria was Macaire of Sainte
Manehalt atot cinquante; et Henris li freres l'empereor
Menehould with fifty and Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor
Baudoin ere remés en Costantinoble al remanant. Et
Baldwin was remained in Constantinople with-the remnant And
sachiez que mult erent al desoz; que defors le cors de
know that much they-were at-the bottom for outside the body of
Costantinople n'avoient retenu que ces deus citez.
Constantinople not-they-had retained but these two cities

The Relief of Demotika

XLIX

The Greeks with Johanitsa, seeing him raze every town, fear for Adrianople and Demotika and offer through Branas to make peace with the Franks, and the barons grant both cities to Branas and his wife, the French king's sister, under the emperor. After Easter Johanitsa besieges Demotika with sixteen petraries. Henry marches with four hundred knights against forty thousand, and after confession on Saint John's Day they ride out in eight battalions, not trusting their new Greek allies.

422 Quant ce virent li Grieu qui erent en l'ost avec Johannis
When this saw the Greeks who were in the-host with Johanitsa
(qui s'erent à lui rendu et revellé contre les Frans; et il
who themselves-were to him surrendered and rebelled against the Franks and he
lor abatoit lor chastiaus et lor citez, et nul convent ne lor
them cast-down their castles and their cities and any covenant not them
tenoit), si se tindrent à morz et à traïs. Et parlerent
kept so themselves held for dead and for betrayed And spoke
ensemble, et distrent que aussi feroit-il d'Andrenople et del
together and said that also would-do-he of-Adrianople and of-the
Dimot quant il reparieroit; et se il ces deus abatoit, dont
Demotika when he would-return and if he these two cast-down then
estoit Romenie perdue à tozjorz. Et pristrent lor messages
was Romania lost for always And took their messengers
privéement, si les envoierent en Costantinoble al Vernas.
privately so them sent into Constantinople to-the Branas
423 Et li prioient que il criast merci à Henri le frere
And him they-prayed that he should-cry mercy to Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin et as Veniciens, que il feissent pais
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin and to-the Venetians that they should-make peace
à als, et que il li donassent Andrenople et le Dimot;
with them and that they him should-give Adrianople and the Demotika

et li Grieu se torneroient tuit à lui, et ensi porroient
and the Greeks themselves would-turn all to him and thus could
bien estre li Grieu et li Franc ensemble. Consels en fu
well be the Greeks and the Franks together Counsel thereof was
pris où i ot paroles de maintes manieres; mais la fins del
taken where there had words of many manners but the end of-the
conseil fu telx que al Vernas et à l'enpereris sa fame, qui
counsel was such that to-the Branas and to the-empress his wife who
ere suer le roi Phelippe de France, fu otroïe Andrenople
was sister (of-)the king Philip of France was granted Adrianople
et li Dimos, o totes lor apartenances, et il en feroit
and the Demotika with all their appurtenances and he thereof would-do
le servise à l'empereor et à l'empire. Ensi fu la convenance
the service to the-emperor and to the-empire Thus was the covenant
faite et assovie, et la pais faite des Grex et des Frans.
made and accomplished and the peace made of-the Greeks and of-the Franks
Johanis li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie, qui ot sejorné 424
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria who had sojourned
longuement en Romenie, et lou païs gasté trestote la
long in Romania and the country wasted all the
quaresme et après la Pasque grant piece, si s'en retraist
Lent and after the Easter great while so himself-thence drew
ariers vers Andrenople et vers le Dimot, et ot en pensé
back toward Adrianople and toward the Demotika and had in thought
que il en feroit tot autretel com il avoit fait des autres.
that he thereof would-do all the-same as he had done of-the others
Et quant li Grieu virent ce, qui estoient avec lui, qu'il
And when the Greeks saw this who were with him that-he
torneroit vers Andrenople, si se comencierent à embler
would-turn toward Adrianople so themselves began to steal-away
de lui, et par nuit et par jor, vint, trente, quarante, cent.
from him and by night and by day twenty thirty forty hundred

425 Et quant il vint là, si lor requist que il le laissassent
And when he came there so them required that they him should-let
alsi entrer dedenz, cum il avoient fait dedenz les autres. Et
also enter within as they had done within the others And
il li distrent que il ne feroient, et distrent: «Sire, quant
they him said that they not would-do and said Lord when
nos nos rendimes à toi, et nos nos revelames contre les
we ourselves surrendered to thee and we ourselves rebelled against the
Frans, tu nos juras que tu nos garderoies en bone foi et
Franks thou us swore that thou us wouldst-guard in good faith and
salveroies. Tu ne l'as pas fait, ains as destruite Romenie;
wouldst-save Thou not it-hast at-all done but hast destroyed Romania
et alsi savons nos bien que tu nos feroies alsi com tu as
and also know we well that thou us wouldst-do also as thou hast
fait des autres.» Et quant Johannis oït ce, si asist le Dimot,
done of-the others And when Johanitsa heard this so besieged the Demotika
et dreça entor seize perieres granz; et comença engins à
and raised around sixteen petraries great and began engines to
faire de mainte maniere, et à gaster tot le païs entor.
make of many-a manner and to waste all the country around
426 Lors pristrent cil d'Andrenople et cil del Dimot lor
Then took those of-Adrianople and those of-the Demotika their
messages; si les envoierent en Costantinoble à Henri, qui ere
messengers so them sent into Constantinople to Henry who was
bals de l'empire, et al Vernas, que il seccorrussent por
regent of the-empire and to-the Branas that they should-succor for
Dieu le Dimot qui ert assis. Et quant cil de Costantinoble
God the Demotika which was besieged And when those of Constantinople
oïrent la novele, si pristrent conseil del Dimot secoure. Mult
heard the news so took counsel of-the Demotika to-succor Many
i ot de cels qui n'oserent mie loer que on isist de
there had of those who not-dared at-all to-advise that one should-go-out from

Costantinople, ne que on si pou que on avoit de la crestienté
Constantinople nor that one so little as one had of the Christendom
meist en aventure. Totes voies fur lor consels telx que
should-put in hazard All the-same was their counsel such that
il istroient fors, et que il iroient trosque à Salembrie.
they would-go-out outside and that they would-go as-far to Selymbria
Li cardonaus qui ere de par l'apostoile de Rome, en 427
The cardinal who was on behalf-of the-pope of Rome thereof
preescha et en fist pardon à toz cels qui iroient et
preached and thereof made pardon to all those who would-go and
qui morroient en la bataille. Lors s'en issi Henris
who would-die in the battle Then himself-thence went-out Henry
de Costantinoble à tant de gent cum il avoir pot, et
from Constantinople with so-many of people as he to-have could and
chevaucha trosque à la cité de Salembrie; et enqui fu
rode as-far to the city of Selymbria and there was
logiez devant la vile bien par huit jorz. Et de jor en
lodged before the town well for eight days And from day to
jor li venoient message d'Andrenople, et li mandoient
day him came messengers from-Adrianople and him sent-word
que aust merci d'als, et que il les secorust; que se
that he-should-have mercy of-them and that he them should-succor for if
il nes secoroit il estoient perdu enfin.
he not-them succored they were lost finally
Lors prist conseil Henris à ses barons, et li consels si fu 428
Then took counsel Henry with his barons and the counsel so was
telx que il alassent à la cité de Visoi, qui mult ere bone et
such that they should-go to the city of Vizye which very was good and
forz. Ensi cum il dissent si le fissent; et vindrent à la cité
strong Thus as they said so it did and came to the city
de Visoi, si se logierent devant la vile le jor de la veille
of Vizye so themselves lodged before the town the day of the eve

de la feste monseignor saint Johan Baptiste en juing. Et le
of the feast (of-)my-lord saint John Baptist in June And the
jor cum il furent logié, vindrent li message d'Andrenople, et
day as they were lodged came the messengers from-Adrianople and
distrent à Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin: «Sire, sache que
said to Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin Lord know that
se tu ne secors la cité del Dimot, que ele ne se puet tenir
if thou not succorest the city of-the Demotika that it not itself can hold
plus de huit jors; car les perieres Johannis ont abattu le mur
more than eight days for the petraries (of-)Johanitsa have cast-down the wall
en quatre leus, et ont esté ses gens deus foiz sor les murs.»
in four places and have been his people two times upon the walls
429 Lors demanda conseil que il feroit. Assez i ot parlé avant
Then asked counsel what he would-do Much there had spoken forward
et ariere, mais la fins del conseil si fu tels que il distrent:
and back but the end of-the counsel so was such that they said
«Seignor, nos somes jà tant venu avant, que nos somes
Lords we are already so-far come forward that we are
honi se nos ne secorons le Dimot. Mais soit chascuns confès
shamed if we not succor the Demotika But let-be each confessed
et commeniez, et ordenons noz batailles.» Et aesmerent que
and communicated and let-us-order our battalions And they-estimated that
il avoient bien quatre cenz chevaliers, et que il n'en
they had well four hundred knights and that they not-thereof
avoient mie plus; et manderent les messages qui erent venu
had at-all more and summoned the messengers who were come
d'Andrenople, et demanderent le convine, combien Johanis avoit
from-Adrianople and asked the state how-much Johanitsa had
de gent. Et il respondirent que il avoit bien quarante mil
of people And they answered that he had well forty thousand
homes à armes, sanz cels a pié dont il ne savoient le conte.
men at arms without those on foot whereof they not knew the count

Ha! Diex, cum perillose bataille de si pou de gent encontre 430
Ah God how perilous battle of so few of people against
tant. Al matin, le jor de la feste monseignor saint Johan
so-many At-the morning the day of the feast (of-)my-lord saint John
Baptiste furent tuit confès et commenié, et l'endemain si
Baptist were all confessed and communicated and the-next-day so
murent. L'avangarde si fu commandée Joffroi le mareschal de
set-out The-vanguard so was commanded (to-)Geoffrey the marshal of
Romenie et de Champaigne, et Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt
Romania and of Champagne and Macaire of Sainte-Menehould
fu avec. La segonde bataille fist Coenes de Betune et Miles
was with The second battalion made Conon of Béthune and Miles
li Brabanz; la tierce, Paiens d'Orliens et Pierres de Braiecuel;
the Brabançon the third Payen of-Orléans and Peter of Bracieux
la quarte, Ansials de Kaeu; la quinte, Baudoins de Belveoir;
the fourth Anseau of Cayeux the fifth Baldwin of Beauvoir
la siste, Hues de Belmés; la septisme, Henris li freres
the sixth Hugh of Beaumetz the seventh Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin; l'uitisme, Gautiers de Escornai et li
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin the-eighth Walter of Escornay and the
Flamenc. Tyerris de Los, qui ere senechaus, fist l'ariere garde.
Flemings Thierry of Loos who was seneschal made the-rear guard
Lors chevauchierent tot ordenéement par trois jors; ne onques 431
Then they-rode all in-order for three days nor ever
plus perillosement genz n'alerent querre bataille. Car il avoient
more perilously people not-went to-seek battle For they had
deus perils: de ce que il estoient pou, et cil estoient assez
two perils of this that they were few and those were many
à cui il aloient combatre; d'autre part, il ne créoient pas
with whom they went to-fight on-the-other side they not believed at-all
les Griex, à cui il avoient pais faite, que il lor dussent
the Greeks with whom they had peace made that they them should

aidier de cuer. Ainz avoient paor que quant venroit au
help from heart But had fear that when it-would-come to-the
besoing, que il ne se tornassent devers Johanis, qui avoit
need that they — themselves should-turn toward Johanitsa who had
le Dimot si aprochié de prendre, com vos avez oï ariere.
the Demotika so approached of to-take as you have heard before

Renier of Trith Rescued

L

Johanitsa burns his engines and retreats, which all hold a miracle, and Adrianople greets Henry in procession. The Franks follow Johanitsa for five days, and fifty knights under Baldwin of Beauvoir leave after a quarrel with Henry. At Moniac Henry stays with most of the host while a company rides three perilous days to relieve Renier of Trith at Stenimaka, and Renier at first takes them for Greeks. He tells them that Baldwin has died in Johanitsa's prison, and they bring him back to Henry at Moniac.

432 Quant Johannis oï que li Franc venoient, si nes ossa
When Johanitsa heard that the Franks came so not-them dared
attendre; ainz arst ses engins, et se desloja. Et ensi se
to-await but burned his engines and himself dislodged And thus himself
parti del Dimot; et sachiez que toz li monz le tint à
departed from-the Demotika and know that all the world it held for
grant miracle. Et Henris li bauz de l'empire vint al quart jor
great miracle And Henry the regent of the-empire came at-the fourth day
devant Andrenople, et se loja sor les plus bels prez del
before Adrianople and himself lodged upon the most fair meadows of-the
monde, sor la riviere d'Andrenople. Quant cil d'Andrenople
world upon the river of-Adrianople When those of-Adrianople
les virent venir, si issirent fors à totes lor croiz et à la
them saw come so went-out outside with all their crosses and with the

procession, et fisent la greignor joie qui onques fust veue.
procession and made the greatest joy which ever was seen
Et il le durent bien faire, que il n'estoient mie bien à aise.
And they it ought well to-do for they not-were at-all well at ease
Et lors vint la novele en l'ost des Frans que Johannis 433
And then came the news into the-host of-the Franks that Johanitsa
ere logiez à un chastel qui a nom Rodestuic. Et al
was lodged at a castle which has name Rodestuic And at-the
matin mut l'oz des Frans, et chevaucha vers cele part
morning set-out the-host of-the Franks and rode toward that way
por la bataille querre; et Johanis se desloja, si chevaucha
for the battle to-seek and Johanitsa himself dislodged so rode
ariers vers son païs. Ensi le suirent par cinc jornées, et
back toward his country Thus him they-followed for five days and
il adès s'en ala devant als. Lors se herbergierent
he ever himself-thence went before them Then themselves lodged
al cinquisme jor sor un bel leu, à un chastel que on
at-the fifth day upon a fair place at a castle which one
apele le Fraim; enqui sejornerent par trois jors.
calls the Fraim there they-sojourned for three days
Et lors s'en parti une compaignie de la bone gent de l'ost, 434
And then itself-thence departed a company of the good people of the-host
par descorde qu'il eurent à Henri le frere de l'empereor
by discord that-they had with Henry the brother of the-emperor
Baudoin. De cele compaignie fu chevetaines Baudoins de
Baldwin Of that company was captain Baldwin of
Belveoir; et Hues de Belmés fu avec lui, et Guillaumes
Beauvoir and Hugh of Beaumetz was with him and William
de Gomeignies, et Drues de Belraim. Et en alerent bien
of Gommegnies and Dreux of Beaurain And thence went well

ensemble en cele route cinquante chevalier; et cuiderent que
together in that company fifty knights and believed that
li remananz n'osast remanoir el païs entre lor anemis.
the remnant not-would-dare to-remain in-the country among their enemies
435 Lors pristrent conseil Henris li baus de l'empire, et li
Then took counsel Henry the regent of the-empire and the
baron qui avec lui estoient; et fu telx lor consels que il
barons who with him were and was such their counsel that they
chevalcheroient avant. Si chevauchierent par deus jors, et
would-ride forward So they-rode for two days and
se herbergierent en une mult bele vallée, près d'un chastel
themselves lodged in a very fair valley near of-a castle
que on apele Moniac. Et cil chastiaus lor fu renduz, et
which one calls Moniac And that castle to-them was surrendered and
i sejornerent bien par cinc jors, et distrent que il iroient
there they-sojourned well for five days and said that they would-go
Renier de Trit secore, qui ere dedenz l'Estanemac assis, et
Renier of Trith to-succor who was within the-Stenimaka besieged and
i avoit esté bien treize mois enserrez dedenz. Ensi remest
there had been well thirteen months shut-in within Thus remained
Henris li baus de l'empire en l'ost, et granz partie de sa
Henry the regent of the-empire in the-host and great part of his
gent; li remananz ala secore Renier de Trit à l'Estanemac.
people the remnant went to-succor Renier of Trith at the-Stenimaka
436 Et sachiez que mult alerent perilleusement cil qui i alerent,
And know that very went perilously those who there went
que on a pou veu de si perillose rescousse; et chevauchierent
for one has little seen of so perilous rescue and they-rode
trois jors parmi la terre à lor anemis. En cele rescosse ala
three days through the land of their enemies In that rescue went
Coenes de Betune, et Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de
Conon of Béthune and Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of

Romenie et de Champaigne, et Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt,
Romania and of Champagne and Macaire of Sainte-Menehould
et Miles li Braibanz, et Pierres de Braiecuel, et Païens
and Miles the Brabançon and Peter of Bracieux and Payen
d'Orliens, et Ansials de Kaeu, et Tyerris de Los, et Guillaumes
of-Orléans and Anseau of Cayeux and Thierry of Loos and William
del Perçoi, et une bataille des Veniciens, dont Andrius Valeres
of-the Perchoy and a battalion of-the Venetians whereof Andrew Valaresso
ere chevetaines. Et ensi chevauchierent trosque au chastel
was captain And thus they-rode as-far to-the castle
d'Estanemac, et aprochierent tant que il virent l'Estanemac.
of-Stenimaka and approached so-far that they saw the-Stenimaka
Reniers de Trit ere as bailles des murs, et choisi 437
Renier of Trith was at-the outworks of-the walls and spied
l'avangarde que Joffrois li mareschaus faisoit, et les autres
the-vanguard which Geoffrey the marshal made and the other
batailes qui venoient après mult ordenéement; et lors ne
battalions which came after very in-order and then not
sot quex genz ce estoient. Et ce ne fu mie mervoile se il
knew what people these were And this not was at-all marvel if he
dota, que grant tens avoit que il n'avoit oï noveles d'als;
feared for great time there-was that he not-had heard news of-them
et cuida que ce fussent li Grieu qui les venissent asseoir.
and believed that these were the Greeks who them should-come to-besiege
Joffrois li mareschaus de Romenie et de Champaigne prist 438
Geoffrey the marshal of Romania and of Champagne took
Turcoples et arbalestiers à cheval, si les envoia avant por
Turcopoles and crossbowmen on horse so them sent forward for
savoir le convine del chastel; que il ne savoient se il
to-know the state of-the castle for they not knew if they
estoient mort ou vif, que grant tens avoit que il n'en
were dead or alive for great time there-was that they not-thereof

avoient oï noveles. Et quant cil vindrent devant le chastel,
had heard news And when those came before the castle
Reniers de Trit et sa mesnie les conurent: bien le poez
Renier of Trith and his household them knew well it you-can
savoir que il orent grant joie. Lors s'en issirent et
know that they had great joy Then themselves-thence went-out and
alerent contre lor amis, si firent grant joie li un as autres.
went toward their friends so made great joy the one to-the others
439 Et lors se herbergierent li baron en une mult bone vile
And then themselves lodged the barons in a very good town
qui estoit al pié del chastel, et qui tenoit adès assiegé
which was at-the foot of-the castle and which held ever besieged
le chastel. Lors distrent li baron que il avoient maintes
the castle Then said the barons that they had many
foiz oï dire que l'empereres Baudoins ere morz en la prison
times heard say that the-emperor Baldwin was dead in the prison
Johannis, mais il nel créoient mie; et Reniers de Trit dist
(of-)Johanitsa but they not-it believed at-all and Renier of Trith said
que por voir ere morz, et il le crurent. Mult i ot
that for true he-was dead and they it believed Many there had
de cels qui en furent dolent; se il le peussent amender!
of those who thereof were sorrowful if they it could amend
440 Et ensi jurent la nuit en la vile; et al maitin s'en
And thus they-lay the night in the town and at-the morning themselves-thence
partirent, et guerpirent l'Estanemac. Et chevauchierent par
departed and forsook the-Stenimaka And they-rode for
deus jorz; et al tierz jor vindrent à l'ost où Henris,
two days and at-the third day came to the-host where Henry
li freres l'empereor, les atendoit soz le chastel de Moniac,
the brother (of-)the-emperor them awaited under the castle of Moniac
qui siet sor le flum d'Arte, où il estoit herbergiez. Mult
which sits upon the river of-Arda where he was lodged Very

fu granz joie à cels de l'ost de Renier de Trit qui ere
was great joy to those of the-host of Renier of Trith who was
rescous de prison, et à bien fu atorné à cels qui l'en
rescued from prison and to good was turned to those who him-thence
amenerent; car il i alerent mult perilleusement.
brought for they there went very perilously

Henry Crowned Emperor

LI

Leaving Branas with forty knights, the barons return to Constantinople and crown Henry emperor in Saint Sophia in August 1206. Johanitsa razes Demotika, which Branas had left unrepaired. Henry marches out, and Johanitsa withdraws with his captives; the Franks follow him to Beroe, abandoned by its people and full of grain, raid cattle from the country around, and go on to Blisme. Eustace and Macaire free twenty thousand captives with three thousand carts, and Henry sends them home and divides the booty, but finds Demotika past refortifying for now.

Lors pristrent conseil li baron que il iroient en Costantinoble, 441
Then took counsel the barons that they would-go into Constantinople
et que il coroneroient Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin;
and that they would-crown Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin
et laissierent ou païs le Vernas à toz les Grez de la terre,
and left in-the country the Branas with all the Greeks of the land
et atot quarante chevaliers que Henris li bals de l'empire li
and with forty knights that Henry the regent of the-empire him
lassa. Et ensi s'en ala Henris li baus de l'empire, et
left And thus himself-thence went Henry the regent of the-empire and
li autre baron, en Constantinoble; et chevauchierent par lor
the other barons into Constantinople and rode by their
jornées tant que il vindrent en Costantinoble, où il furent
day-stages so-far that they came into Constantinople where they were

volentiers veu. Lors coronerent à empereor Henri, lo frere
gladly seen Then they-crowned as emperor Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin, le diemenche après la feste madamme
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin the Sunday after the feast (of-)my-lady
sainte Marie en aost, à grant joie et à grant honor, à
saint Mary in August with great joy and with great honor at
l'iglise Sainte Sophie; et ce fu en l'an de l'incarnation
the-church Saint Sophia and this was in the-year of the-incarnation
Nostre Seignor Jesu-Crist mil deus cens anz et six.
(of-)Our Lord Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred years and six
442 Et com li empereres fu coronez en Constantinoble, si
And as the emperor was crowned in Constantinople so
com vos avez oï, et li Vernas fu remés en la terre
as you have heard and the Branas was remained in the land
d'Andrenople et del Dimot, Johannis rois de Blaquie et
of-Adrianople and of-the Demotika Johanitsa king of Wallachia and
de Bougrie, quant il le sot, si amassa de gent quant que
of Bulgaria when he it knew so amassed of people as-much as
il pot. Et li Vernas n'ot mie refermé del Dimot ce
he could And the Branas not-had at-all refortified of-the Demotika this
que Johanis en ot abatu à ses perieres et à ses
that Johanitsa thereof had cast-down with his petraries and with his
mangonials, et l'ot povrement garni. Et Johannis chevalcha
mangonels and it-had poorly garrisoned And Johanitsa rode
al Dimot, si lo prist et l'abati, et fondi les murs
to-the Demotika so it took and it-cast-down and collapsed the walls
trosque en terre; et cort par tot le païs, et prent homes
as-far to earth and runs through all the country and takes men
et fames, et anfanz et proies; et fist grant destruiement.
and women and children and booty and made great destruction

Lors manderent cil d'Andrenople l'empereor Henri que il
Then sent-word those of-Adrianople (to-)the-emperor Henry that he
les secorust, que li Dimos ere perduz en tel maniere.
them should-succor for the Demotika was lost in such manner
Lors semoust l'emperere Henris quanque il pot avoir de gent, 443
Then summoned the-emperor Henry whatever he could have of people
et issi de Costantinoble, et chevalcha vers Andrenople par
and went-out from Constantinople and rode toward Adrianople by
ses jornées à toutes ses batailles ordenées. Et Johannis li rois
his day-stages with all his battalions ordered And Johanitsa the king
de Blaquie qui ere en la terre, cum il oï que il venoit, si se
of Wallachia who was in the land when he heard that he came so himself
traist arieres vers la soe terre. Et l'empereres Henris chevalcha
drew back toward the his land And the-emperor Henry rode
tant que il vint à Andrenople, et se loja defors en la praerie.
so-far that he came to Adrianople and himself lodged outside in the meadow
Et lors vinrent li Grieu del païs, si li distrent que Johannis, 444
And then came the Greeks of-the country so him said that Johanitsa
li rois de Blaquie, enmenoit les homes et les femes et les
the king of Wallachia led-away the men and the women and the
proies, et avoit le Dimot destruit et tot le païs entor, et
booty and had the Demotika destroyed and all the country around and
que il ere ancore à une jornée d'iqui. Et li consels l'empereor
that he was still at a day from-there And the counsel (of-)the-emperor
fu telx que il s'iroit à lui combatre, se il l'atendoit,
was such that he himself-would-go with him to-fight if he him-awaited
por secoure les chaitis et les chaitives que il enmenoit. Et
for to-succor the captive-men and the captive-women whom he led-away And
chevaucha après lui (et cil s'en ala devant adès), et ensi le
rode after him and he himself-thence went before ever and thus him
sui par quatre jorz. Lors vint à une cité que on apeloit Veroi.
followed for four days Then came to a city which one called Beroe

445 Cum cil de la cité virent l'ost de l'empereor Henri venir,
When those of the city saw the-host of the-emperor Henry come
si s'enfuirent es montagnes et guerpirent la cité. Et
so themselves-fled into-the mountains and forsook the city And
l'empereres vint à tote s'ost, et se loja devant la vile, et
the-emperor came with all his-host and himself lodged before the town and
la trova garnie de blez et de viandes et d'autres biens. Ensi
it found furnished with wheat and with victuals and with-other goods Thus
sejorna iqui par deus jours, et fist ses genz corre par le païs
sojourned there for two days and had his people run through the country
entor; et gaaingnierent assez proies de bues et de vaches et de
around and they-won much booty of oxen and of cows and of
bufles, et autres bestes à mult grant plenté. Lors se parti
buffaloes and other beasts in very great plenty Then himself departed
de cele cité à toz ses gaaiens; et chevaucha à une altre cité,
from that city with all his gains and rode to an other city
loing d'iqui à une jornée, que on apele Blisme. Et ensi cum li
far from-there at a day which one calls Blisme And thus as the
autre Gré avoient laissie l'autre cité, ravoient cil laissie cesti;
other Greeks had left the-other city had-in-turn those left this-one
et il la trova garnie de toz biens, et se herberja devant.
and he it found furnished with all goods and himself lodged before
446 Lors lor vint une novele que, à une valée à trois lieues
Then them came a news that at a valley at three leagues
de l'ost, estoient li chaitif et les chaitives que Johannis
from the-host were the captive-men and the captive-women whom Johanitsa
enmenoit, atot lor proies et à toz lor chars. Lors atorna
led-away with their booty and with all their carts Then arranged
l'empereres Henris que li Grieu d'Andrenople et cil del
the-emperor Henry that the Greeks of-Adrianople and those of-the
Dimot les iroient querre, et leur chargeroit deus batailles de
Demotika them would-go to-seek and them he-would-entrust two battalions of

chevaliers. Ensi cum il fu devisé, si fu fait à l'endemain. De
knights Thus as it was devised so was done at the-next-day Of
l'une bataile fu chevetaines Eustaices, li freres l'empereor Henri
the-one battalion was captain Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor Henry
de Costantinoble, et de l'autre Machaires de Sainte Manehalt.
of Constantinople and of the-other Macaire of Sainte Menehould
Et chevauchierent, entr'aus et les Grieus, trosque en la valée 447
And they-rode between-them and the Greeks as-far into the valley
que on lor ot enseignie; et troverent la gent ensi cum l'en lor
which one them had shown and found the people thus as one them
ot dit. Et la gens Johannis assembla à la gent l'empereor
had told And the people (of-)Johanitsa joined-battle with the people (of-)the-emperor
Henri; si i ot navrez et morz homes et chevaus de l'une
Henry so there had wounded and dead men and horses on the-one
part et de l'autre; mais par la vertu de Dieu, orent li Franc la
side and on the-other but by the power of God had the Franks the
force; et tornerent les chaitis, et enmenerent devant als arierre.
force and turned the captives and led-away before them back
Et sachiez que cele rescouse ne fu mie petite; que bien i 448
And know that that rescue not was at-all small for well there
ot vint mil que homes que fames que anfanz, et bien trois
had twenty thousand what men what women what children and well three
mil chars chargiez de lor robes et de lor hernois, sans
thousand carts laden with their robes and with their baggage without
les autres proies dont il avoit assez. Et bien duroit la route,
the other booty whereof there had plenty And well lasted the column
si cum il venoient à l'ost, deus liues granz; et ensi vindrent
so as they came to the-host two leagues great and thus came
à l'ost la nuit. Et en fu mult liez l'empereres Henris, et
to the-host the night And thereof was very glad the-emperor Henry and
tuit li autre baron; et les fist herbergier d'une part et bien
all the other barons and them had lodged on-one side and well

garder, si que onc ne perdirent vaillant un denier de rien
guarded so that ever not they-lost worth a penny of anything
qu'i aussient. L'endemain sejorna l'enpereres Henris por le
that-they had The-next-day sojourned the-emperor Henry for the
pueple que il ot rescous. A l'autre jor se parti del païs,
people whom he had rescued At the-other day himself departed from-the country
et chevaucha tant par ses jornées que il vint à Andrenople.
and rode so-far by his day-stages that he came to Adrianople
449 Lors dona congié as homes et as fames que il ot
Then gave leave to-the men and to-the women whom he had
rescous, et chascuns s'en alla là où il volt, en la
rescued and each himself-thence went there where he wished into the
terre dont il ere nez o d'autre part. Et les autres proies,
land whence he was born or on-other side And the other booty
dont il avoit mult grant plenté, furent departies à cels
whereof there had very great plenty were shared to those
de l'ost si cum il dut. Lors sejorna l'empereres Henri par
of the-host so as it ought Then sojourned the-emperor Henry for
cinq jorz, et puis chevaucha trosque à la cité del Dimot,
five days and then rode as-far to the city of-the Demotika
por savoir coment ele ere abatue, et se on la porroit
for to-know how it was cast-down and if one it could
refermer. Et se loja devant la vile, et vit, et il et si
refortify And himself lodged before the town and saw both he and his
baron, que il n'estoit mie leus de la fermer en tel point.
barons that it not-was at-all place of it to-fortify in such point

The War Beyond the Arm

LII

Otto of la Roche brings word that Boniface's daughter, long promised to Henry, has come from Lombardy to Salonika, and the match is confirmed. Henry rides into Johanitsa's land, takes Thermae, with the finest hot baths in the world, burns it, and returns to Constantinople for the winter, leaving Peter of Radinghem at Adrianople. Lascaris breaks the truce, and Henry sends Peter of Bracieux, Payen of Orléans, and seven score knights across the Arm, where they refortify Cyzicus and raid, while Thierry of Loos fortifies Saint Sophia at Nicomedia.

Lors vint en l'ost uns bers le marchis Boniface de Monferrat 450
Then came into the-host a baron (of-)the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
en message, qui Othes de la Roche avoit nom; et parla d'un
in message who Otto of the Roche had name and spoke of-a
mariage qui devant avoit esté porparlez, de la file Boniface
marriage which before had been negotiated of the daughter (of-)Boniface
le marchis de Monferat et de l'empereor Henri. Et aporta
the marquis of Montferrat and of the-emperor Henry And brought
les novelles que la damme ere venue de Lombardie, et que
the news that the lady was come from Lombardy and that
ses peres l'i avoit envoié querre, et qu'ele ert à Salenique.
her father her-there had sent to-fetch and that-she was at Salonika
Lors prist li empereres consel, et la somme dou consel si fu
Then took the emperor counsel and the sum of-the counsel so was
tels que li mariages fu asseurez d'une part et d'autre. Ensi
such that the marriage was confirmed on-one side and on-other Thus
s'en rala li messages Othes de la Roche à Salenique.
himself-thence went-back the messenger Otto of the Roche to Salonika
Et l'empereres rot assemblées ses genz qui orent à garison 451
And the-emperor had-again assembled his people who had to safety
menez lor gaainz de Veroi, qu'il avoient fait en l'ost. Et
led their gains from Beroe which-they had made in the-host And

chevaucha pardevant Andrenople par ses jornées, tant que il
rode past Adrianople by his day-stages so-far that he
vint en la terre Johanis le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie. Et
came into the land (of-)Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria And
vinrent à une cité qu'on apeloit la Ferme; et la pristrent, et
they-came to a city which-one called the Thermae and it took and
entrerent enz, et i firent mult grant gaain. Et sejornerent
entered in and there made very great gain And sojourned
enz par trois jorz, et corurent par tot le païs, et gaaignierent
in for three days and ran through all the country and won
grans gaaiens, et destruistrent une cité qui avoit nom l'Aquile.
great gains and destroyed a city which had name the-Aquile
452 Al quart jor, se partirent de la Ferme, qui mult ere
At-the fourth day themselves departed from the Thermae which very was
bele et bien seanz; et i sordoient li baing chaut li plus
fair and well situated and there sprang the baths hot the most
bel de tot le monde; et la fist l'emperere destruire et ardoir;
fair of all the world and it had the-emperor destroyed and burned
et enmenerent les gaaiens mult granz de proies et d'autres
and led-away the gains very great of booty and of-other
avoirs. Et chevauchierent par lor jornées tant que il vindrent
goods And they-rode by their day-stages so-far that they came
à la cité d'Andrenople, et sejornerent el païs trosque
to the city of-Adrianople and sojourned in-the country until
à la feste Toz Sains, que il ne porent plus guerroier por
to the feast (of-)All Saints for they not could more make-war for
l'iver. Et lors s'en torna l'empereres Henris et tuit si
the-winter And then himself-thence turned the-emperor Henry and all his
baron vers Costantinoble, qui mult furent lassé d'ostoier;
barons toward Constantinople who very were weary of-campaigning

et ot laissié à Andrenople entre les Griex, un suen home
and had left at Adrianople among the Greeks a his man
qui ot nom Pierres de Radingheam, atot dix chevaliers.
who had name Peter of Radinghem with ten knights
En cel termine, Toldres li Ascres qui tenoit la terre d'autre part 453
In that time Theodore the Lascaris who held the land on-other side
del Braz devers la Turquie, avoit trives à l'empereor Henri;
of-the Arm toward the Turkey had truces with the-emperor Henry
et ne li ot mie bien tenues, ainz li ot fausées et brisies. Et
and not him had at-all well kept but him had falsified and broken And
lors prist conseil l'emperere, et envoia oltre le Braz à la cité de
then took counsel the-emperor and sent beyond the Arm to the city of
l'Espigal Pierre de Braiecuel cui sa terre ere devisée en iceles
the-Espigal Peter of Bracieux to-whom his land was assigned in those
parties, et Païen d'Orliens, et Ansiau de Chaeu, et Eustaice
parts and Payen of-Orléans and Anseau of Cayeux and Eustace
son frere, et grant part de ses bones genz, trosque à sept vins
his brother and great part of his good people as-far as seven score
chevaliers. Et cil comencierent la guerre contre Toldre l'Ascre
knights And those began the war against Theodore the-Lascaris
mult grant et mult fiere, et fisent grant domage en sa terre.
very great and very fierce and made great harm in his land
Et chevauchierent trosque à une terre qui Equise est apelée, 454
And they-rode as-far to a land which Cyzicus is called
que la mers clooit tote fors que une part. Et à l'entrée par
which the sea enclosed all save that one part And at the-entry by
où on entroit, avoit au ancienement forteresce de murs,
where one entered there-had had anciently fortress of walls
de tors et de fossez; et estoient auques dechau. Et enqui
of towers and of ditches and were somewhat fallen And there
dedenz entra l'oz des François; et Pierres de Braiecuel,
within entered the-host of-the French and Peter of Bracieux

cui la terre ere devisée, les commença à refermer, et à
to-whom the land was assigned them began to refortify and to
faire deus chastiaus et deus entrées. Et d'iqui comencierent
make two castles and two entries And from-there they-began
à corre en la terre l'Ascre, et gaaignierent granz gaainz
to run in the land (of-)the-Lascaris and won great gains
et granz proies, et amenerent dedenz lor isle les gaaiens
and great booty and brought within their isle the gains
et les proies. Et Toldres li Ascres revenoit sovent en
and the booty And Theodore the Lascaris came-again often into
Equise; et i ot maintes foiz assemblées, et i perdoient
Cyzicus and there had many times encounters and there lost
li un et li autre; et iqui ere la guerre granz et perillose.
the ones and the others and there was the war great and perilous
455 Or lairons de cez, si dirons de Tyerri de Los, qui
Now we-will-leave of these so we-will-tell of Thierry of Loos who
seneschaus ere, cui Nicomie devoit estre; et ere à une
seneschal was to-whom Nicomedia was-to be and was at a
jornée de Niqué-la-grant, qui ere li chiés de la terre
day from Nicaea-the-great which was the head of the land
Toldre l'Ascre. Et cil s'en rala à grant partie
(of-)Theodore the-Lascaris And he himself-thence went-back with great part
de la gent l'empereor Henri, et trova que li chastiaus ere
of the people (of-)the-emperor Henry and found that the castle was
abatuz; et ferma et horda le moustier Sainte Sophie qui
cast-down and fortified and timbered the minster Saint Sophia which
mult ere halz et biels, et retint iqui endroit la guerre.
very was high and fine and kept there right the war

The Emperor's Marriage

LIII

Boniface refortifies Serres and builds Drama. Villehardouin and Miles the Brabançon bring his daughter Agnes from Enos, and Henry marries her in Saint Sophia on the Sunday after Candlemas, with a wedding feast at Bucoleon. Lascaris sends word to Johanitsa that Henry's men are scattered beyond the Arm, and in Lent Johanitsa besieges Adrianople with thirty-three petraries. Henry recalls his men from Cyzicus, and Lascaris besieges Kibotos, where Macaire's forty knights hold out all day, nearly all of them wounded.

En icel termine, li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat remut 456
In that time the marquis Boniface of Montferrat set-out-again
de Salenique, si s'en ala à la Serre que Johannis
from Salonika so himself-thence went to the Serres which Johanitsa
li avoit abatue; si la referma, et ferma après un chastel
him had cast-down so it refortified and fortified after a castle
qui a nom Dramme, el val de Phelippe. Et tote la
which has name Drama in-the vale of Philippi And all the
terre entor se rendi à lui et obéi; et iverna el païs.
land around itself surrendered to him and obeyed and wintered in-the country
Endementiers fu tant del tens passé que li Noels fu 457
Meanwhile was so-much of-the time passed that the Christmas was
passez. Lors vindrent li message le marchis à l'empereor
passed Then came the messengers (of-)the marquis to the-emperor
en Constantinoble, et li distrent de par le marchis
in Constantinople and him told on behalf-of the marquis
que il avoit envoié sa fille en galies, à la cité d'Aines.
that he had sent his daughter in galleys to the city of-Enos
Et lors envoia l'empereres Henris Joffroi le mareschal de
And then sent the-emperor Henry Geoffrey the marshal of
Romenie et de Champaigne, et Milon le Braibant, por
Romania and of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon for

querre la dame; et chevauchierent par lor jornées tant que
to-fetch the lady and they-rode by their day-stages so-far that
il vindrent à la cité d'Aines.
they came to the city of-Enos

458 Et troverent la dame, qui mult ere et bone et bele;
And found the lady who very was both good and fair
et la saluerent de par lor seignor Henri l'empereor
and her greeted on behalf-of their lord Henry the-emperor
de Constantinoble, et l'amenerent à grant honor en
of Constantinople and her-brought with great honor into
Costantinoble. Et l'esposa l'empereres Henris au mostier
Constantinople And her-wedded the-emperor Henry at-the minster
Sainte Sophie, le diemenche après la feste madamme sainte
Saint Sophia the Sunday after the feast (of-)my-lady saint
Marie Chandelor, à grant joie et à grant honor; et
Mary Candlemas with great joy and with great honor and
porterent corone ambedui; et furent les noces haltes et
bore crown both and were the nuptials high and
planieres el palais de Bouchelion. Ensi fu faiz li mariages
full in-the palace of Bucoleon Thus was made the marriage
de l'empereor et de la file le marchis Boniface, qui
of the-emperor and of the daughter (of-)the marquis Boniface who
Agnès l'empereris avoit nom, com vos avez oï.
Agnes the-empress had name as you have heard

459 Toldres li Ascres, qui guerroia l'empereor Henri, prist ses
Theodore the Lascaris who warred the-emperor Henry took his
messages, si les envoia à Johannis le roi de Blaquie et de
messengers so them sent to Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of
Bougrie. Si li manda que totes les gens l'empereor Henri
Bulgaria So him sent-word that all the people (of-)the-emperor Henry
estoient devers lui, qui le guerréoient d'autre part del Braz
were toward him who him warred on-other side of-the Arm

devers la Turquie; et que l'empereres ere en Constantinoble à
toward the Turkey and that the-emperor was in Constantinople with
pou de gent; et or se poroit vengier; que il seroit d'une
few of people and now himself he-could avenge for he would-be on-one
part, et il venist d'autre, et que l'empereres avoit si pou de
side and he should-come on-other and that the-emperor had so few of
gent que il ne se poroit d'andeus defendre. Johannis s'ere
people that he not himself could from-both defend Johanitsa himself-was
porchaciez de grant host de Comains qui venoient à lui; et
provided with great host of Cumans who came to him and
porchaça ses os de Blas et de Bougres, si granz cum il onques
gathered his hosts of Vlachs and of Bulgars so great as he ever
pot. Et del tans fu jà tant passé que li quaresmes entra.
could And of-the time was already so-much passed that the Lent entered
Machaires de Sainte Manehalt avoit commencié à fermer 460
Macaire of Sainte Menehould had begun to fortify
un chastel al Caracas, qui siet sor un goffre de mer à
a castle at-the Charax which sits upon a gulf of sea at
six liues de Nichomie, devers Constantinoble. Et Guillaume
six leagues from Nicomedia toward Constantinople And William
des Sains en comença un autre à fermer, le Chivetot,
of-the Sains thereof began an other to fortify the Kibotos
qui siet sor le gofre de Nichomie d'autre part, devers
which sits upon the gulf of Nicomedia on-other side toward
Niqué. Et sachiez que mult ot afaires l'empereres Henris
Nicaea And know that much had affairs the-emperor Henry
endroit Costantinoble, et li baron qui erent el païs. Et
about Constantinople and the barons who were in-the country And
bien tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de
well testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of
Romenie et de Champaigne, qui ceste œvre traita, que
Romania and of Champagne who this work treated that

onc en nul termene ne furent gent si chargié de guerre,
ever in any time not were people so laden with war
porce que il estoient espars en tant de leus.
because that they were scattered in so-many of places
461 Lors issi Johannis de Blaquie à totes ses hoz, et à grant
Then went-out Johanitsa from Wallachia with all his hosts and with great
ost de Cumains qui venu li erent, et entra en la Romenie.
host of Cumans who come to-him were and entered into the Romania
Et corurent li Commain trosque as portes de Costantinoble;
And ran the Cumans as-far to-the gates of Constantinople
et il assist Andrenople, et i dreça trente trois perieres granz
and he besieged Adrianople and there raised thirty three petraries great
qui getoient as murs et as tors. Et dedenz Andrenople
which cast at-the walls and at-the towers And within Adrianople
n'avoit se les Grex non, et Pierron de Radingheam,
not-there-had except the Greeks not and Peter of Radinghem
qui de par l'empereor i ere atot dix chevaliers. Et lors
who on behalf-of the-emperor there was with ten knights And then
manderent li Grieu et li Latin ensemble l'empereor Henri
sent-word the Greeks and the Latins together (to-)the-emperor Henry
que ensi les avoit Johannis assis, et que il les secorust.
that thus them had Johanitsa besieged and that he them should-succor
462 Mult fu destroiz l'empereres quant il oï ce; que ses genz
Very was distressed the-emperor when he heard this for his people
estoient departies oltre le Braz en tant de leus, et estoient
were scattered beyond the Arm in so-many of places and were
en chascun leu si chargié de guerre qu'il ne pooient plus;
in each place so laden with war that-they not could more
et l'empereres ere en Constantinoble à pou de gent. Et
and the-emperor was in Constantinople with few of people And
fu tels ses consels qu'il enprist à issir de Costantinoble à
was such his counsel that-he undertook to go-out from Constantinople with

tant de gent cum il porroit avoir à la quinzaine de Pasque;
so-many of people as he could have at the fortnight of Easter
et manda en Equise, où li plus de sa gent ere, que il
and sent-word into Cyzicus where the most of his people was that they
s'en venissent à lui. Et il s'en commencierent à
themselves-thence should-come to him And they themselves-thence began to
venir par mer, Eustaices li freres l'empereor Henri, et Ansials
come by sea Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor Henry and Anseau
de Caeu, et de lor gent li plus; et dont remest Pierres
of Cayeux and of their people the most and then remained Peter
de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens à poi de gent en Equise.
of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans with few of people in Cyzicus
Quant Toldres li Ascres oï la novele que Andrenople ere 463
When Theodore the Lascaris heard the news that Adrianople was
assise, et que l'empereres Henris par estovoir mandoit ses
besieged and that the-emperor Henry by necessity summoned his
gens, et que il ne savoit auquel corre, ou deçà ou delà
people and that he not knew to-which to-run either on-this-side or on-that-side
(si ere chargiez de la guerre), lors si manda plus esforciement
so was laden with the war then so summoned more strongly
quanque il pot de gent, et fist tendre ses trés et ses paveillons
whatever he could of people and had pitched his tents and his pavilions
devant les portes d'Equise; et i ot assemblé maintes foiz,
before the gates of-Cyzicus and there had encountered many times
et perdu et gaaignié. Et quant Toldres li Ascres vit que il
and lost and won And when Theodore the Lascaris saw that they
avoient pou de gent laienz, si prist une grant partie de s'ost,
had few of people in-there so took a great part of his-host
et de vaissials ce que il en pot avoir par mer, si les envoia
and of vessels this that he thereof could have by sea so them sent

al chastel del Chivetot que Guillaumes de Sainz fermoit;
to-the castle of-the Kibotos which William of Sains fortified
si l'asistrent par mer et par terre, le semadi de mi-quaresme.
so it-besieged by sea and by land the Saturday of mid-Lent
464 Laienz avoit quarante chevaliers de mult bone gent, et
In-there there-had forty knights of very good people and
Machaires de Sainte Manehalt en ere chevetaines; et lor
Macaire of Sainte Menehould thereof was captain and their
chastials estoit encor pou fermez, si que cil pooient avenir à
castle was still little fortified so that those could reach to
els as espées et as lances. Et les assaillirent par mer
them with-the swords and with-the lances And them assailed by sea
et par terre mult durement; et cil assaus dura le semadi tote
and by land very hard and that assault lasted the Saturday all
jor, et cil se desfandirent mult bien. Et bien tesmoigne
day and those themselves defended very well And well testifies
li livres que onques à plus grant meschief ne se
the book that ever at more great mischief not themselves
desfendirent quarante chevalier à tant de gent. Et bien
defended forty knights against so-many of people And well
i parut; que il n'en i ot mie cinq qui ne fuisent navré
there appeared for it not-thereof there had at-all five who not were wounded
de toz les chevaliers qui i estoient; et s'en i ot un
of all the knights who there were and so-thereof there had one
mort, qui niés ere Milon le Braibant, qui avoit nom Giles.
dead who nephew was (of-)Miles the Brabançon who had name Giles

The Relief of Kibotos

LIV

A messenger finds Henry at dinner. He calls the city to follow and sets out at once; the ships row all night, and at sunrise, with seventeen vessels against sixty, he offers battle. The Greeks draw back to the shore, and that night, as more ships arrive, they burn their own fleet and flee. Henry abandons the weak castle. Johanitsa presses Adrianople through April and breaches its walls, but his Cumans go home with their booty, he lifts the siege, and Adrianople begs Henry to come quickly.

Ençois que cil assaus començast le semadi matin, s'en vint 465
Before that that assault should-begin the Saturday morning himself-thence came
uns més batant en Constantinoble; et trova l'empereor Henri
a messenger in-haste into Constantinople and found the-emperor Henry
el palais de Blaquerne, séant al mengier, et li dist: «Sire,
in-the palace of Blachernae sitting at-the eating and him said Lord
sachiez que cil del Chivetot sont assis par mer et par terre;
know that those of-the Kibotos are besieged by sea and by land
et se vos nes secorrez hastivement, il sunt pris et mort.»
and if you not-them succor hastily they are taken and dead
Avec l'empereor ere Coenes de Betune, et Joffrois li mareschaus 466
With the-emperor was Conon of Béthune and Geoffrey the marshal
de Champaigne, et Miles li Braibanz, et pou de genz. Et
of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon and few of people And
pristrent conseil; et li conseils si fu tels que l'empereres
they-took counsel and the counsel so was such that the-emperor
s'en vient al rivage, et s'en entre en un galion,
himself-thence comes to-the shore and himself-thence enters into a galleon
et chascuns en tel vaisel com il pot avoir. Et lors fait crier
and each in such vessel as he could have And then has cried
par tote la vile que il le sievent, à tel besoing cum por
through all the town that they him should-follow at such need as for

secorre ses homes; que il les a perduz se il ne les secort.
to-succor his men for he them has lost if he not them succors
Lors veissiez la cité de Costantinoble mult esformier
Then you-might-have-seen the city of Constantinople much bestir
des Venissiens et des Pisans, et d'autres genz qui de mer
with-the Venetians and with-the Pisans and with-other people who of sea
savoient; et corent as vassiaus, qui ainz ainz, qui mielx mielx.
knew and run to-the vessels who sooner sooner who better better
Avec als entroient li chevalier à totes lor armes; et qui ançois
With them entered the knights with all their arms and who sooner
pooit, ançois se partoit del port por sivre l'empereor.
could sooner himself departed from-the port for to-follow the-emperor
467 Ensi alerent à force de rimes, tote la vesprée tant com jorz lor
Thus they-went by force of oars all the evening so-long as day them
dura, et tote la nuit trosque à l'endemain al jor. Et quant
lasted and all the night until to the-next-day at-the day And when
vint à une piece après le soleil levant, si ot tant esploitié
it-came to a while after the sun rising so had so-much sped
l'empereres Henris que il vit le Chivetot, et l'ost qui ere entor
the-emperor Henry that he saw the Kibotos and the-host which was around
et par mer et par terre. Et cil dedenz n'orent mie dormi la
both by sea and by land And those within not-had at-all slept the
nuit; ainz se furent tote nuit hordé, si malade et si navré
night but themselves were all night timbered so sick and so wounded
com il estoient, et com cil qui n'atendoient se la mort non.
as they were and as those who not-awaited except the death not
468 Et quant l'empereres vit que il estoient si près que il
And when the-emperor saw that they were so close that they
voloient assaillir, et il n'avoit encor de sa gent se pou
wished to-assail and he not-had yet of his people except few
non (avec lui ere Joffrois li mareschaus en un autre vaissel,
not with him was Geoffrey the marshal in an other vessel

et Miles li Braibanz, et Pisan et autre chevalier; et tant
and Miles the Brabançon and Pisans and other knights and so-many
que il avoient, entre granz et petiz, de vaisials dix sept,
that they had between great and small of vessels ten seven
et cil en avoient bien soixante), et virent que se il
and those thereof had well sixty and saw that if they
atendoient lor genz et soffroient que cil assaillissent cels
awaited their people and suffered that those should-assail those
de Chivetot, que il seroient mort ou pris; si fu tels lor
of Kibotos that they would-be dead or taken so was such their
conseils que il s'iroient combatre à cels de la mer.
counsel that they themselves-would-go to-fight with those of the sea
Et voguerent cele part tuit d'un front, et furent tuit armé 469
And they-rowed that way all of-one front and were all armed
es vaissials, les hialmes laciez. Et quant cil les virent
in-the vessels the helmets laced And when those them saw
venir qui estoient tuit apareillié d'assaillir, si conurent bien
come who were all prepared of-assailing so knew well
que ce ere secors; si se partirent del chastel et
that this was succor so themselves departed from-the castle and
vinrent encontre als; et tote lor oz se loja sor le rivage,
came against them and all their host itself lodged upon the shore
de granz genz que il avoient à pié et à cheval. Et quant
of great people that they had on foot and on horse And when
il virent que l'emperere et la soe gens venroient totes
they saw that the-emperor and the his people would-come all
voies sor als, si reculerent sor lor gent qui estoient sor le
the-same upon them so drew-back upon their people who were upon the
rivaje, si que cil lor pooient aidier de traire et de lancier.
shore so that those them could help with shooting and with throwing

470 Ensi les tint l'empereres assis à ses dix sept vaissiaus, tant
Thus them held the-emperor besieged with his ten seven vessels until
que li criz vint qui ere meuz de Costantinoble; et ainçois que
that the cry came which was raised from Constantinople and before that
la nuiz venist, en i ot tant venuz que il orent la force
the night should-come thereof there had so-many come that they had the force
en la mer partot; et jurent tote nuit armé, et aancrez lor
in the sea everywhere and lay all night armed and anchored their
vaissiaus. Et fu lor consels telx que si tost com il verroient le
vessels And was their counsel such that so soon as they would-see the
jor, que il s'iroient combatre à els el rivage por tollir
day that they themselves-would-go to-fight with them on-the shore for to-take
lor vaissials. Et quant vint endroit la mie-nuit, si traistrent li
their vessels And when came toward the midnight so drew the
Grieu toz lor vaissialx à terre, si botterent le feu dedenz et les
Greeks all their vessels to land so thrust the fire within and them
artrent toz, et se deslogierent, et s'en alerent fuiant.
burned all and themselves dislodged and themselves-thence went fleeing
471 L'empereres Henri et sa gens furent mult lié et joiant de
The-emperor Henry and his people were very glad and joyful of
la victoire que Diex lor ot donée, et de ce que il orent
the victory which God them had given and of this that they had
secouru lor gent. Et quant vint al matin, l'empereres et
succored their people And when came at-the morning the-emperor and
tuit li autre s'en vont al chastel del Chivetot; et
all the others themselves-thence go to-the castle of-the Kibotos and
troverent lor genz mult malades et mult navrées les plusors.
found their people very sick and very wounded the most
Et le chastel esgarda l'empereres et sa genz, et virent que
And the castle examined the-emperor and his people and saw that
il ere si febles que il ne faisoit à tenir. Si recuillirent totes
it was so feeble that it not was-fit to hold So gathered all

lor genz es vassials, et guerpirent le chastel et laissierent.
their people into-the vessels and forsook the castle and left
Ensi repaira li empereres Henris en Constantinople.
Thus returned the emperor Henry into Constantinople
Johannis li rois de Blaquie ne repousa mie, qui avoit 472
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia not rested at-all who had
Andrenople assise; ainz giterent ses perieres, dont il avoit
Adrianople besieged but cast his petraries whereof he had
assez, et par jor et par nuit, as murs et aus tors,
plenty both by day and by night at-the walls and at-the towers
et empirierent mult les murs et les tors. Et mist ses
and damaged much the walls and the towers And put his
trencheors as murs, et firent maintes fois assaillies. Et
sappers to-the walls and made many times assaults And
mult se contindrent bien cil qui dedenz estoient, li
very themselves bore well those who within were the
Grieu et li Latin; et manderent mult sovent l'empereor
Greeks and the Latins and sent-word very often (to-)the-emperor
Henri que il les secorust, et seust que se il nes
Henry that he them should-succor and should-know that if he not-them
secoroit, que il estoient pardu sanz nule fin. Et l'empereres
succored that they were lost without any end And the-emperor
ere mult destroiz; que quant il voloit ses genz d'Andrenople
was very distressed for when he wished his people of-Adrianople
aler secore d'une part, Toldres li Ascres le tenoit si destroit
to-go to-succor on-one side Theodore the Lascaris him held so hard-pressed
d'autre part, si que par estovoir le convenoit à retorner.
on-other side so that by necessity him behooved to return
Et issi fu Johannis tot le mois d'avril devant Andrenople; et 473
And thus was Johanitsa all the month of-April before Adrianople and
l'aprocha si de prendre qu'il abati des murs et des tors en
it-approached so of taking that-he cast-down of-the walls and of-the towers in

deus leus trosque en terre, et si que il pooient venir main
two places as-far to earth and so that they could come hand
à main as espées et as lances à cels dedenz. Ensinques
to hand with-the swords and with-the lances to those within Thus
i fist de mult granz assaus, et cil se defendirent bien;
there made of very great assaults and those themselves defended well
et i ot mult des morz et des navrez d'une part et d'autre.
and there had many of-the dead and of-the wounded on-one side and on-other
474 Ensi com Diex vielt les aventures avenir, li Commain
So as God wills the chances to-happen the Cumans
qu'il ot envoié par la terre orent mult gaaingnié; et
whom-he had sent through the land had much won and
furent revenu à l'ost d'Andrenople à toz lor gaaienz; et
were returned to the-host of-Adrianople with all their gains and
distrent que il n'i remanroient plus à Johannis, ainz
said that they not-there would-remain more with Johanitsa but
s'en voloient aler en lor terre. Issi se partirent
themselves-thence wished to-go into their land Thus themselves departed
li Commain de Johannis; et cum il vit ce, si n'osa
the Cumans from Johanitsa and when he saw this so not-dared
remanoir sanz als devant Andrenople. Ensique s'en
to-remain without them before Adrianople Thus-so himself-thence
parti de devant la vile, et la guerpi.
departed from before the town and it forsook
475 Et sachiez que on le tint à grant miracle, de vile qui
And know that one it held for great miracle of town which
ere aprochie de prandre com ere ceste, que il la laissa,
was approached of taking as was this-one that he it left
qui hom si poeteis ere. Ensi com Diex vielt les choses,
who man so powerful was So as God wills the things
si les convient avenir. Cil d'Andrenople ne tarderent mie
so them behooves to-happen Those of-Adrianople not delayed at-all

de mander l'empereor que il venist tost por Dieu;
of to-send-word (to-)the-emperor that he should-come soon for God
que seust de voir que se Johannis li rois de Blaquie
for he-should-know of truth that if Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
retornoit, que il estoient mort ou pris.
returned that they were dead or taken

The Siege of Cyzicus

LV

Steiriones, Lascaris' admiral, enters the straits at Abydos with seventeen galleys and besieges Cyzicus while Lascaris attacks by land. Henry sends fourteen galleys manned by his best barons, and Steiriones flees before them. Lascaris then threatens Nicomedia, and Henry crosses the Arm and drives him back. Later Thierry of Loos, out foraging, is overwhelmed and taken, wounded in the face, and Ansoul of Remy is blamed for deserting him. Henry crosses again to relieve Saint Sophia of Nicomedia, and the Greeks withdraw beyond the mountain.

L'empereres, à tant de gent com il avoit, fu atornez d'aler à 476
The-emperor with so-many of people as he had was prepared of-going to
Andrenople. Et lors li vint une novele qui mult fu griés, que
Adrianople And then him came a news which very was grievous that
Esturions, qui ere amirals des galies Toldre l'Ascre, ere entrez
Steiriones who was admiral of-the galleys (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris was entered
à dix et sept galies en Boche d'Avie, el Braz Saint George,
with ten and seven galleys into Mouth of-Abydos in-the Arm Saint George
et fu venuz en Equise, où Pierres de Braiecuel estoit et Paiens
and was come into Cyzicus where Peter of Bracieux was and Payen
d'Orliens, et le assist par devers mer, et Toldres li Ascres par
of-Orléans and it besieged by toward sea and Theodore the Lascaris by
devers terre. Et la gens de la terre d'Equise furent revelé contre
toward land And the people of the land of-Cyzicus were rebelled against

Peron de Braiecuel, et cil de Marmora, qui suen estoient;
Peter of Bracieux and those of Marmora who his were
et li orent fait grant domage, et morz de ses homes assez.
and him had done great harm and killed of his men plenty
477 Et quant ceste novele vint en Costantinoble, si furent mult
And when this news came into Constantinople so they-were very
esfreé. Lors prist conseil l'empereres Henris à ses homes et
frightened Then took counsel the-emperor Henry with his men and
à ses barons et as Veniciens ensamble; et distrent que se
with his barons and with-the Venetians together and they-said that if
il ne secoroient Perron de Braiecuel et Paien d'Orliens, que
they not succored Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans that
il estoient mort et que il avoient la terre perdue. Si armerent
they were dead and that they had the land lost So they-armed
mult isnelement quatorze galies, et les garnirent des plus
very swiftly fourteen galleys and them manned with-the most
haltes gens des Veniciens et de toz les barons l'empereor.
high people of-the Venetians and of all the barons (of-)the-emperor
478 En une entra Coenes de Betune et sa gens; et en l'autre
Into one entered Conon of Béthune and his people and into the-other
Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus et la soe gens;
Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal and the his people
et en la tierce Machaires de Sainte Manehalt et la soe
and into the third Macaire of Sainte Menebould and the his
gens; en la quarte Miles li Braibans; et en la quinte
people into the fourth Miles the Brabançon and into the fifth
Ansials de Caeu; et en la sixte Tyerris de Los, qui ere
Anseau of Cayeux and into the sixth Thierry of Loos who was
seneschaus de Romenie; et en la septime Guillaumes del
seneschal of Romania and into the seventh William of-the
Perchoi; et en l'uitisme Eustaiches li freres l'empereor. Et
Perchoy and into the-eighth Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor And

ensi mist par totes ses galies sa meillor gent l'empereres
thus put through all his galleys his best people the-emperor
Henris. Quant eles partirent del port de Costantinoble,
Henry When they departed from-the port of Constantinople
bien distrent totes les genz qui les virent, que onques
well said all the people who them saw that ever
mais galies ne furent mielz armées ne de meillors genz.
before galleys not were better armed nor with better people
Et ensi fu respoitiez li alers de Andrenople à cele foiz.
And thus was postponed the going of Adrianople at that time
Et cil des galies s'en alerent contreval le Braz, vers 479
And those of-the galleys themselves-thence went down the Arm toward
Equise droit. Ne sai comment Esturions le sot, li amiraus
Cyzicus straight Not I-know how Steiriones it knew the admiral
des galies Toldre l'Ascre: si s'en parti de Equise
of-the galleys (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris so himself-thence departed from Cyzicus
et s'en ala, et s'enfui contreval le Braz. Et cil le
and himself-thence went and himself-fled down the Arm And those him
chacierent deus jorz et deuz nuiz trosque fors de Boche
chased two days and two nights as-far outside of Mouth
d'Avie, bien quarante miles. Et quant il virent que il
of-Abydos well forty miles And when they saw that they
nel poroient ateindre, si tornerent arriere et revindrent en
not-him could overtake so turned back and came-again into
Equise, et troverent Perron de Braiecuel et Paien d'Orliens;
Cyzicus and found Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans
et Toldres li Ascres se fu deslogiez de devant, et fu
and Theodore the Lascaris himself was dislodged from before and was
repairiez arriere en sa terre. Ensi fu secorue Equise com
returned back into his land Thus was succored Cyzicus as

vos oez; et cil des galies s'en tornerent arrieres
you hear and those of-the galleys themselves-thence turned back
en Costantinoble, et ratornerent lor oirre vers Andrenople.
into Constantinople and prepared-again their journey toward Adrianople
480 Toldres li Ascres envoia le plus de sa gent en la terre de
Theodore the Lascaris sent the most of his people into the land of
Nichomie. Et la gens Tierri de Los, qui avoient fermé le
Nicomedia And the people (of-)Thierry of Loos who had fortified the
mostier Sainte Sofie, et estoient dedenz, manderent lor
minster Saint Sophia and were within sent-word (to-)their
seignor et l'empereor que il les secorust; que se il n'avoient
lord and (to-)the-emperor that he them should-succor for if they not-had
secors, il ne se poroient tenir, et ensorquetot si
succor they not themselves could hold and above-all so
n'avoient point de viande. Par fine destrece convint l'empereor
not-had at-all of victuals By pure distress behooved the-emperor
Henri, et sa gent, que il laissast la voie d'aler à Andrenople,
Henry and his people that he should-leave the way of-going to Adrianople
et que il pasast le Braz Saint George devers la Turquie,
and that he should-cross the Arm Saint George toward the Turkey
à tant de gent cum il pot avoir, por secorre Nichomie.
with so-many of people as he could have for to-succor Nicomedia
481 Et quant la gens Toldre l'Ascre l'oïrent que il venoit,
And when the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris it-heard that he came
si revuidierent la terre, si se traistrent arriere vers
so emptied-again the land so themselves drew back toward
Niqué-la-Grant. Et quant l'empereres le sot, si prist son
Nicaea-the-Great And when the-emperor it knew so took his
conseil; et fu li consels tels que Tyerris de Los, li
counsel and was the counsel such that Thierry of Loos the
seneschaus de Romenie, remanroit à Nichomie à toz ses
seneschal of Romania would-remain at Nicomedia with all his

chevaliers et à toz ses serjanz por garder la terre, et
knights and with all his sergeants for to-guard the land and
Machaires de Sainte Manehalt al Caracas, et Guillaumes del
Macaire of Sainte Menehould at-the Charax and William of-the
Perchoi en Esquise, et cil desfendroient la terre endroit als.
Perchoy in Cyzicus and those would-defend the land about them
Lors s'en rala l'empereres Henris en Constantinoble 482
Then himself-thence went-back the-emperor Henry into Constantinople
al remainant de sa gent, et ot empris de rechief de movoir
with-the remnant of his people and had undertaken of anew to set-out
por raler vers Andrenople. Et endementiers qu'il atorna
for to-go-again toward Adrianople And meanwhile that-he prepared
son oirre, Tierris de Los li seneschaus, qui ere à Nichomie,
his journey Thierry of Loos the seneschal who was at Nicomedia
et Guillaumes del Perchoi, à totes lor genz, alerent
and William of-the Perchoy with all their people went
forer un jor. Et la genz Toldre l'Ascre le sorent; si les
to-forage one day And the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris it knew so them
sorpristrent et lor corurent sus. Si furent mult grant gent, et
surprised and them ran upon So they-were very great people and
cil furent pou; si comença li estors et la mellée: ne demora
those were few so began the fight and the melee not lasted
mie longuement que li pou ne porent endurer le trop.
at-all long that the few not could endure the too-many
Mult le fist bien Tyerris de Los et sa gens; et fu abatuz 483
Much it did well Thierry of Loos and his people and was struck-down
deus foiz, et par force le remonterent sa gens. Et Guillaumes
two times and by force him remounted his people And William
del Perchoi fu abatuz et remontez, et fu rescous. Mais ne
of-the Perchoy was struck-down and remounted and was rescued But not
porent cele fole souffrir, si furent desconfit li Franc. Là fu
could that crowd endure so were routed the Franks There was

pris Tyerris de Los, et navrez parmi le vis, et en aventure
taken Thierry of Loos and wounded through the face and in hazard
de mort; là fu pris li plus de sa gent avec lui, que pou en
of death there was taken the most of his people with him for few thence
eschapa. Et Guillaumes del Perchoi en eschapa sor un roncin,
escaped And William of-the Perchoy thence escaped upon a nag
navrez en la main. Et ensi se recuillirent el mostier
wounded in the hand And thus themselves gathered in-the minster
Sainte-Sophie cil qui en eschaperent de la desconfiture.
Saint-Sophia those who thence escaped from the defeat
484 Cil qui ceste hystoire traita ne sot s'il fu à tort ou à
He who this history treated not knew if-it was at wrong or at
droit, mais il en oï un chevalier blamer, qui avoit à
right but he thereof heard a knight blamed who had to
nom Ansols de Remi, qui ere hom liges Tyerri de Los
name Ansoul of Remy who was man liege (of-)Thierry of Loos
le seneschal, et chevetaines de sa gent, et le guerpi.
the seneschal and captain of his people and him forsook
485 Et lors pristrent un message cil qui furent à Nichomie
And then took a messenger those who were at Nicomedia
au mostier Sainte-Sophye retorné (Guillaumes del Perchoi
at-the minster Saint-Sophia returned William of-the Perchoy
et Ansols de Remi), et l'en envoierent batant en
and Ansoul of Remy and him-thence sent in-haste into
Constantinoble à l'empereor Henri; et li manderent qu'ensi
Constantinople to the-emperor Henry and him sent-word that-thus
ere avenu, que pris ere li seneschaus et sa gens, et il
was happened that taken was the seneschal and his people and they
estoient assis au mostier Sainte Sofie à Nichomie, et
were besieged at-the minster Saint Sophia at Nicomedia and
n'avoient mie viande à plus de cinq jors; et seust de
not-had at-all victuals for more than five days and should-know of

voir que se il nes secoroit, que il estoient mort et pris.
truth that if he not-them succored that they were dead and taken
L'empereres, autresi cum à cri, passe le Braz Saint George, il
The-emperor likewise as at cry crosses the Arm Saint George he
et sa gens, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz mielz, por secoure cels de
and his people who sooner sooner who better better for to-succor those of
Nichomie. Et ensi fu remese la voie d'Andrenople à cele foiz.
Nicomedia And thus was left the way of-Adrianople at that time
Et quant l'empereres ot passé le Braz Saint-George, si ordena 486
And when the-emperor had crossed the Arm Saint-George so ordered
ses batailles, et chevaucha par ses jornées tant que il vint à
his battalions and rode by his day-stages so-far that he came to
Nichomie. Quant la gens Toldre l'Ascre et si frere l'oïrent,
Nicomedia When the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris and his brothers it-heard
qui tenoient l'ost, si se traistrent arriere, et passerent
who held the-host so themselves drew back and crossed
la montaigne d'autre part devers Niqué. Et l'empereres se
the mountain on-other side toward Nicaea And the-emperor himself
loja d'autre part Nichomie, en une mult bele praerie sor un
lodged on-other side Nicomedia in a very fair meadow upon a
flum, par devers la montaigne. Et fist tendre ses trés et ses
river by toward the mountain And had pitched his tents and his
paveillons, et fist corre sa gent par le païs (quar il se
pavilions and had run his people through the country for they themselves
revelerent quant il oïrent dire que Tyerris de Los li seneschaus
rebelled when they heard say that Thierry of Loos the seneschal
de Romenie ere pris); et pristrent proies assez et prisons.
of Romania was taken and took booty plenty and prisoners

The Truce with Lascaris

LVI

Lascaris offers a two-year truce if Cyzicus and Saint Sophia of Nicomedia are razed, and Henry, unable to fight two wars and wishing to part his enemies, agrees; Thierry of Loos and the other prisoners are freed. In July Henry marches to Adrianople, where he is welcomed in procession, and on into Johanitsa's land to Eului, whose people flee. His foragers bring in herds and grain, though four battalions guarding them, caught in the defiles, must fight on foot. He stocks Adrianople with the grain and stays fifteen days.

487 Ensi sejorna l'empereres Henris par cinq jorz en la praerie. Et
Thus sojourned the-emperor Henry for five days in the meadow And
dedens cel sejor, Toldres li Ascres prist ses messages, si les
within that sojourn Theodore the Lascaris took his envoys so them
envoia à lui; et si le requist qu'il prendroit trive à deus anz,
sent to him and so him required that-he would-take truce for two years
par tel covent que il li laisast abatre Equise et la forteresce
by such covenant that he him should-let cast-down Cyzicus and the fortress
del mostier Sainte Sophie de Nicomie; et il li rendroit
of-the minster Saint Sophia of Nicomedia and he to-him would-render
toz ses prisons (qui avoient esté pris à cele desconfiture
all his prisoners who had been taken at that defeat
et als autres leus), dont il avoit assez en sa terre.
and at-the other places whereof he had plenty in his land
488 Or prist l'emperere conseil à ses homes, et distrent que
Now took the-emperor counsel with his men and they-said that
il ne pooient les deus guerres souffrir ensemble, et que
they not could the two wars endure together and that
mielz valoit cel damaige à soffrir que la parte d'Andrenople
better was-worth that harm to suffer than the loss of-Adrianople
ne de l'autre terre; et si auroient parti lor anemis (Johannis
nor of the-other land and so would-have parted their enemies Johanitsa

le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie, et Toldre l'Ascre), qui
the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria and Theodore the-Lascaris who
estoient ami et s'entr'aidoient de la guerre.
were friends and each-other-helped in the war
Ensi fu la chose creantée et otroiée. Et lors manda 489
Thus was the thing agreed and granted And then summoned
l'empereres Henris Pierron de Braiecuel en Equise, et il
the-emperor Henry Peter of Bracieux in Cyzicus and he
i vint; et fist tant l'empereres Henris vers lui, que
there came and did so-much the-emperor Henry toward him that
il li delivra Equisse; et la delivra à Toldre l'Ascre por
he to-him delivered Cyzicus and it delivered to Theodore the-Lascaris for
abatre, et le mostier de Sainte Sophie de Nichomie. Ensi
to-cast-down and the minster of Saint Sophia of Nicomedia Thus
fu ceste trive asseurée, et ces forteresces abatues. Tyerris
was this truce confirmed and these fortresses cast-down Thierry
de Los fu delivrés, et li autre prison tuit.
of Loos was delivered and the other prisoners all
Lors s'en repaira l'empereres Henris en Constantinoble, 490
Then himself-thence returned the-emperor Henry into Constantinople
et enprist à aler vers Andrenople à tant con il poroit de
and undertook to go toward Adrianople with so-many as he could of
gent avoir. Et asambla s'ost à Salembrie; et fu jà tant
people have And assembled his-host at Selymbria and was already so-much
del tens passé que il fu après la feste saint Johan en juignet.
of-the time passed that it was after the feast (of-)saint John in July
Et chevaucha tant par ses jornées que il vint à Andrenople,
And rode so-far by his day-stages that he came to Adrianople
et se herberja es prez davant la vile. Et cil de la cité
and himself lodged in-the meadows before the town And those of the city

qui mult l'avoient desiré, issirent fors à procession, si le
who much him-had desired went-out outside in procession so him
virent mult volentiers; et tuit li Grié de la terre furent venu.
saw very willingly and all the Greeks of the land were come
491 Il ne sejorna c'un jor devant la vile, tant qu'il ot veu le
He not sojourned but-one day before the town until that-he had seen the
domage que Johannis i avoit fait à ses trencheors et à
harm that Johanitsa there had done with his sappers and with
ses perieres, as murs et as tors, qui mult avoient la vile
his petraries to-the walls and to-the towers which much had the town
empirie. Et l'endemain si mut et chevaucha vers la terre
damaged And the-next-day so set-out and rode toward the land
Johannis, et chevaucha par quatre jorz. Et al cinquiesme
(of-)Johanitsa and rode for four days And at-the fifth
jor, si vint al pié de la montaigne de Blaquie, à une
day so came to-the foot of the mountain of Wallachia to a
cité qui avoit nom Eului, que Johannis avoit novelement
city which had name Eului which Johanitsa had newly
repoplée de gent. Et quant la gens de la terre virent l'ost
repeopled with people And when the people of the land saw the-host
venir, si guerpirent la cité, et foïrent es montaignes.
come so forsook the city and fled into-the mountains
492 L'empereres Henris et l'oz des François se loja devant
The-emperor Henry and the-host of-the French themselves lodged before
la vile, et li coreor corrurent parmi la terre, et gaaignierent
the town and the foragers ran through the land and won
bues et vaches et bufles à grant plenté, et autres bestes.
oxen and cows and buffaloes in great plenty and other beasts
Et cil d'Andrenople, qui avoient lor chars mené avec aus,
And those of-Adrianople who had their carts led with them
et erent povre et diseteus de la viande, les chargierent de
and were poor and in-want of the victuals them loaded with

froment et d'altre blé; et il troverent grant plenté de la
wheat and with-other grain and they found great plenty of the
viande, et les autres chars qu'il avoient gaaignié, chargierent
victuals and the other carts which-they had won they-loaded
à mult grant plenté. Ensi sejorna l'oz par trois jorz, et
in very great plenty Thus sojourned the-host for three days and
chascun jor aloient gaaignier li coreor parmi la terre; et la
each day went to-win the foragers through the land and the
terre si ere plaine de montaignes et de fors destroiz; si i
land so was full of mountains and of strong defiles so there
perdoient cil de l'ost de lor coreors qui aloient folement.
lost those of the-host of their foragers who went foolishly
Au darraien, envoia l'empereres Henris Ansel de Caeu por 493
At-the last sent the-emperor Henry Anseau of Cayeux for
garder les correors, et Eustaice son frere, et Tierri de
to-guard the foragers and Eustace his brother and Thierry of
Flandres son nevou, et Gautier de Escornai, et Johan Bliaut.
Flanders his nephew and Walter of Escornay and John Bliaud
Ices quatre batailles alerent garder les coreors, et entrerent
These four battalions went to-guard the foragers and entered
dedenz mult forz montaignes. Et quant lor gens orent coru
within very strong mountains And when their people had run
par la terre et il s'en vourent revenir, si troverent
through the land and they themselves-thence wished to-come-back so found
les destroiz mult forz. Et li Blac del païs se furent
the defiles very strong And the Vlachs of-the country themselves were
assemblé, et assanblerent à aus, et lor firent mult grant
assembled and joined-battle with them and them did very great
domage et d'omes et de chevaus. Et furent mult près
harm both of-men and of horses And they-were very near
d'estre desconfiz, si que par vive force covint les chevaliers
of-being routed so that by live force behooved the knights

descendre à pié. Et par l'aide Dieu s'en revindrent
to-dismount on foot And by the-aid (of-)God themselves-thence came-back
tote voie à l'ost; mais grant domage orent receu.
all the-same to the-host but great harm they-had received
494 Et l'endemain, s'en parti l'empereres Henris et l'os
And the-next-day himself-thence departed the-emperor Henry and the-host
des François; et chevauchierent par lor jornées arrieres, tant
of-the French and rode by their day-stages back so-far
que il vindrent à la cité d'Andrenople. Et i mistrent la
that they came to the city of-Adrianople And there put the
garnison qu'il amenerent de blez et d'autre viande; et
provision which-they brought of wheat and of-other victuals and
sejorna l'empereres, en la praerie defors la vile, bien quinze jorz.
sojourned the-emperor in the meadow outside the town well fifteen days

The Death of Boniface

LVII

Boniface, master of Mosynopolis, asks to meet Henry, and they meet with great joy in a meadow below Cypsela. Boniface hears that Agnes is with child, becomes Henry's man, and gives Villehardouin Mosynopolis or Serres as his fief. They agree to muster in October against Johanitsa. Five days later, on a foray in the mountains, Boniface rides out unarmed to save his rearguard from the Bulgars and is struck by an arrow below the shoulder. His men flee, and his head is sent to Johanitsa. The year is 1207.

495 En cel termine, Bonifaces li marchis de Monferat, qui ere
In that time Boniface the marquis of Montferrat who was
à la Serre, que il avoit refermée, fist chevauchies trosque
at the Serres which he had refortified made forays as-far
à Messinople, et la terre se rendi à son comandement.
to Mosynopolis and the land itself surrendered to his command

Lors prist ses messages, si les envoia à l'empereor Henri,
Then took his messengers so them sent to the-emperor Henry
et li manda que il parleroit volentiers à lui sor le flum
and him sent-word that he would-speak gladly to him upon the river
qui cort soz la Quipesale. Et il n'avoient mais eu pooir
which runs under the Cypsela And they not-had more had power
de parler ensemble, trosque la terre fu conquise; que il
of speaking together since the land was conquered for there
avoit tant de lor anemis entre als, que li uns ne pooit
had so-many of their enemies between them that the one not could
venir à l'autre. Et quant l'empereres et ses consels oï
come to the-other And when the-emperor and his council heard
que li marchis Bonifaces ere à Messinople, si en furent
that the marquis Boniface was at Mosynopolis so thereof they-were
mult lié. Et li manda par ses messages arriers que il
very glad And him sent-word by his messengers back that he
iroit parler à lui al jor que il li avoit mis.
would-go to-speak to him at-the day that he him had set
Ensi s'en ala l'empereres vers cele part, et laissa Coenon 496
Thus himself-thence went the-emperor toward that way and left Conon
de Betune por garder la terre à Andrenople atot cent
of Béthune for to-guard the land at Adrianople with hundred
chevaliers. Et vindrent là où li jorz fu pris, en une mult
knights And they-came there where the day was taken in a very
bele praerie près de la cité de la Quipesale; et vint l'empereres
fair meadow near of the city of the Cypsela and came the-emperor
d'une part, et li marchis d'autre, et s'assemblerent à mult
on-one side and the marquis on-other and themselves-met with very
grant joie; et ne fu mie mervoille, que il ne s'erent pieça
great joy and not was at-all marvel for they not themselves-were long-since
veu. Et li marchis demanda à l'empereor novelles de sa fille
seen And the marquis asked of the-emperor news of his daughter

l'empereris Agnès; et il li dist que ele ere grosse d'anfant,
the-empress Agnes and he him told that she was big with-child
et il en fu liez et joianz. Lors devint li marchis hom de
and he thereof was glad and joyful Then became the marquis man of
l'empereor Henri, et tint de lui sa terre ensi con il avoit fait
the-emperor Henry and held of him his land thus as he had done
l'empereor Baudoin, son frere. Lors dona li marchis Bonifaces
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin his brother Then gave the marquis Boniface
à Geffroi de Vile-Hardoin, le mareschal de Romenie et de
to Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of Romania and of
Champaigne, la cité de Messinople à totes ses apartenances,
Champagne the city of Mosynopolis with all its appurtenances
ou celi de la Serre (laquele que il ameroit mielz); et cil en
or that of the Serres whichever that he would-love better and he thereof
fu ses hom liges, sauve la fealté l'empereor de Costantinoble.
was his man liege saving the fealty (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople
497 Et ensi sejornerent par deus jorz en cele praerie à mult grant
And thus they-sojourned for two days in that meadow with very great
joie, et distrent (puis que Diex avoit doné que il pooient
joy and said since that God had given that they could
venir ensemble) que encore porroient il grever lor anemis.
come together that yet could they harm their enemies
Et en pristrent un parlement que il seroient à l'issue
And thereof took a parliament that they would-be at the-issue
d'esté, el mois d'octubre, à tot lor pooir, en la praerie de
of-summer in-the month of-October with all their power in the meadow of
la cité d'Andrenople, por hostoier sor le roi de Blaquie. Et
the city of-Adrianople for to-make-war upon the king of Wallachia And
ensi departirent mult lié et mult haitié: li marchis s'en
thus they-parted very glad and very cheerful the marquis himself-thence
ala à Messinople, et l'empereres Henris vers Costantinoble.
went to Mosynopolis and the-emperor Henry toward Constantinople

Quant li marchis fu à Messinople, ne tarda mie plus de 498
When the marquis was at Mosynopolis not delayed at-all more than
cinq jorz que il fist une chevauchie, par le conseil as Greus
five days that he made a foray by the counsel of-the Greeks
de la terre, en la montaigne de Messinople, plus d'une grant
of the land into the mountain of Mosynopolis more than-a great
jornée loing. Et cum il ot esté en la terre et vint al partir,
day far And when he had been in the land and came to-the departing
li Bougre de la terre se furent assemblé; et virent que
the Bulgars of the land themselves were assembled and saw that
li marchis fu à pou de gent. Et vienent de totes parz, si
the marquis was with few of people And they-come from all parts so
s'assemblent à s'arriere garde. Et quant li marchis oï le
themselves-engage with his-rear guard And when the marquis heard the
cri, si sailli en un cheval toz desarmez, un glaive en sa main.
cry so leapt onto a horse all unarmed a lance in his hand
Et cum il vint là où il estoient assemblé à s'arriere
And when he came there where they were engaged with his-rear
garde, si lor corut sus, et les chaça une grant piece arriere.
guard so them ran upon and them chased a great while back
Là fu feruz d'une sajete li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat, 499
There was struck with-an arrow the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
parmi le gros del braz desoz l'espaule, mortelment, si que
through the thick of-the arm below the-shoulder mortally so that
il comença à espandre del sanc. Et quant sa gens virent
he began to shed of-the blood And when his people saw
ce, si se comencierent à esmaier et à desconforter, et
this so themselves began to dismay and to lose-heart and
à mavaisement maintenir. Et cil qui furent entor le marchis
to badly bear And those who were around the marquis
le sostindrent, et il perdi mult del sanc; si se comença
him held-up and he lost much of-the blood so himself began

à pasmer. Et quant ses genz virent que il n'auroient nule
to swoon And when his people saw that they not-would-have any
aïe de lui, si s'escomencierent à esmaier; et le comencent
aid of him so themselves-began to dismay and him begin
à laissier. Ensi furent desconfit par ceste mesaventure; et
to leave Thus they-were routed by this mischance and
cil qui remestrent avec lui (et ce fu po) furent mort.
those who remained with him and this was few were dead
Et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat ot la teste colpée;
And the marquis Boniface of Montferrat had the head cut
et la gens de la terre envoierent Johannis la teste, et
and the people of the land sent (to-)Johanitsa the head and
ce fu une des graignors joies que il aust onques. Halas!
this was one of-the greatest joys that he had ever Alas
con dolorous domage ci ot à l'empereor Henri et
how grievous harm here there-was to the-emperor Henry and
à tos les Latins de la terre de Romenie, de tel homme
to all the Latins of the land of Romania of such man
perdre par tel mesaventure, un des meillors barons et
to-lose by such mischance one of-the best barons and
des plus larges, et des meillors chevaliers qui fust el
of-the most generous and of-the best knights who was in-the
remanant dou monde. Et ceste mesaventure avint en l'an
remnant of-the world And this mischance happened in the-year
de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus cens et sept anz.
of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred and seven years